DIGITAL StorageWorks

HSG80 Array Controller ACS Version 8.2

EK-HSG80-UG. B01

Digital Equipment Corporation
Maynard, Massachusetts

User's Guide

July 1998

While Digital Equipment Corporation believes the information included in this manual is correct as of the date of publication, it is subject to change without notice. DIGITAL makes no representations that the interconnection of its products in the manner described in this document will not infringe existing or future patent rights, nor do the descriptions contained in this document imply the granting of licenses to make, use, or sell equipment or software in accordance with the description. No responsibility is assumed for the use or reliability of firmware on equipment not supplied by DIGITAL or its affiliated companies. Possession, use, or copying of the software or firmware described in this documentation is authorized only pursuant to a valid written license from DIGITAL, an authorized sublicensor, or the identified licensor.

Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government with DIGITAL's standard commercial license and, when applicable, the rights in DFAR 252.227 7015, "Technical Data—Commercial Items."

© Digital Equipment Corporation, 1998.
Printed in U.S.A.
All rights reserved.

DIGITAL, DIGITAL UNIX, DECconnect, HSZ, StorageWorks, VMS, OpenVMS, and the DIGITAL logo are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries exclusively through X/Open Company Ltd. Windows NT is a trademark of the Microsoft Corporation. Sun is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. Hewlett-Packard and HP–UX are registered trademarks of the Hewlett-Packard Company. IBM and AIX are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the manuals, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense. Restrictions apply to the use of the local-connection port on this series of controllers; failure to observe these restrictions may result in harmful interference. Always disconnect this port as soon as possible after completing the setup operation. Any changes or modifications made to this equipment may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Warning!
This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Achtung!
Dieses ist ein Gerät der Funkstörgrenzwertklasse A. In Wohnbereichen können bei Betrieb dieses Gerätes Rundfunkstörungen auftreten, in welchen Fällen der Benutzer für entsprechende Gegenmaßnahmen verantwortlich ist.

Avertissement!
Cet appareil est un appareil de Classe A. Dans un environnement résidentiel cet appareil peut provoquer des brouillages radioélectriques. Dans ce cas, il peut être demandé à l' utilisateur de prendre les mesures appropriées.

Preface

Precautions xviii
Electrostatic Discharge Precautions xviii
Component Precaution xix
Maintenance Port Precautions xix
Conventions xx
Typographical Conventions xx
Special Notices xxi
Required Tools xxii
Related Publications xxiii
Revision History xxiv

Chapter 1 General Description

The HSG80 Array Controller Subsystem 1–2
Summary of HSG80 Features 1–4
The HSG80 Array Controller 1–7
Operator Control Panel 1–13
Maintenance Port 1–14
Utilities and Exercisers 1–14
Cache Module 1–18
Caching Techniques 1–20
Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching 1–21
External Cache Battery 1–28
Charging Diagnostics 1–29

Chapter 2 Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller

Introduction 2–2
Configuration Rules 2–2
Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller 2–3
Setting the PVA Module ID Switch 2–6
Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller 2–7
Selecting a Failover Mode 2–10
Using Transparent Failover 2–10
Using Multiple-Bus Failover 2–11
Enabling Mirrored Write-Back Cache 2–12

Selecting a Cache Mode 2–12
Fault-Tolerance 2–12
Backing up Power with a UPS 2–13
Connecting the Subsystem to the Host 2–14
Connecting a Dual-Redundant Configuration to the Host 2–16

Chapter 3 Creating Storagesets

Introduction 3–2
Planning and Configuring Storagesets 3–4
Creating a Storageset and Device Profile 3–5
Determining Storage Requirements 3–7
Choosing a Storageset Type 3–8
Using Stripesets to Increase I/O Performance 3–8
Using Mirrorsets to Ensure Availability 3–12
Using RAIDsets to Increase Performance and Availability 3–15
Using Striped Mirrorsets for Highest Performance and Availability 3–17
Cloning Data for Backup 3–19
Backing Up Your Subsystem Configuration 3–23
Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to a Single Disk 3–23
Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to Multiple Disks 3–23
Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to a Storageset 3–24
Controller and Port Worldwide Names (Node IDs) 3–26
Restoring Worldwide Names (Node IDs) 3–26
Unit World Wide Names (LUN IDs) 3–27
Assigning Unit Numbers for Host Access to Storagesets 3–28
Assigning Unit Offsets 3–29
Assigning Access Paths 3–30
Creating a Storageset Map 3–32
Device PTL Addressing Convention within the Controller 3–33
Planning Partitions 3–37
Defining a Partition 3–37
Guidelines for Partitioning Storagesets and Disk Drives 3–38
Choosing Switches for Storagesets and Devices 3–39
Enabling Switches 3–39
Changing Switches 3–39
RAIDset Switches 3–40

Replacement Policy 3–40
Reconstruction Policy 3–40
Membership 3–41
Mirrorset Switches 3–42
Replacement Policy 3–42
Copy Speed 3–42
Read Source 3–43
Device Switches 3–44
Transportability 3–44
Device Transfer Rate 3–46
Initialize Switches 3–47
Chunk Size 3–47
Save Configuration 3–50
Destroy/Nodestroy 3–52
Unit Switches 3–54
Configuring Storagesets with CLI Commands 3–55
Adding Disk Drives 3–55
Configuring a Stripeset 3–55
Configuring a Mirrorset 3–56
Configuring a RAIDset 3–57
Configuring a Striped Mirrorset 3–59
Configuring a Single-Disk Unit 3–60
Partitioning a Storageset or Disk Drive 3–61
Adding a Disk Drive to the Spareset 3–63
Removing a Disk Drive from the Spareset 3–64
Enabling Autospare 3–65
Deleting a Storageset 3–65
Changing Switches for a Storageset or Device 3–66
Configuring with the Command Console LUN 3–68
Enabling and Disabling the CCL 3–68
Finding the CCL Location 3–69
Multiple-Port and Multiple-Host Use 3–69
Troubleshooting with the CCL 3–70
Adding Storage Units: Where Is the CCL? 3–70
Moving Storagesets 3–71

Chapter 4 Troubleshooting

Maintenance Features 4–1
Troubleshooting Checklist 4–2
Troubleshooting Table 4–4
Significant Event Reporting 4–14
Events that cause controller termination 4–14
Events that do not cause controller operation to terminate 4–15
Fault Management Utility 4–17
Displaying Failure Entries 4–17
Translating Event Codes 4–18
Controlling the Display of Significant Events and Failures 4–20
Using VTDPY to Check for Communication Problems 4–23
Checking Controller-to-Host Communications 4–24
Checking Controller-to-Device Communications 4–24
Checking Unit Status and I/O Activity 4–29
Checking Fibre Channel Link Errors 4–31
Checking for Disk-Drive Problems 4–36
Finding a Disk Drive in the Subsystem 4–36
Testing the Read Capability of a Disk Drive 4–36
Testing the Read and Write Capabilities of a Disk Drive 4–37
DILX Error Codes 4–40
Running the Controller's Diagnostic Test 4–41

Chapter 5 Replacement Procedures

Replacing Modules in a Single Controller Configuration 5–2
Replacing the Controller and Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration 5–2
Replacing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration 5–3
Replacing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration 5–6
Replacing Modules in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration. 5–8
Replacing a Controller and Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration 5–9
Replacing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration . . . 5–15
Replacing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration 5–21

Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block 5–27
Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block With Cabinet Powered On 5–28
Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block With Cabinet Powered Off 5–29
Replacing the GLM 5–32
Replacing a PVA Module 5–34
Replacing the PVA in the Master Enclosure (ID 0) 5–34
Replacing the PVA in the First Expansion (ID 2) or Second Expansion Enclosure (ID 3) 5–36
Replacing an I/O Module 5–39
Replacing DIMMs 5–42
Removing DIMMs 5–43
Installing DIMMs 5–44
Replacing a Fibre Cable or Hub 5–45
Replacing a PCMCIA Card 5–46
Replacing a Failed Storageset Member 5–47
Removing a Failed RAIDset or Mirrorset Member 5–47
Installing the New Member 5–47
Shutting Down the Subsystem 5–48
Disabling and Enabling the External Cache Batteries 5–48
Restarting the Subsystem 5–50

Chapter 6 Upgrading the Subsystem

Upgrading Controller Software 6–2
Installing a New Program Card 6–2
Downloading New Software 6–3
Using CLCP to Install, Delete, and List Software Patches 6–6
Upgrading Firmware on a Device 6–11
HSUTIL Messages 6–14
Upgrading to a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration 6–16
Installing a New Controller, Cache Module, and ECB 6–16
Upgrading Cache Memory 6–20

Appendix A System Profiles

Device Profile A–2
Storageset Profile A–3
Enclosure Template A–4

Appendix B CLI Commands

CLI Overview B–2
Using the CLI B–2
Command Overview B–2
Getting Help B–3
Entering CLI Commands B–3
Changing the CLI Prompt B–4
Command Syntax B–5
ADD CONNECTIONS B–7
ADD DISK B–11
ADD MIRRORSET B–15
ADD RAIDSET B–19
ADD SPARESET B–23
ADD STRIPESET B–25
ADD UNIT B–27
CLEAR_ERRORS CLI B–35
CLEAR_ERRORS *controller* INVALID_CACHE B–37
CLEAR_ERRORS device-name UNKNOWN B–39
CLEAR_ERRORS unit-number LOST_DATA B–41
CLEAR_ERRORS unit-number UNWRITEABLE_DATA B–43
CONFIGURATION RESET B–45
CONFIGURATION RESTORE B–47
CONFIGURATION SAVE B–49
CREATE_PARTITION B–51
DELETE connections B–55
DELETE container-name B–57
DELETE FAILEDSET B–59
DELETE SPARESET B–61
DELETE unit-number B–63
DESTROY_PARTITION B–65
DIRECTORY B–67

HELP B–69
INITIALIZE B–71
LOCATE B–77
MIRROR B–79
POWEROFF B–83
REDUCE B–85
RENAME B–89
RESTART controller B–91
RETRY_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA B–93
RUN B–95
SELFTEST controller B–99
SET connection-name B–101
SET controller B–103
SET device-name B–111
SET EMU B–113
SET FAILEDSET B–117
SET FAILOVER B–119
SET mirrorset-name B–121
SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER B–127
SET NOFAILOVER B–129
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER B–131
SET RAIDset-name B–133
SET unit-number B–137
SHOW B–143
SHUTDOWN controller B–149
UNMIRROR B–151

Appendix C LED Codes

Operator Control Panel LED Codes. C–2
Solid OCP Patterns C–3
Flashing OCP Patterns C–8

Appendix D Event Reporting: Templates and Codes

Passthrough Device Reset Event Sense Data Response. D–2
Last Failure Event Sense Data Response D–3
Multiple-Bus Failover Event Sense Data Response D–5

Failover Event Sense Data Response D–6
Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component Event Sense Data Response D–8
Backup Battery Failure Event Sense Data Response D–9
Subsystem Built-In Self Test Failure Event Sense Data Response D–10
Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Response D–12
Device Services Non-Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response D–13
Disk Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response D–14
Instance Codes D–16
Instance Code Structure D–16
Instance Codes and FMU D–16
Last Failure Codes D–36
Last Failure Code Structure D–36
Last Failure Codes and FMU D–36
Recommended Repair Action Codes D–77
Component Identifier Codes D–82
Event Threshold Codes D–84
ASC/ASCQ Codes D–85

Appendix E Controller Specifications
Physical and Electrical Specifications for the Controller E–2
Environmental Specifications E–3

Glossary

Index

Figures

The HSG80 Subsystem 1–3
A Host and Its Storage Subsystem 1–7
HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Copper Cabling 1–8
Optional Maintenance Port Cable for a Terminal Connection 1–10
HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Optical Cabling 1–11
Location of Controllers and Cache Modules 1–13
HSG80 Controller Operator Control Panel (OCP) 1–14
Cache Module 1–19
ECB for Dual-Redundant Configurations 1–28
SCSI Target ID Numbers on the Controller Device Bus and PVA Settings in an Extended Subsytem 2–6
Terminal to Local-Connection Port Connection 2–7
“This Controller” and “Other Controller” 2–9
Cabling for Single Configuration with Fibre Channel Copper Support 2–14
Cabling for Single Configuration with Fibre Channel Optical Support 2–15
Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs using Fibre Channel Copper Support 2–17
Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs using Fibre Channel Optical Support 2–18
Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Copper Support 2–20
Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Optical Support 2–21
Units Created from Storagesets, Partitions, and Drives 3–3
A Typical Storageset Profile 3–6
Striping Lets Several Disk Drives Participate in Each I/O Request 3–9
Distribute Members across Ports 3–11
Mirrorsets Maintain Two Copies of the Same Data 3–12
First Mirrorset Members on Different Buses 3–13

Parity Ensures Availability; Striping Provides Good Performance. 3–15
Striping and Mirroring in the Same Storageset. 3–17
CLONE Steps for Duplicating Unit Members 3–20
Controller Port ID and Unit Numbers in Transparent Failover Mode 3–28
Controller Port ID Numbers and Unit Numbers in Mulitple Bus Failover Mode 3–29
LUN Presentation Using Unit Offset on a Per-Host Basis 3–30
Storageset Map 3–32
PTL Naming Convention 3–34
PTL Addressing in a Configuration 3–35
Locating Devices using PTLs 3–36
Partitioning a Single-Disk Unit. 3–37
Chunk Size Larger than the Request Size 3–48
Chunk Size Smaller than the Request Size 3–49
Moving a Storageset from one Subsystem to Another 3–71
Troubleshooting: Host Cannot Access Unit 4–12
Xfer Rate Region of the Default Display 4–24
Regions on the Device Display 4–25
Unit Status on the Cache Display 4–29
Fibre Channel Host Status Display 4–32
Single Controller Configuration 5–2
Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration 5–8
Single-Battery ECB SSB Configuration 5–27
Dual-battery ECB SBB Configuration 5–27
Location of GLMs in Controller 5–32
I/O Module Locations in a BA370 Enclosure 5–39
Cache-Module Memory Configurations 5–42
Installing a DIMM. 5–44
Battery Disable Switch 5–49
Location of Write-Protection Switch 6–4
Upgrading Device Firmware 6–11
Pass-through Device Reset Event Sense Data Response Format D–2
Template 01 - Last Failure Event Sense Data Response Format. D–4
Template 04 - Multiple-Bus Failover Event Sense Data Response Format D–5

Template 05 - Failover Event Sense Data Response Format D–7
Template 11 - Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component Event Sense Data Response Format D–8
Template 12 - Backup Battery Failure Event Sense Data Response Format D–9
Template 13 - Subsystem Built-In Self Test Failure Event Sense Data Response Format D–11
Template 14 - Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Response Format . . D–12
Template 41 - Device Services Non-Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response Format D–13
Template 51 - Disk Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response Format D–15
Structure of an Instance Code D–16
Instance Code Format D–16
Structure of a Last Failure Code D–36
Last Failure Code Format. D–36

Tables

Key to Figure 1–1 The HSG80 Subsystem 1–3
Controller Features 1–4
Key to Figure 1–3 HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Copper Cabling 1–9
Key to Figure 1–4: Optional Maintenance Port Cable for a Terminal Connection. 1–10
Key to Figure 1–4 HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Optical cabling 1–11
Cache Module Memory Configurations 1–18
Cache Policies and Cache Module Status 1–22
Cache Policies Resulting and ECB Status 1–24
ECB Capacity Based on Memory Size 1–29
Key to Figure 2–4 Cabling for Single Configuration (copper) 2–14
Key to Figure 2–5 Cabling for Single Configuration (optical) 2–15
Key to Figure 2–6 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs (copper) 2–17
Key to Figure 2–7 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs (optical) 2–18
Key to Figure 2–8 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub (copper) 2–20
Key to Figure 2–9 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub (optical) 2–21
Controller Limitations for RAIDsets 3–3
A Comparison of Different Kinds of Storagesets 3–8
Maximum Chunk Sizes for a RAIDset 3–50
Unit Switches 3–54
Troubleshooting Table 4–4
Event-Code Types 4–19
FMU SET Commands 4–20

VTDPY Key Sequences and Commands 4–23
Device Map Columns 4–25
Device Status Columns 4–26
Device-Port Status Columns 4–28
Unit Status Columns 4–29
Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Known Hosts (Connections) . 4–32
Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Port Status 4–33
Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Link Error Counters 4–33
Tachyon First Digit 4–35
Tachyon Second Digit 4–35
DILX Control Sequences 4–37
Data Patterns for Phase 1: Write Test 4–38
DILX Error Codes 4–40
Cache Module Memory Configurations. 5–42
HSUTIL Messages and Inquiries 6–14
Cache Module Memory Configurations. 6–20
Recall and Edit Command Keys B–4
ADD UNIT Switches for Storagesets B–28
POWEROFF Switch Settings. B–84
SET *controller* Switches B–104
EMU Set Point Temperatures. B–114
SET unit-number Switches for Existing Containers B–138
Solid OCP Patterns C–3
Flashing OCP Patterns C–8
Instance Codes D–18
Controller Restart Codes D–37
Last Failure Codes D–38
Recommended Repair Action Codes D–77
Component Identifier Codes D–82
Event Notification/Recovery Threshold Classifications D–84
ASC and ASCQ Codes D–85
Controller Specifications E–2
StorageWorks Environmental Specifications E–3

Preface

This book describes the features of the HSG80 array controller and configuration procedures for the controller and storagesets running Array Controller Software (ACS) Version 8.2G.

This book does not contain information about the operating environments to which the controller may be connected, nor does it contain detailed information about subsystem enclosures or their components. See the documentation that accompanied these peripherals for information about them.

Precautions

Follow these precautions when carrying out the procedures in this book.

Electrostatic Discharge Precautions

Static electricity collects on all nonconducting material, such as paper, cloth, and plastic. An electrostatic discharge (ESD) can easily damage a controller or other subsystem component even though you may not see or feel the discharge. Follow these precautions whenever you're servicing a subsystem or one of its components:

- Always use an ESD wrist strap when servicing the controller or other components in the subsystem. Make sure that the strap contacts bare skin, fits snugly, and that its grounding lead is attached to a bus that is a verified earth ground.
- Before touching any circuit board or component, always touch a verifiable earth ground to discharge any static electricity that may be present in your clothing.
- Always keep circuit boards and components away from nonconducting material.
- Always keep clothing away from circuit boards and components.
- Always use antistatic bags and grounding mats for storing circuit boards or components during replacement procedures.
- Always keep the ESD cover over the program card when the card is in the controller. If you remove the card, put it in its original carrying case. Never touch the contacts or twist or bend the card while you're handling it.
- Never touch the connector pins of a cable when it is attached to a component or host.

Component Precaution

System components referenced in this manual comply to regulatory standards documented herein. Use of other components in their place may violate country standards, negate regulatory compliance, or invalidate the warranty on your product.

Maintenance Port Precautions

The maintenance port generates, uses, and radiates radio-frequency energy through cables that are connected to it. This energy may interfere with radio and television reception. Do not leave a cable connected to this port when you’re not communicating with the controller.

Conventions

This book uses the following typographical conventions and special notices to help you find what you're looking for.

Typographical Conventions

Convention	Meaning
ALLCAPS BOLD	Command syntax that must be entered exactly as shown, for example: **SET FAILOVER COPY=OTHER_CONTROLLER**
ALLCAPS	Command discussed within text, for example: "Use the SHOW SPARESET command to show the contents of the spareset."
`Monospaced`	Screen display.
Sans serif italic	Command variable or numeric value that you supply, for example: SHOW *RAIDset-name* or **SET THIS_CONTROLLER ID=***(n,n,n,n,)*
italic	Reference to other books or publications, for example: "See the *HSG80 Array Controller ACS V8.2 Release Notes* for details."
⋮	Indicates that a portion of an example or figure has been omitted.
"this controller"	The controller serving your current CLI session through a local or remote terminal.
"other controller"	The controller in a dual-redundant pair that's connected to the controller serving your current CLI session.

Special Notices

This book doesn't contain detailed descriptions of standard safety procedures. However, it does contain warnings for procedures that could cause personal injury and cautions for procedures that could damage the controller or its related components. Look for these symbols when you're carrying out the procedures in this book:

Warning A warning indicates the presence of a hazard that can cause personal injury if you do not observe the precautions in the text.

Caution A caution indicates the presence of a hazard that might damage hardware, corrupt software, or cause a loss of data.

Tip A tip provides alternative methods or procedures that may not be immediately obvious. A tip may also alert customers that the controller's behavior being discussed is different from prior software or hardware versions.

Note A note provides additional information that's related to the completion of an instruction or procedure.

Required Tools

You will need the following tools to service the controller, cache module, external cache battery (ECB), the Power Verification and Addressing (PVA) module, the Gigabit Link Module (GLM), and the I/O module:

- A flathead screwdriver for loosening and tightening the I/O module retaining screws.
- A small phillips screwdriver for loosening and tightening the GLM access door screws.
- An antistatic wrist strap.
- An antistatic mat on which to place modules during servicing.
- A Storage Building Block (SBB) Extractor for removing StorageWorks building blocks. This tool is not required, but it will enable you to perform more efficiently.

Related Publications

The following table lists some of the documents that are related to the use of the controller, cache module, and external cache battery.

Document Title	Part Number
Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop Hub (DS-DHGGA-CA) User's Guide	EK–DHGGA–UG
KGPSA PCI-to-Fibre Channel Host Adapter	EK–KGPSA–UG
DIGITAL StorageWorks Ultra SCSI RAID Enclosure (BA370-Series) User's Guide	EK–BA370–UG
The RAIDBOOK—A Source for RAID Technology	RAID Advisory Board
DIGITAL StorageWorks HSG80 Array Controller ACS V8.2 Release Notes	AA–RDY8A–TE

Revision History

This is a revised document. Previous documents include:

EK-HSG80-UG .A01	ACS Version 8.0	January 1998

CHAPTER 1

General Description

This chapter illustrates and describes in general terms your subsystem and its major components: the HSG80 array controller, its cache module, and its external cache battery. See the *Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop Hub User's Guide* and the *KGPSA PCI-to-Fibre Channel Host Adapter User Guide* for information about the fibre channel arbitrated loop hub and adapter that connect the subsystem to your host.

The HSG80 Array Controller Subsystem

Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with the major components of the HSG80 Array Controller subsystem. Figure 1–1 shows the components of a typical installation which includes:

- One BA370 rack-mountable pedestal enclosure.
- Two controllers, each supported by their own cache module.
- Two external cache batteries (ECBs) in one Storage Building Block (SBB), which provide backup power to the cache modules during a primary power failure.
- One environmental monitoring unit (EMU) that monitors the subsystem's environment, and alerts the controller of equipment failures that could cause an abnormal environment.
- One power verification and addressing (PVA) module that provides a unique address to each enclosure in an extended subsystem.
- Six I/O modules that integrate the SSB shelf with either an 8-bit single-ended, 16-bit single-ended, or 16-bit differential SCSI bus.
- Two cache modules, which support nonvolatile memory and dynamic cache policies to protect the availability of its unwritten (write-back) data.

Figure 1–1 The HSG80 Subsystem

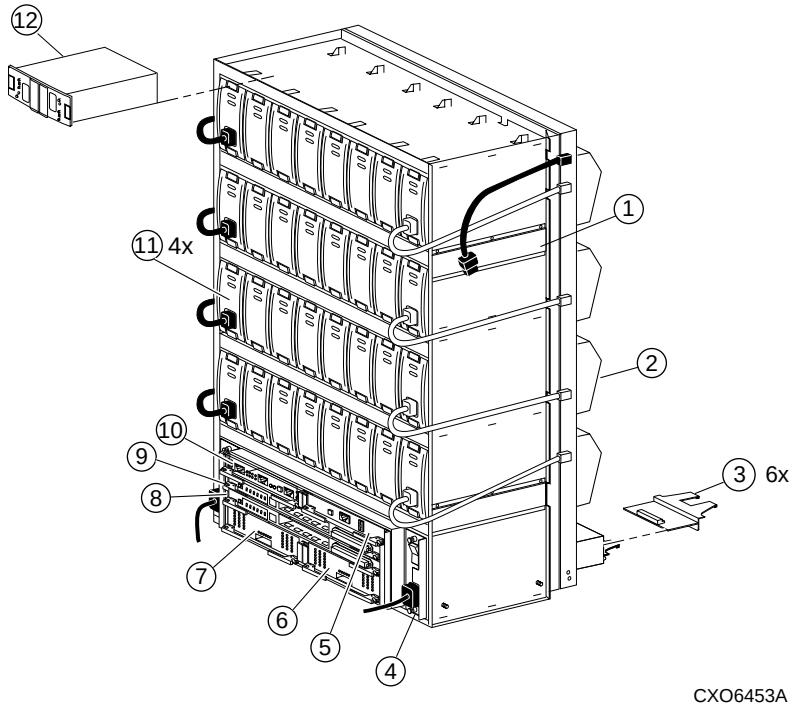


Table 1–1 Key to Figure 1–1 The HSG80 Subsystem

Item	Description	Part No.
1	BA370 rack-mountable enclosure	DS–BA370–AA
2	Cooling fan	DS–BA35X–MK
3	I/O module	70–32876–01
4	AC input module	DS–BA35X–HE
5	PVA module	DS–BA35X–EC
6	Cache module B	70–33256–01
7	Cache module A	70–33256–01
8	HSG80 controller B	70–33259–01
9	HSG80 controller A	70–33259–01
10	EMU	70–32866–01

Table 1–1 Key to Figure 1–1 The HSG80 Subsystem (Continued)

Item	Description	Part No.
11	180-watt power supply	DS–BA35X–HH
12	ECB, single ECB, dual	DS–HS35X–BC DS–HS35X–BD

Summary of HSG80 Features

Table 1–2 summarizes the features of the controller.

Table 1–2 Controller Features

Feature	Supported
Controller Failover	■ Transparent Failover ■ Multiple Bus Failover
Topology	■ FC–AL ■ 8 nodes per loop; maximum 4 initiators per loop ■ single and dual host adapter(s) ■ 2 controller subsystems; maximum 4 controllers (2 dual-redundant configurations) ■ 128 LUNs in Transparent and Multiple Bus Failover Mode
Supported Operating Systems	■ WINNT/Intel ■ WINNT/Alpha
Host protocol	■ FC–AL
Host bus interconnect	■ Copper Optical: MultiMode 50 Micron (Do not mix media types) ■ Gigabit link module (GLM)

Table 1–2 Controller Features (Continued)

Feature	Supported
Device protocol	■ SCSI–2 ■ Limited SCSI–3
Device bus interconnect	■ Ultra/Fast Wide Single-ended
Number of SCSI device ports	■ 6
Number of SCSI device targets per port	■ 12
Maximum number of SCSI devices	■ 72
Disk Drives	■ 4 and 9 GB Ultra & Fast Wide ■ 18 GB Ultra ■ 4 GB 10K Ultra
RAID levels supported	■ 0 ■ 1 ■ 0+1 ■ 3/5
Cache Capacity	■ 64 MB and 128 MB (32 MB DIMMs only) ■ 256 MB and 512 MB (128 MB DIMMs only)
Caching Features	■ Mirrored Cache ■ Sequential Read Ahead ■ Graceful Power Down Policy ■ UPS support with “auto cache flush”
Maximum number of RAID-5 and RAID-1 storagesets	■ 30
Maximum number of RAID-5 storagesets	■ 20

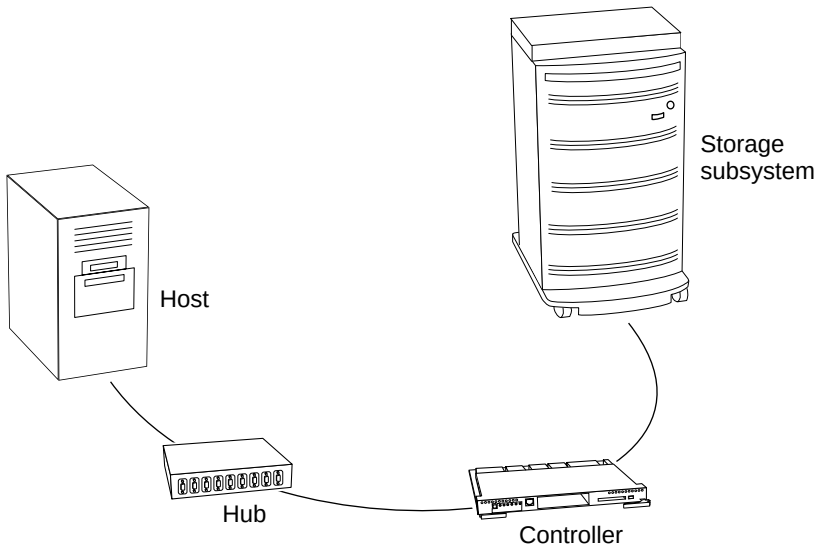
Table 1–2 Controller Features (Continued)

Feature	Supported
Maximum number of RAID-5, RAID-1, and RAID-0 storagesets	■ 45
Maximum number of partitions per storageset or individual disk	■ 8
Maximum number of units presented to each host	■ 16 (8 on each of 2 ports) This is a driver limitation.
Maximum number of devices per unit	■ 48
Serial interconnect speed	■ 1 GB/second
Maximum device, storageset, or unit size	■ 512 GB LUN capacity
Configuration Save	■ Transfer configuration from HSZ70 subsystem to HSG80 controller ■ Transfer configuration from ACS V 8.0 to ACS V 8.2
General Features	■ Host Modes/Access Privileges ■ Persistent Reserves ■ Program card updates ■ Device warm swap ■ Utilities to test disks

The HSG80 Array Controller

Your controller is the intelligent bridge between your host and the devices in your subsystem. As Figure 1–2 illustrates, it bridges the gap between the host and its storage subsystem.

Figure 1–2 A Host and Its Storage Subsystem



The controller is an integral part of any storage subsystem because it provides a host with high-performance and high-availability access to storage devices.

The controller provides the ability to combine several ordinary disk drives into a single, high-performance entity called a storageset. Storagesets are implementations of RAID technology, which ensures that every unpartitioned storageset, whether it uses two disk drives or ten, looks like a single storage unit to the host. See Chapter 3, “Creating Storagesets,” for more information about storagesets and how to configure them.

From the host’s perspective, the controller is simply another device connected to one of its I/O buses. Consequently, the host sends its I/O requests to the controller just as it would to any Fibre Channel device. From the subsystem’s perspective, the controller receives the I/O requests and directs them to the devices in the subsystem. Because the

controller processes the I/O requests, the host isn't burdened by the processing that's typically associated with reading and writing data to multiple storage devices.

For the most recent list of supported devices and operating systems, see the product-specific release notes that accompanied your controller's software. To determine which specific parts you need for your configuration, see "Connecting the Subsystem to the Host," page 2–14.

Figure 1–3 and Figure 1–4 detail the HSG80 Array Controller and its fibre channel components. Figure 1–5 highlights the variant parts for an optical configuration.

Figure 1–3 HSG80 Array Controller Fibre Channel Copper Cabling

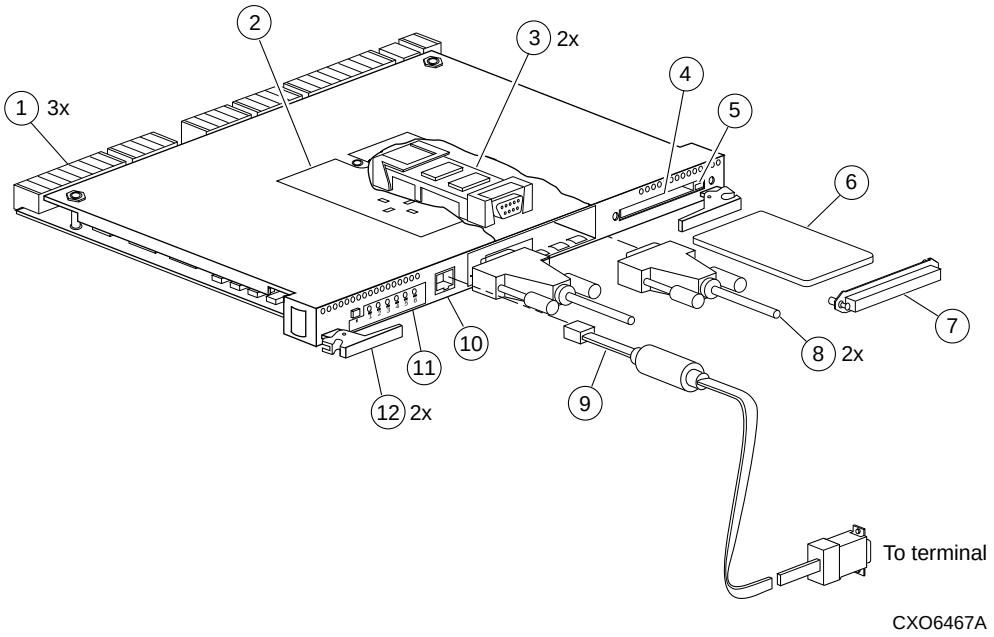


Table 1–3 Key to Figure 1–3 HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Copper Cabling

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Backplane connectors	—
2	Access Door	70–33287–01
3	GLM	30–49226–01
4	Program-card slot	—
5	Program-card ejection button	—
6	Program card	BG–R8Q3B–BA
7	ESD/PCMCIA card cover	74–52628–01
8	5-meter Fibre Channel copper cable 10-meter Fibre Channel copper cable	17–04718–06 17–04718–07
9	Maintenance Port Cable ■ See Figure 1–4 for information on an optional maintenance port cable and its parts	17–04074–02
10	Maintenance Port	—
11	Operator control panel (OCP)	—
12	Lever for removing, installing, and retaining controller module.	—

Figure 1–4 Optional Maintenance Port Cable for a Terminal Connection

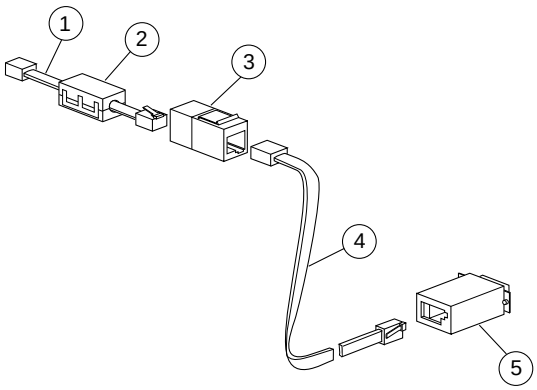


Table 1–4 Key to Figure 1–4: Optional Maintenance Port Cable for a Terminal Connection

Item	Description	Part Number
1	BC16E-xx Cable Assembly	17–04074–01
2	Ferrite Bead	16–25105–14
3	RJ-11 Adapter	12–43346–01
4	RJ-11 Extension Cable	17–03511–01
5	PC Serial Port Adapter, 9 pin D-sub to 25 pin SKT D-sub for a PC	12–45238–01
	PC Serial Port Adapter, 9 pin D-sub to 25 pin D-sub for Sun operating system	12–45238–02
	PC Serial Port Adapter, 9 pin D-sub to 25 pin D-sub, mod for an HP800 operating system	12–45238–03

Figure 1–5 HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Optical Cabling

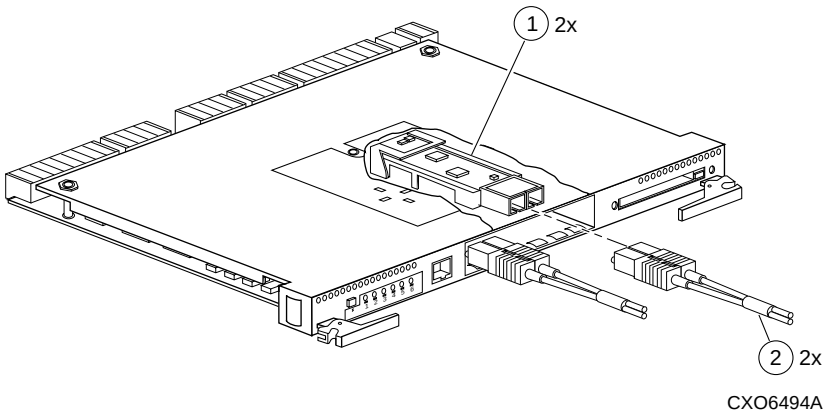


Table 1–5 Key to Figure 1–4 HSG80 Array Controller–Fibre Channel Optical cabling

Item	Description	Part No.
1	GLM	30–50124–01
2	2 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–03
	5 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–05
	10 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–06
	20 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–07
	30 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–08
	50 M Fibre Channel optical cable	17–04820–09

Caution If the Fibre Channel optical cable is not properly connected to the controller, controller failure may result. In addition, if the cable is not regularly maintained, its performance and lifespan will be affected. Before proceeding, it is important to administer the precationary measures detailed in the following sections.

Fibre Channel Optical Cable Precautions

Prior to connecting the Fibre Channel cable to the controller, look for the white stripe on each side of the coupling. After the cable is seated into the controller, be sure that the white stripes are hidden. Also, when connecting the Fibre Channel cable to the controller, listen for a

distinctive "snap" sound. This will indicate that the cable is properly inserted into the controller.

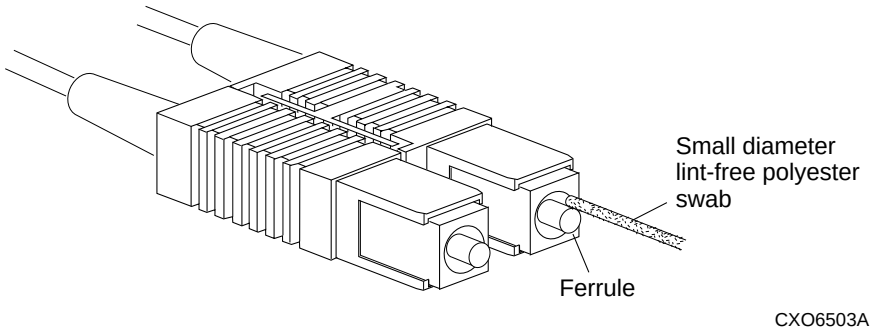
Fibre Channel Optical Cable Cleaning Instructions

It is essential to maintain clean cables to ensure optimum performance and lifespan of the cable. Figure 1–6 illustrates the proper cleaning procedures, as outlined in the following steps:

1. Open the prep cleaner using the lever on the side of the cable cartridge.
2. Rotate the end face of the ferrule 180 degrees.
3. Slide the ferrule end face along the opening to one side of the coupling.
4. Insert a lint-free polyester swab to dust out the cavity.
5. Remove the lint-free polyseter swab, and return the ferrule to its original position.
6. Repeat 180 degree rotation in the opposite direction.
7. Slide the ferrule end face along the opening to the opposite side.
8. Insert the lint-free polyester swab to dust out the cavity.
9. Return to step 5, and repeat remaining procedures until all areas of the cartridge are cleaned.

Note Be sure to clean both cartridges of the fibre channel coupling.

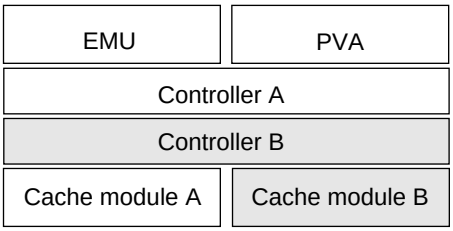
Figure 1–6 Fibre Channel Optical Cleaning Procedures



The HSG80 Array Controller components that you will use most often, such as the maintenance port and the OCP, are conveniently located on the controller's front panel. The host port and program-card slot are also located on the front panel, making it easy to update the controller's software or to connect the controller to a different host.

Each controller is supported by its own cache module. Figure 1–4 shows which cache module supports which controller in a dual-redundant configuration in a BA370 rack-mountable enclosure.

Figure 1–7 Location of Controllers and Cache Modules

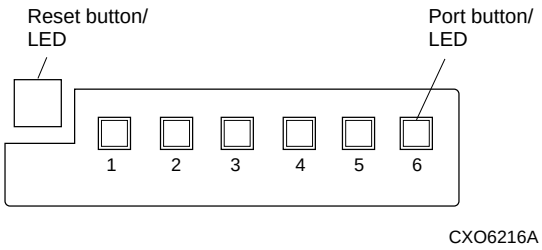


Tip DIGITAL recommends that you use the slots for controller A and cache module A for single configurations. Slot A responds to SCSI target ID number 7 on device buses; slot B responds to SCSI target ID number 6 on the device buses.

Operator Control Panel

The operator control panel (OCP) contains a reset button and six port LED buttons, as shown in Figure 1–5. The reset button flashes about once per second to indicate that the controller is operating normally. The port button LEDs correspond to the controller's device ports and remain off during normal operation. If an error occurs, the reset button and LEDs will illuminate in a solid or flashing pattern to help you diagnose the problem. See Appendix C, "LED Codes," for further explanation on these codes.

Figure 1–8 HSG80 Controller Operator Control Panel (OCP)



To identify the exact location of the OCP, refer to Figure 1–3.

Under normal circumstances, you will not need to remove the controller from its enclosure. For this reason, the components that you will use most often are conveniently located on the front panel. For example, the maintenance port provides a convenient way to connect a PC or terminal to your controller so that you can interact with it.

After you configure your controller, you should periodically check its control panel. If an error occurs, one or more of the LEDs on the control panel will flash in a pattern that will help you to diagnose the problem. See Chapter 4, "Troubleshooting," for details about troubleshooting your controller.

Maintenance Port

You can access the controller through a PC or a local terminal via the maintenance port, or through a remote terminal—sometimes called a virtual terminal or host console—via the host. DIGITAL recommends that you use a PC or a local terminal to carry out the troubleshooting and servicing procedures in this manual. See "Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller," page 2–7, for more information on connecting the controller with a maintenance port cable.

Utilities and Exercisers

The controller's software includes the following utilities and exercisers to assist in troubleshooting and maintaining the controller and the other modules that support its operation:

Fault Management Utility

The Fault Management Utility (FMU) provides a limited interface to the controller's fault-management system. As a troubleshooting tool, you can use FMU to display last-failure and memory-system-failure entries, translate many of the code values contained in event messages, and set the display characteristics of significant events and failures.

See "Fault Management Utility," page 4–17, for more information about using this utility.

Virtual Terminal Display

Use the virtual terminal display (VTDPY) utility to troubleshoot communication between the controller and its host, communication between the controller and the devices in the subsystem, and the state and I/O activity of the logical units, devices, and device ports in the subsystem.

See "Using VTDPY to Check for Communication Problems," page 4–23, for more information about using this utility.

Disk Inline Exerciser

Use the disk inline exerciser (DILX) to investigate the data-transfer capabilities of disk drives. DILX tests and verifies operation of the controller and the SCSI–2 disk drives attached to it. DILX generates intense read and write loads to the disk drive while monitoring the drive's performance and status. See "Checking for Disk-Drive Problems," page 4–37, for more information about this exerciser.

Configuration Utility

Use the configuration (CONFIG) utility to add one or more storage devices to the subsystem. This utility checks the device ports for new disk drives then adds them to the controller's configuration and automatically names them. See "Adding Several Disk Drives at a Time," page 3–55, for more information about using the CONFIG utility.

HSUTIL

Use HSUTIL to upgrade the firmware on disk drives in the subsystem and to format disk drives. See "Upgrading Firmware on a Device," page 6–11, for more information about this utility.

Code Load and Code Patch Utility

Use Code Load/Code Patch (CLCP) utility to upgrade the controller software and the EMU software. You can also use it to patch the controller software. When you install a new controller, you must have the correct software version and patch number. See "Upgrading Controller Software," page 6–2, for more information about using this utility.

Note Only DIGITAL field service personnel are authorized to upload EMU microcode updates. Contact the Customer Service Center (CSC) for directions in obtaining the appropriate EMU microcode and installation guide.

Clone Utility

Use the Clone utility to duplicate the data on any unpartitioned single-disk unit, stripeset, or mirrorset. Back up the cloned data while the actual storageset remains online. See "Cloning Data for Backup," page 3–19, for more information about using the Clone utility.

Field Replacement Utility

Use the field replacement utility (FRUTIL) to replace a failed controller (in a dual-redundant configuration) without shutting down the subsystem.You can also use this menu-driven utility to replace cache modules and external cache batteries. See Chapter 5, "Replacement Procedures," for a more detailed explanation of how to use FRUTIL.

Change Volume Serial Number Utility

Only DIGITIAL authorized service personnel may use this utility.

The Change Volume Serial Number (CHVSN) utility generates a new volume serial number (called *VSN*) for the specified device and writes it on the media. It is a way to eliminate duplicate volume serial numbers and to rename duplicates with different volume serial numbers.

Device Statistics Utility

The Device Statistics (DSTAT) utility allows you to log I/O activity on a controller over an extended period of time. Later, you can analyze that log to determine where the bottlenecks are and how to tune the controller for optimum performance.

Cache Module

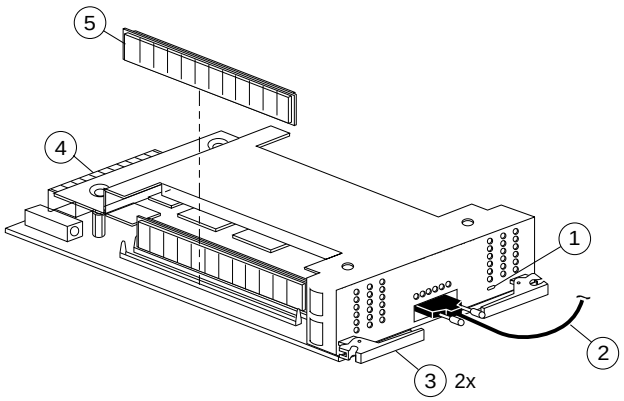
Each controller requires a companion cache module as shown in Figure 1–9. Figure 1–7 on page 1–13 shows the location of a controller's companion cache module. The cache module, which can contain up to 512 MB of memory, increases the subsystem's I/O performance by providing read, read-ahead, write-through, and write-back caching.

The size of the memory contained in the cache module depends on the configuration of the DIMMs, with the supported combinations shown in Table 1–6. For placement of the DIMMs, see "Replacing DIMMs," page 5–42.

Table 1–6 Cache Module Memory Configurations

DIMMs	Quantity	Memory
32 MB	2	64 MB
32 MB	4	128 MB
128 MB	2	256 MB
128 MB	4	512 MB

Figure 1–9 Cache Module



Item	Description	Part No.
1	Cache-memory power LED button	—
2	ECB Y cable for the BA370 Enclosure	17–04479–03
	ECB Y cable for the Data Center Cabinet	17–04479–04
3	Retaining lever	—
4	Backplane connector	—
5	64 MB cache upgrade	DS-HSDIM-AB
	256 MB cache upgrade	DS-MSDIM-AC

Caching Techniques

The cache module supports the following caching techniques to increase the subsystem's read and write performance:

- Read caching
- Read-ahead caching
- Write-through caching
- Write-back caching

Read Caching

When the controller receives a read request from the host, it reads the data from the disk drives, delivers it to the host, and stores the data in its cache module. This process is called read caching.

Read caching can decrease the subsystem's response time to many of the host's read requests. If the host requests some or all of the cached data, the controller satisfies the request from its cache module rather than from the disk drives. By default, read caching is enabled for all storage units.

See SET *unit number* MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER in Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more details.

Read-Ahead Caching

Read-ahead caching begins when the controller has already processed a read request, and it receives a sequential read request from the host. If the controller does not find the data in the cache memory, it reads the data from the disks and sends it to the cache memory.

The controller then anticipates subsequent read requests and begins to prefetch the next blocks of data from the disks as it sends the requested read data to the host. This is a parallel action. The controller notifies the host of the read completion, and subsequent sequential read requests are satisfied from the cache memory. By default, read-ahead caching is enabled for all disk units.

Write-Through Caching

When the controller receives a write request from the host, it stores the data in its cache module, writes the data to the disk drives, then notifies the host when the write operation is complete. This process is called write-through caching because the data actually passes through—and is stored in—the cache memory on its way to the disk drives.

If you enable read caching for a storage unit, write-through caching is automatically enabled. Likewise, if you disable read caching, write-through caching is automatically disabled.

Write-Back Caching

This caching technique improves the subsystem's response time to write requests by allowing the controller to declare the write operation "complete" as soon as the data reaches its cache memory. The controller performs the slower operation of writing the data to the disk drives at a later time.

By default, write-back caching is enabled for all units. In either case, the controller will not provide write-back caching to a unit unless the cache memory is non-volatile, as described in the next section.

Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching

The cache module supports nonvolatile memory and dynamic cache policies to protect the availability of its unwritten (write-back) data:

Nonvolatile Memory

The controller can provide write-back caching for any storage unit as long as the controller's cache memory is nonvolatile. In other words, to enable write-back caching, you must provide a backup power source to the cache module to preserve the unwritten cache data in the event of a power failure. If the cache memory were volatile—that is, if it didn't have a backup power supply—the unwritten cache data would be lost during a power failure.

By default, the controller expects to use an ECB as the backup power source for its cache module. See "External Cache Battery," page 1–28, for more information about the ECB. However, if your subsystem is backed up by a UPS (uninterruptible power supply), you can tell the controller to use the UPS as the backup power source with the SET

THIS CONTROLLER CACHE_UPS command. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for instructions on using this command.

Cache Policies Resulting from Cache Module Failures

If the controller detects a full or partial failure of its cache module or ECB, it automatically reacts to preserve the unwritten data in its cache module. Depending upon the severity of the failure, the controller chooses an interim caching technique (also called the cache policy) which it uses until you repair or replace the cache module or ECB.

Table 1-7 shows the cache policies resulting from a full or partial failure of cache module A in a dual-redundant controller configuration. The consequences shown in this table are the same for cache module B.

Table 1-7 Cache Policies and Cache Module Status

Cache Module Status		**Cache Policy**	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
Good	Good	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-back caching. **Failover:** No	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-back caching. **Failover:** No
Multibit cache memory failure	Good	**Data loss**: Forced error and loss of write-back data for which multibit error occurred. Controller A detects and reports the lost blocks. **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-back caching. **Failover:** No	**Data loss:** No. Controller A recovers its lost write-back data from the mirrored copy on cache B. **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-back caching. **Failover:** No

Table 1-7 Cache Policies and Cache Module Status (Continued)

Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
DIMM or cache memory controller chip failure	Good	**Data integrity**: Write-back data that was not written to media when failure occurred was not recovered. **Cache policy:** Controller A supports write-through caching only; controller B supports write-back caching. **Failover:** In transparent failover, all units failover to controller B. In multiple-bus failover with host-assist, only those units that use write-back caching, such as RAIDsets and mirrorsets, failover to controller B. All units with lost data become inoperative until you clear them with the CLEAR LOST_DATA command. Units that didn't lose data operate normally on controller B. In single controller configurations, RAIDsets, mirrorsets, and all units with lost data become inoperative. Although you can clear the lost data errors on some units, RAIDsets and mirrorsets remain inoperative until you repair or replace the nonvolatile memory on cache A.	**Data integrity:** Controller A recovers all of its write-back data from the mirrored copy on cache B. **Cache policy:** Controller A supports write-through caching only; controller B supports write-back caching. **Failover:** In transparent failover, all units failover to controller B and operate normally. In multiple-bus failover with host-assist, only those units that use write-back caching, such as RAIDsets and mirrorsets, failover to controller B.

Table 1-7 Cache Policies and Cache Module Status (Continued)

Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
Cache Board Failure	Good	Same as for DIMM failure.	**Data integrity:** Controller A recovers all of its write-back data from the mirrored copy on cache B. **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. Controller B cannot execute mirrored writes because cache module A cannot mirror controller B's unwritten data. **Failover:** No

Table 1-8 shows the cache policies resulting from full or partial failure of cache module A's ECB in a dual-redundant configuration. Note that when cache module A is at least 50% charged, the ECB is still operable and charging. When it is less than 50% charged, the ECB is low but still charging. The consequences shown in this table are reciprocal for a failure of cache module B's ECB.

Table 1-8 Cache Policies Resulting and ECB Status

Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
At least 50% charged	At least 50% charged	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Both controllers continue to support write-back caching. **Failover:** No	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers continue to support write-back caching. **Failover:** No

Table 1-8 Cache Policies Resulting and ECB Status (Continued)

Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
Less than 50% charged	At least 50% charged	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Controller A supports write-through caching only; controller B supports write-back caching. **Failover:** In transparent failover, all units failover to controller B. In multiple-bus failover with host-assist, only those units that use write-back caching, such as RAIDsets and mirrorsets, failover to controller B. In single configurations, the controller only provides write-through caching to its units.	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers continue to support write-back caching. **Failover:** No

Table 1-8 Cache Policies Resulting and ECB Status (Continued)

Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
Failed	At least 50% charged	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Controller A supports write-through caching only; controller B supports write-back caching. **Failover:** In transparent failover, all units failover to controller B and operate normally. In multiple-bus failover with host-assist, only those units that use write-back caching, such as RAIDsets and mirrorsets, failover to controller B. In single configurations, the controller only provides write-through caching to its units.	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers continue to support write-back caching. **Failover:** No
Less than 50% charged	Less than 50% charged	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** No	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** No

Table 1-8 Cache Policies Resulting and ECB Status (Continued)

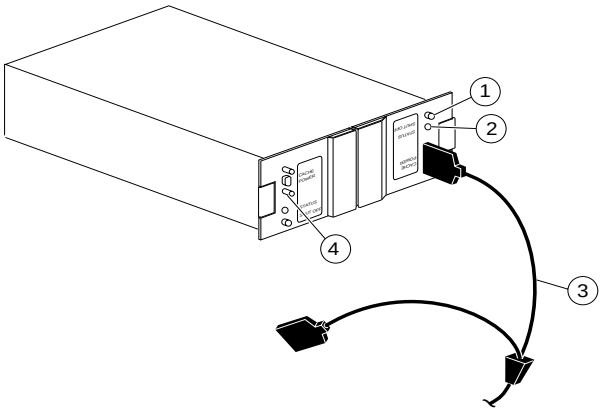
Cache Module Status		Cache Policy	
Cache A	**Cache B**	**Unmirrored Cache**	**Mirrored Cache**
Failed	Less than 50% charged	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** In transparent failover, all units failover to controller B and operate normally. In multiple-bus failover with host-assist, only those units that use write-back caching, such as RAIDsets and mirrorsets, failover to controller B. In single configurations, the controller only provides write-through caching to its units.	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** No
Failed	Failed	**Data loss**: No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** No. RAIDsets and mirrorsets become inoperative. Other units that use write-back caching operate with write-through caching only.	**Data loss:** No **Cache policy:** Both controllers support write-through caching only. **Failover:** No. RAIDsets and mirrorsets become inoperative. Other units that use write-back caching operate with write-through caching only.

External Cache Battery

To preserve the write-back cache data in the event of a primary power failure, a cache module must be connected to an external cache battery (ECB) or a UPS.

DIGITAL supplies two versions of ECBs: a single-battery ECB for single controller configurations, and a dual-battery ECB for dual-redundant controller configurations, which is shown in Figure 1–10.

Figure 1–10ECB for Dual-Redundant Configurations



Item	Description	Part No.
	Dual battery ECB SBB (Storage Building Block)	DS–HS35X–BD
	Single battery ECB SBB	DS–HS35X–BC
1	Shut off button	—
2	Status LED	—
3	ECB Y cable for the BA370 Enclosure	17–04479–03
	ECB Y cable for the Data Center Cabinet	17–04479–04
4	Micro-D port for second battery	—

When the batteries are fully charged, an ECB can preserve 512 MB of cache memory for 24 hours. However, the battery capacity depends upon the size of memory contained in the cache module, as defined in the Table 1–9.

Table 1–9 ECB Capacity Based on Memory Size

Size	DIMM Combinations	Capacity
64 MB	Two, 32 MB	96 hours
128 MB	Four, 32 MB	48 hours
256 MB	Two, 128 MB	48 hours
512 MB	Four, 128 MB	24 hours

Charging Diagnostics

Whenever you restart the controller, its diagnostic routines automatically check the charge in the ECB's batteries. If the batteries are fully charged, the controller reports them as good and rechecks them every 24 hours. If the batteries are charging, the controller rechecks them every four minutes. Batteries are reported as being either above or below 50 percent in capacity. Batteries below 50 percent in capacity are referred to as being low.

This four-minute polling continues for up to 10 hours—the maximum time it should take to recharge the batteries. If the batteries have not been charged sufficiently after 10 hours, the controller declares them to be failed.

Battery Hysteresis

When charging a battery, write-back caching will be allowed as long as a previous down time has not drained more than 50 percent of a battery's capacity. When a battery is operating below 50 percent capacity, the battery is considered to be low and write-back caching is disabled.

Caution DIGITAL recommends that you replace the ECB every two years to prevent battery failure.

Note If a UPS is used for backup power, the controller does not check the battery. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for information about the CACHE_UPS and NOCACHE_UPS switches.

CHAPTER 2

Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller

This chapter explains how to configure an HSG80 Array Controller and the modules that support its operation in a StorageWorks subsystem.

Introduction

Use the *Getting Started Guide* that came with your subsystem to unpack and set up your subsystem prior to configuring your controller. Unless you specifically requested a preconfigured subsystem, you will have to configure your controller and its subsystem before you can use them.

For the complete syntax and descriptions of the CLI commands used in the configuration procedure, see Appendix B, "CLI Commands."

Configuration Rules

Before you configure your controller, review these configuration rules and ensure your planned configuration meets the requirements and conditions.

- Maximum 128 visible LUNs/200 assignable unit numbers
- Maximum 512 GB LUN capacity
- Maximum 72 physical devices
- Maximum 20 RAID-5 storagesets
- Maximum 30 RAID-5 and RAID-1 storagesets
- Maximum 45 RAID-5, RAID-1, and RAID-0 storagesets
- Maximum 8 partitions of a storageset or individual disk
- Maximum 6 members per mirrorset
- Maximum 14 members per RAID-5 storageset
- Maximum 24 members per Stripeset
- Maximum 48 physical devices per striped mirrorset

Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller

You can use this procedure to configure your controller in one of the following ways:

- Single controller
- Dual controllers (in transparent failover mode)
- Multiple-bus failover (host-assisted), dual-redundant controllers

References sited in the steps below will help you locate details about the commands and concepts.

Use the following steps to configure an HSG80 array controller:

1. Use the power verification and addressing (PVA) module ID switch to set the SCSI ID number for the BA370 rack-mountable enclosure.

   See “Setting the PVA Module ID Switch,” page 2–6, for details about PVA switch settings.

2. Remove the program card ESD cover, and insert the controller’s program card. Replace the ESD cover.
3. Turn on the power to the pedestal enclosure.
4. Establish a local connection to the controller.

   See “Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller,” page 2–7, for details about creating a local connection.

5. Choose a configuration for the controller:
   a. If you are configuring dual- redundant controllers in transparent failover mode, proceed to step 9.
   b. If you are configuring dual-redundant controllers in multiple-bus (sometimes called host-assisted) failover mode, skip to step 10.
6. If the controller reports a node ID of all zeros (0000-0000-0000-0000) set the subsystem worldwide name (node ID) to the worldwide name that came with your subsystem. Use the steps in “Restoring Worldwide Names (Node IDs),” page 3–26.
7. Set the port topology for each port.

   SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_1_TOPOLOGY=“*topology*”

   SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=*“topology”*

If this is a single configuration with a single hub, set PORT 2 off-line.

If this is a dual-redundant configuration, the "other controller" inherits "this controller's" port topology.

See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about using the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_n_TOPOLOGY= command.

8. If you selected LOOP_HARD for the port topology, specify the arbitrated loop physical address (ALPA) for the host ports.

   SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_1_ALPA=*"address"*

   SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_ALPA=*"address"*

   If this is a dual-redundant configuration, the "other controller" inherits "this controller's" port ALPA addresses.

   See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about using the SET OTHER_CONTROLLER PORT_n_ALPA= command.

9. Put "this controller" into transparent failover mode. Use the following syntax:

   SET FAILOVER COPY = THIS_CONTROLLER

   The "other controller" inherits "this controller's" configuration, then restarts. Wait for it to return to normal operation before continuing.

   See details about failover modes in "Selecting a Failover Mode," page 2–10.

10. Put "this controller" in multiple-bus failover mode using the follwing syntax:

    SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    The "other controller" inherits "this controller's" configuration, then restarts. Wait for it to return to normal operation before continuing.

    See "Selecting a Failover Mode," page 2–10, for details about failover modes.

11. Optional: Change the CLI prompt. Type the following command:

    SET THIS_CONTROLLER PROMPT = *"new prompt"*

If you're configuring dual-redundant controllers, also change the CLI prompt on the "other controller." Use the following syntax:

SET OTHER_CONTROLLER PROMPT = *"new prompt"*

See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about using the SET OTHER_CONTROLLER PROMPT= command.

12. Optional: Indicate that your subsystem power is supported by a UPS. Use the following syntax:

    SET THIS_CONTROLLER CACHE_UPS

    The "other controller" inherits "this controller's" cache UPS setting. See "Backing up Power with a UPS," page 2–13, for more information.

13. Restart the controller, using the following syntax:

    RESTART THIS_CONTROLLER

    If this is a dual-redundant configuration, restart the "other controller" using the following syntax:

    RESTART OTHER_CONTROLLER

    See the RESTART THIS_CONTROLLER command in Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about using this command.

14. When the CLI prompt reappears, it will display details about the controller you configured. Use the following syntax:

    SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL

    See the SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL command in Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about using this command.

15. Connect the controller to the host.

    See "Connecting the Subsystem to the Host," page 2–14 for information about how to complete the connection.

16. Plan and configure storagesets for your subsystem.

    See Chapter 3, "Creating Storagesets," for detailed information about planning and configuring storagesets.

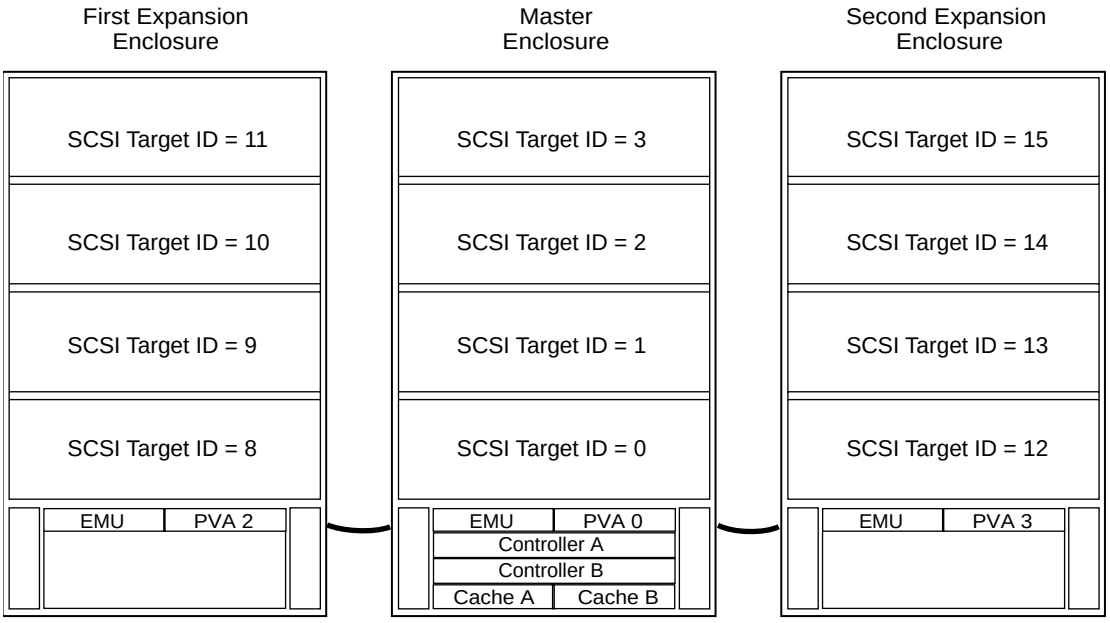
Note If you have problems during the configuration, use the SET NOFAILOVER and CONFIGURATION RESTORE commands to reset the system to the factory settings. You must reset the controller after these commands are entered to employ the original settings.

Setting the PVA Module ID Switch

The Power, Verification, and Addressing (PVA) module provides unique addresses to extended subsystems. Each BA370 rack-mountable enclosure in an extended subsystem must have its own PVA ID. Use PVA ID 0 for the enclosure that contains the array controllers. Use PVA IDs 2 and 3 for the additional enclosures. Figure 2–1 illustrates the PVA settings in an extended subsystem.

See the documentation that accompanied your enclosure for more details about the PVA and its settings.

Figure 2–1 SCSI Target ID Numbers on the Controller Device Bus and PVA Settings in an Extended Subsytem



OTE: SCSI target IDs 4 and 5 are reserved. IDs 6 and 7 are used by the controllers.

CXO5806B

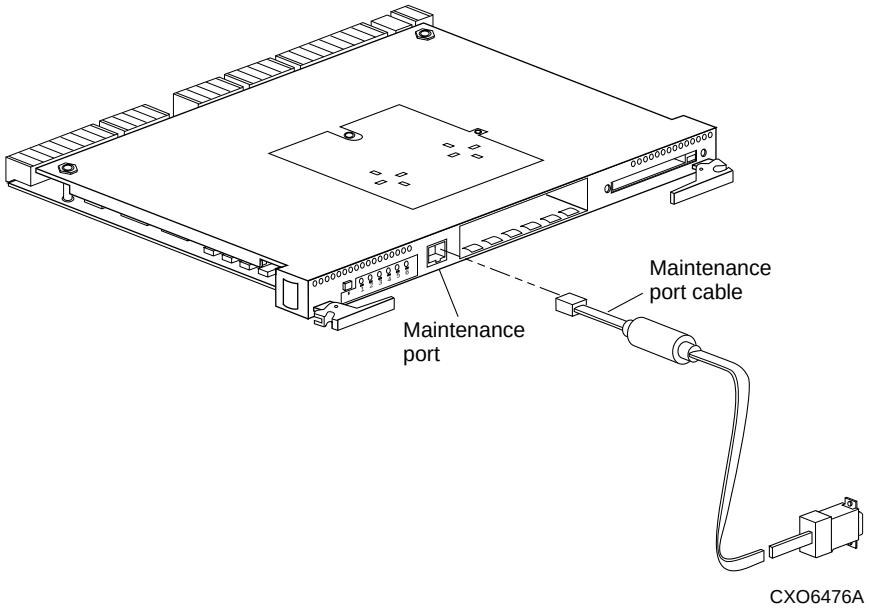
Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller

You can communicate with a controller locally or remotely. Use a local connection to configure the controller for the first time. Use a remote connection to your host system for all subsequent configuration tasks. See the *Getting Started Guide* that came with your platform kit for details.

The maintenance port provides a convenient way to connect a PC or terminal to the controller so that you can troubleshoot and configure it. This port accepts a standard RS-232 jack from any EIA-423 compatible terminal or a PC with a terminal-emulation program. The maintenance port supports serial communications with default values of 9600 baud using 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity.

Note The maintenance port cable shown in Figure 2–2 has a 9-pin connector molded onto its end for a PC connection. If you need a terminal connection, see Figure 1–4 on page 1–10 for information on optional cabling.

Figure 2–2 Terminal to Local-Connection Port Connection



Caution The local-connection port described in this book generates, uses, and can radiate radio-frequency energy through cables that are connected to it. This energy may interfere with radio and television reception. Do not leave any cables connected to it when you are not communicating with the controller.

Follow these steps to establish a local connection for setting the controller's initial configuration:

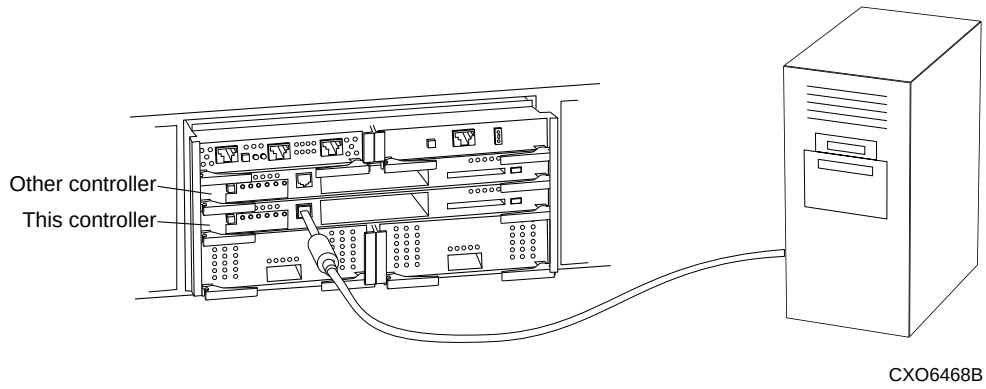
1. Turn off the PC or terminal, and connect it to the controller, as shown in Figure 2–2.
    a. For a PC connection, plug one end of the maintenance port cable into the terminal; plug the other end into the controller's maintenance port.
    a. For a terminal connection, refer to Figure 1–4 on page 1–10 for cabling information.
2. Turn on the PC or terminal.
3. Configure the terminal for 9600 baud, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity.
4. Press the Enter or Return key. A copyright notice and the CLI prompt appear, indicating that you established a local connection with the controller.
5. Optional: to increase the data transfer rate to 19200 baud:
    a. Set the controller to 19200 baud with one of the following commands:

        ```
        SET THIS_CONTROLLER TERMINAL SPEED=19200
        SET OTHER_CONTROLLER TERMINAL SPEED=19200
        ```

    b. Configure the PC or terminal for 19200 baud.

When you are entering CLI commands in a dual-redundant controller configuration, remember that the conroller to which you're connected is "this controller" and the remaining controller is the "other controller". See Figure 2–3.

Figure 2–3 “This Controller” and “Other Controller”



Selecting a Failover Mode

When selecting a failover mode, use transparent failover if you want the failover to occur without any intervention from the host, or employ multiple-bus failover if you want the host to send commands to the companion array controller.

Using Transparent Failover

Transparent failover is a dual-redundant controller configuration in which two controllers are connected to the same host and device buses. Use this configuration if you want to use two controllers to service the entire group of storagesets, single-disk units, and other storage devices. Because both controllers service the same storage units, either controller can continue to service all of the units if its companion controller fails.

Transparent failover occurs when a controller fails or a user presses the reset button on one of the controllers. To configure controllers for transparent failover, mount both controllers in the same BA370 pedestal and follow the steps in "Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller," page 2–3.

Keep the following tips in mind if you configure controllers for transparent failover:

- Set your controllers for transparent failover before configuring devices. Once the devices, storagesets, and units are added to one controller's configuration, they are automatically added to the other's.
- If you decide to configure your devices before setting the controllers for transparent failover, make sure you know which controller has the good configuration information before specifying SET FAILOVER COPY=. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for details about the SET FAILOVER COPY= command.
- Balance your assignment of devices. For example, in an18-device subsystem, place 3 devices on each of the 6 ports, rather than placing 6 devices on each of 3 ports.
- The controller to which you copy configuration information restarts after you enter the SET FAILOVER command.

Using Multiple-Bus Failover

Multiple-bus (or host-assisted) failover is a dual-redundant controller configuration in which each array controller has its own connection to the host. Thus, if one of the host connections to an array controller fails, the host can cause units that became inaccessible to failover to the remaining viable connection. Because both array controllers service the same storage units, either array controller can continue to service all of the units if the other array controller fails.

Keep the following points in mind when considering using multiple-bus failover:

- The host distributes the I/O load between the array controllers.
- The host must have two Fibre Channel adapters as well as operating-system software to support the multiple-bus failover, dual-redundant controller configuration.
- Mount both array controllers in the same BA370 rack-mountable enclosure and follow the steps in “Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller,” page 2–3.
- Partitioning is not supported.

Enabling Mirrored Write-Back Cache

Before configuring dual-redundant controllers and enabling mirroring, ensure the following conditions are met:

- Both array controllers support the same size cache, 64 MB, 128 MB, 256MB, or 512 MB.
- Diagnostics indicates that both caches are good.
- Both caches have a battery present, if you have not enabled the CACHE_UPS switch. A battery does not have to be present for either cache if you enable the CACHE_UPS switch.
- No unit errors are outstanding, for example, lost data or data that cannot be written to devices.
- Both array controllers are started and configured in failover mode.

For important considerations when adding or replacing DIMMs in a mirrored cache configuration, see "Replacing DIMMs," page 5–42.

Selecting a Cache Mode

Before selecting a cache mode you should understand the caching techniques supported by the cache module.

The cache module supports read, read-ahead, write-through, and write-back caching techniques that you can enable separately for each storage unit in a subsystem. For example, you can enable only read and write-through caching for some units while enabling only write-back caching for other units.

For details about these caching techniques, see"Caching Techniques," page 1–20.

Fault-Tolerance

The cache module supports the following features to protect the availability of its unwritten (write-back) data:

- Nonvolatile memory (required for write-back caching).
- Dynamic caching techniques (automatic).

For details about these features, see "Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching," page 1–21.

Backing up Power with a UPS

By default, the controller expects to use an external cache battery (ECB) as backup power to the cache module. You can also opt to use an uninterruptable power supply (UPS) to provide backup power in the event of a primary power failure. See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for details about the SET THIS_CONTROLLER CACHE_UPS command. See Table 1-7 on page 1–22 and Table 1-8 on page 1–24 for information about cache policies.

Connecting the Subsystem to the Host

This section describes how to connect your subsystem to a host. It also includes instructions for connecting a single (nonredundant) controller and dual-redundant controllers to the host.

Caution Do not attempt to configure dual-redundant controllers using one hub with a loopback cable. This configuration will cause data corruption and is not supported.

Connecting a Single Controller to the Host Using One Hub

There are two possible configurations for a single controller, one that uses a single hub, and a second that uses two hubs. The second configuration can be used if you have two hosts to which you're connecting to your controller.

Figure 2–4 Cabling for Single Configuration with Fibre Channel Copper Support

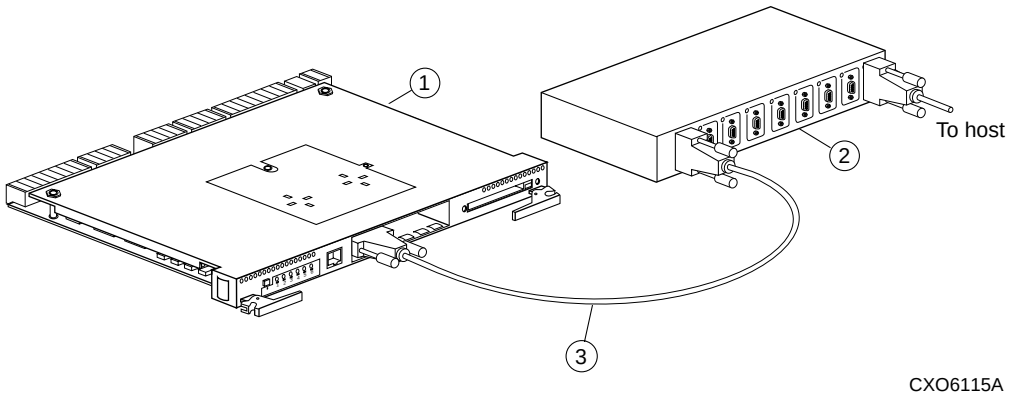


Table 2–1 Key to Figure 2–4 Cabling for Single Configuration (copper)

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Single Controller	70-33259-xx
2	9-Port Fibre Channel HUB	DS-DHGGA-CA
3	5-meter copper Fibre Channel cable or 10-meter copper Fibre Channel cable	17-04718-06 17-04718-07

Use the following steps to connect a single, nonredundant controller to the host using one hub:

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controller.
2. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on the controller to Port 1 of the hub.

   For this configuration, set Port 2 off-line using the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE command. See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for details about the SET command.
3. Follow the procedures in the Getting Started Guide for connecting the Fibre Channel cable from the hub to your host system.
4. Route and tie the cables as desired.

   Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

Figure 2–5 Cabling for Single Configuration with Fibre Channel Optical Support

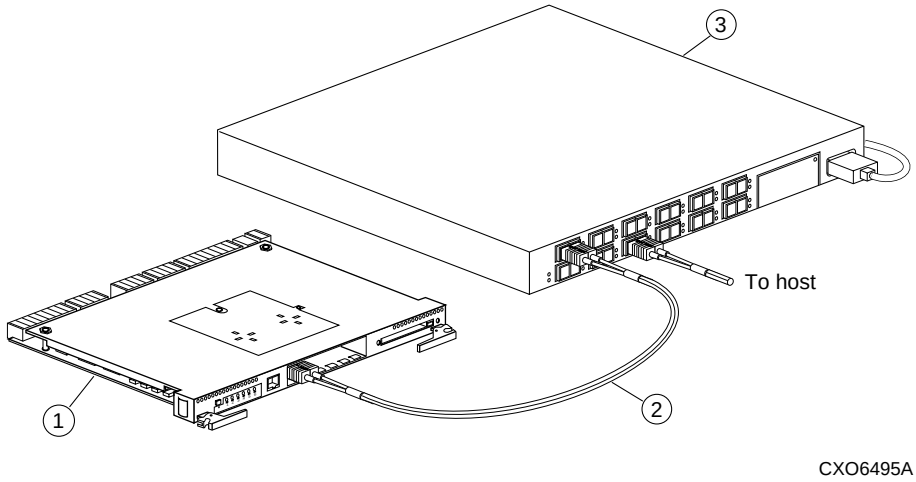


Table 2–2 Key to Figure 2–5 Cabling for Single Configuration (optical)

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Single Controller	70–33259–xx
2	.5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–01
	1 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–02
	2 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–03
	3 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–04
	5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–05
	10 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–06
	20 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–07
	30 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–08
	50 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–09
	100 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–10
	200 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–11
	400 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–12
3	12-Port Fibre Channel HUB	DHGGA-CA

Use the following steps to connect a single, nonredundant controller to the host using one hub:

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controller.
2. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on the controller to Port 1 of the hub.

   For this configuration, set Port 2 off-line using the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE command. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for details about the SET command.
3. Follow the procedures in the Getting Started Guide for connecting the Fibre Channel cable from the hub to your host system.
4. Route and tie the cables as desired.
5. Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

Connecting a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration to the Host

There are two possible ways to connect dual-redundant controllers to your host. The first method requires two hubs; the second method requires one hub.

Using Two Hubs

Use the following steps and Figure 2–6 to connect your dual-redundant controllers to the host using two hubs with copper support.

Figure 2–6 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs using Fibre Channel Copper Support

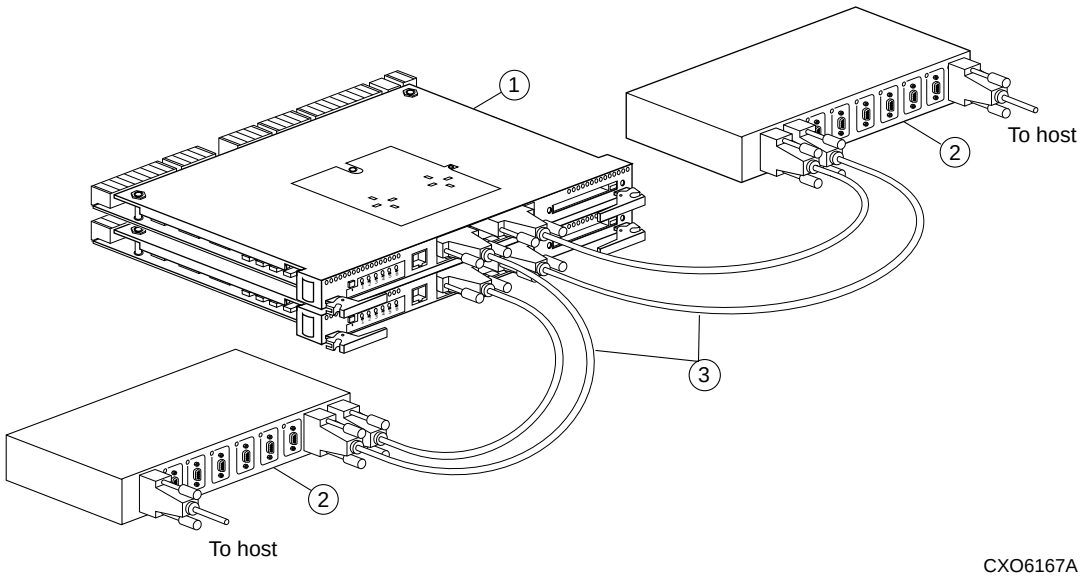


Table 2–3 Key to Figure 2–6 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs (copper)

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Dual Controller	—
2	9-port Fibre Channel HUB	DS–DHGGA–CA
3	5-meter host Fibre Channel cable 10-meter host Fibre Channel cable	17–04718–06 17–04718–07

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controllers.
2. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on controller A to Port 9 on hub 1. Repeat this step to connect the second cable from Port 1 on controller B to Port 8 on hub 1.
3. Connect another Fibre Channel cable from Port 2 on controller A to Port 1 on hub 2. Repeat this step to connect the final cable from Port 2 on controller B to Port 2 on hub 2.
4. Connect each hub to their respective host according to the instructions in the Getting Started manual.
5. Route and tie the cables as desired.

   Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

Use the following steps and Figure 2–7 to connect your dual-redundant controllers to the host using two hubs with optical support:

Figure 2–7 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs using Fibre Channel Optical Support

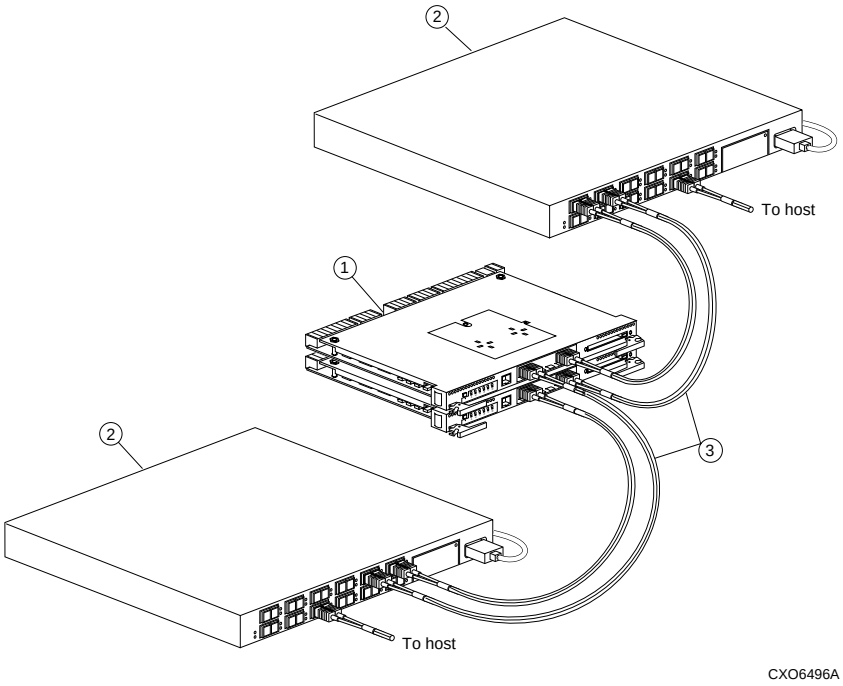


Table 2–4 Key to Figure 2–7 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with Two Hubs (optical)

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Dual Controller	—
2	12-Port Fibre Channel HUB	DHGGA-CA
3	.5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–01
	1 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–02
	2 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–03
	3 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–04
	5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–05
	10 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–06
	20 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–07
	30 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–08
	50 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–09
	100 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–10
	200 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–11
	400 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–12

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controllers.
2. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on controller A to Port 9 on hub 1. Repeat this step to connect the second cable from Port 1 on controller B to Port 8 on hub 1.
3. Connect another Fibre Channel cable from Port 2 on controller A to Port 1 on hub 2. Repeat this step to connect the final cable from Port 2 on controller B to Port 2 on hub 2.
4. Connect each hub to their respective host according to the instructions in the Getting Started manual.
5. Route and tie the cables as desired.
6. Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

Using One Hub

Use the following steps and Figure 2–8 to connect your dual-redundant controllers to the host using one hub with copper support:

Figure 2–8 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Copper Support

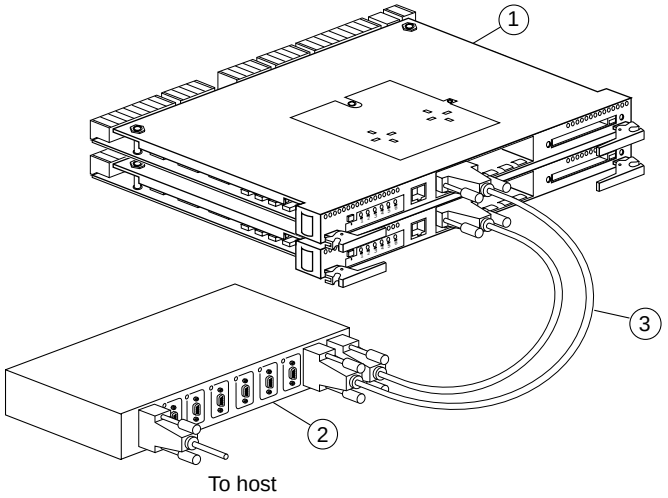


Table 2–5 Key to Figure 2–8 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Copper Support

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Dual Controller	—
2	9-port Fibre Channel HUB	DS-DHGGA-CA
3	5-meter host Fibre Channel cable 10-meter host Fibre Channel cable	17-04718-06 17-04718-07

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controllers.
2. For this configuration, set Port 2 off-line using the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE command. See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for details about the SET command.

3. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on controller A to Port 9 on hub 1. Repeat this step to connect the second cable from Port 1 on controller B to Port 8 on hub 1.
4. Connect another Fibre Channel cable from Port 2 on controller A to Port 1 on hub 2. Repeat this step to connect the final cable from Port 2 on controller B to Port 2 on hub 2.
5. Connect each hub to their respective host according to the instructions supplied in the Getting Started manual.
6. Route and tie the cables as desired.
7. Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

Use the following steps and Figure 2–9 to connect your dual-redundant controllers to the host using one hub with copper support:

Figure 2–9 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Optical Support

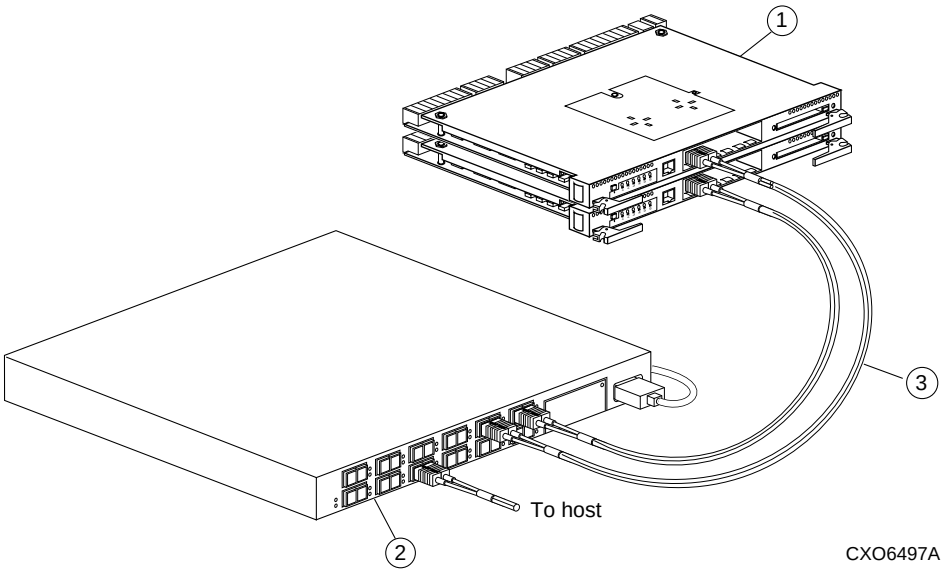


Table 2–6 Key to Figure 2–9 Cabling for Dual-Redundant Configuration with One Hub using Fibre Channel Optical Support

Item	Description	Part No.
1	Dual Controller	—
2	12-Port Fibre Channel HUB	DHGGA-CA
3	.5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–01
	1 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–02
	2 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–03
	3 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–04
	5 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–05
	10 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–06
	20 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–07
	30 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–08
	50 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–09
	100 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–10
	200 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–11
	400 M Fibre Channel Optic cable	17–04820–12

1. Stop all I/O from the host to its devices on the bus to which you are connecting the controllers.
2. For this configuration, set Port 2 off-line using the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE command. See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for details about the SET command.
3. Connect the Fibre Channel cable from Port 1 on controller A to Port 9 on hub 1. Repeat this step to connect the second cable from Port 1 on controller B to Port 8 on hub 1.
4. Connect another Fibre Channel cable from Port 2 on controller A to Port 1 on hub 2. Repeat this step to connect the final cable from Port 2 on controller B to Port 2 on hub 2.
5. Connect each hub to their respective host according to the instructions supplied in the Getting Started manual.
6. Route and tie the cables as desired.
7. Restart the I/O from the host. Some operating systems may require you to restart the host to see the devices attached to the new controller.

CHAPTER 3

Creating Storagesets

This chapter provides information to help you create storagesets for your subsystem. The procedure in this chapter takes you through the planning steps and procedures for creating storagesets.

Introduction

Storagesets are implementations of RAID technology, also known as a "Redundant Array of Independent Disks." Every storageset shares one important feature: each one looks like a single storage unit to the host, regardless of the number of drives it uses.

You can create storage units by combining disk drives into storagesets, such as stripesets, RAIDsets, and mirrorsets, or by presenting them to the host as single-disk units, as shown in Figure 3–1.

- Stripesets (RAID 0) combine disk drives in serial to increase transfer or request rates.
- Mirrorsets (RAID 1) combine disk drives in parallel to provide a highly-reliable storage unit.
- RAIDsets (RAID 3/5) combine disk drives in serial—as do stripesets—but also store parity data to ensure high reliability.
- Striped mirrorsets (RAID 0+1) combine mirrorsets in serial to provide the highest throughput and availability of any storage unit.

Controllers can support the number of RAIDsets as listed in Table 3-1.

For a complete discussion of RAID, refer to *The RAIDBOOK—A Source Book for Disk Array Technology.*

Figure 3–1 Units Created from Storagesets, Partitions, and Drives

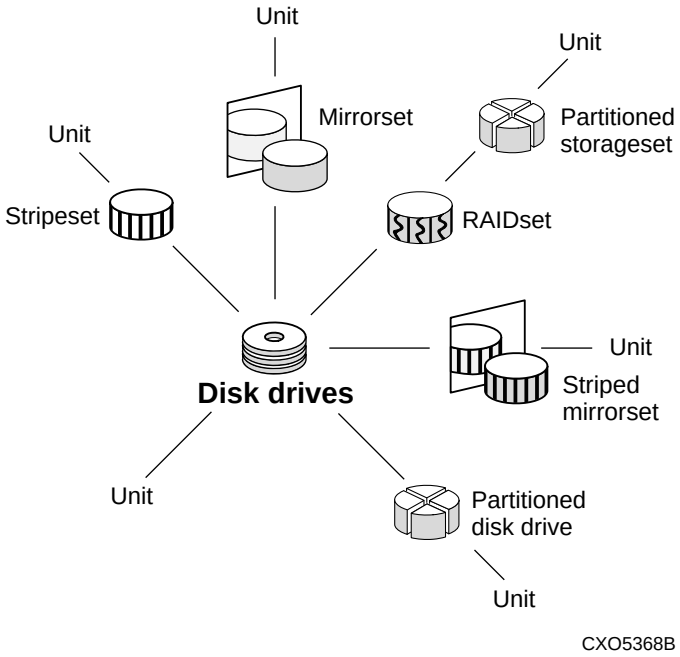


Table 3–1 Controller Limitations for RAIDsets

RAIDset Type	Limit
Total number of RAID5	20
Total number of RAID5 + RAID1	30
Total number of RAID5 + RAID1 + RAID0	45

Planning and Configuring Storagesets

Use this procedure to plan and configure the storagesets for your subsystem. Use the references in each step to locate details about specific commands and concepts.

1. Create a storageset and device profile. See "Creating a Storageset and Device Profile," page 3–5, for suggestions about creating a profile.
2. Determine your storage requirements. Use the questions in "Determining Storage Requirements," page 3–7, to help you.
3. Choose the type of storagesets you need to use in your subsystem. See "Choosing a Storageset Type," page 3–8, for a comparison and description of each type of storageset.
4. Select names for your storagesets and units. See "Creating a Storageset Map," page 3–32, for details about selecting names.
5. Assign unit numbers to storagesets so the host can access the units. See"Creating a Storageset Map," page 3–32, for information about how to assign units numbers to storagesets.
6. Create a storageset map to help you configure your subsystem. See "Creating a Storageset Map," page 3–32, for suggestions about creating a storageset map.
7. If you are going to partition your storagesets, plan the partitions. See "Planning Partitions," page 3–37, for information about partitions and how to plan for them.
8. Choose the switches that you will want to set for your storagesets and devices. See"Choosing Switches for Storagesets and Devices," page 3–39, for a description of the switches you can select for storagesets.
9. Configure the storagesets you have planned using one of these methods:
   - Use StorageWorks Command Console (SWCC), a Graphical User Interface (GUI), to set up and manage RAID storage subsystems. See the *SWCC Getting Started* guide for details about using SWCC to configure your storagesets.
   - Use CLI commands. This method allows you flexibility in defining and naming storagesets. See "Configuring Storagesets with CLI Commands," page 3–55, for information about configuring each type of storageset using CLI commands.

Creating a Storageset and Device Profile

Creating a profile for your storagesets and devices can help simplify the configuration process. This chapter helps you to choose the storagesets that best suit your needs and make informed decisions about the switches that you can enable for each storageset or storage device that you configure in your subsystem.

Familiarize yourself with the kinds of information contained in a storageset profile, as shown in Figure 3–2.

Appendix A, “System Profiles,” contains blank profiles that you can copy and use to record the details for your storagesets. Use the information in this chapter to help you make decisions when creating storageset profiles.

Figure 3–2 A Typical Storageset Profile

Type of storageset			
_____ Mirrorset	__✔__ RAIDset	_____ Stripeset	_____ Striped Mirrorset

Storageset Name... *accept default values*

Disk Drives..... *DISK10300, DISK20300, DIS30300*

Unit Number..... *accept default*

Partitions

Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #
%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%

RAIDset Switches

Reconstruction Policy	Reduced Membership	Replacement Policy
__✔__ Normal (default)	__✔__ No (default)	__✔__ Best performance (default)
___ Fast	___ Yes, missing:	___ Best fit
		___ None

Mirrorset Switches

Replacement Policy	Copy Policy	Read Source
___ Best performance (default)	___ Normal (default)	___ Least busy (default)
___ Best fit	___ Fast	___ Round robin
___ None		___ Disk drive:

Initialize Switches

Chunk size	Save Configuration	Metadata
__✔__ Automatic (default)	___ No (default)	__✔__ Destroy (default)
___ 64 blocks	__✔__ Yes	___ Retain
___ 128 blocks		
___ 256 blocks		
___ Other:		

Unit Switches

Read Cache	Read-Ahead Cache	Maximum Cache Transfer
__✔__ Yes (default)	__✔__ Yes (default)	__✔__ 32 blocks (default)
___ No	___ No	___ Other:

Write Cache	Write Protection	Availability
___ Yes (default)	__✔__ No (default)	__✔__ Run (default)
__✔__ No	___ Yes	___ NoRun

Determining Storage Requirements

Start the planning process by determining your storage requirements. Here are a few of the questions you should ask yourself:

- What applications or user groups will access the subsystem? How much capacity do they need?
- What are the I/O requirements? If an application is data-transfer intensive, what is the required transfer rate? If it is I/O-request intensive, what is the required response time? What is the read/write ratio for a typical request?
- Are most I/O requests directed to a small percentage of the disk drives? Do you want to keep it that way or balance the I/O load?
- Do you store mission-critical data? Is availability the highest priority, or would standard backup procedures suffice?

Use your responses to these questions along with Figure 3–2 to determine the types of storagesets you should create to satisfy your organization's requirements.

Choosing a Storageset Type

Different applications may have different storage requirements, so you will probably want to configure more than one kind of storageset in your subsystem.

All of the storagesets described in this book implement RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) technology. Consequently, they all share one important feature: each storageset, whether it contains two disk drives or ten, looks like one large, virtual disk drive to the host.

Table 3–2 compares different kinds of storagesets to help you determine which ones satisfy your requirements.

Table 3–2 A Comparison of Different Kinds of Storagesets

Storageset	Relative Availability	Request Rate (Read/Write) I/O per second	Transfer Rate (Read/Write) MB per second	Applications
Array of disk drives (JBOD)	Equivalent to a single disk drive	Identical to single disk drive	Identical to single disk drive	
Stripeset (RAID 0)	Proportionate to number of disk drives; worse than single disk drive	Excellent if used with large chunk size	Excellent if used with small chunk size	High performance for non-critical data
Mirrorset (RAID1)	Excellent	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	System drives; critical files
RAIDset (RAID 3/5)	Excellent	Excellent/Fair	Good/Poor	High request rates, read-intensive, data lookup
Striped Mirrorset (RAID 0+1)	Excellent	Excellent if used with large chunk size	Excellent if used with small chunk size	Any critical response-time application

For a comprehensive discussion of RAID, refer to *The RAIDBOOK—A Source Book for Disk Array Technology.*

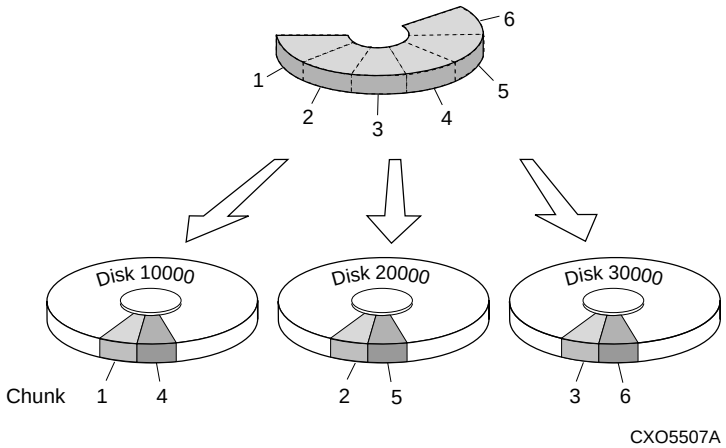
Using Stripesets to Increase I/O Performance

Stripesets enhance I/O performance by spreading the data across multiple disk drives. Each I/O request is broken into small segments

called “chunks.” These chunks are then “striped” across the disk drives in the storageset, thereby allowing several disk drives to participate in one I/O request to handle several I/O requests simultaneously.

For example, in a three-member stripeset that contains disk drives 10000, 20000, and 30000, the first chunk of an I/O request is written to 10000, the second to 20000, the third to 30000, the fourth to 10000, and so forth until all of the data has been written to the drives.

Figure 3–3 Striping Lets Several Disk Drives Participate in Each I/O Request



The relationship between the chunk size and the average request size determines if striping maximizes the request rate or the data-transfer rate. You can set the chunk size or let the controller set it automatically. See “Chunk Size,” page 3–47, for information about setting the chunk size.

A major benefit of striping is that it balances the I/O load across all of the disk drives in the storageset. This can increase the subsystem’s performance by eliminating the hot spots, or high localities of reference, that occur when frequently-accessed data becomes concentrated on a single disk drive.

Considerations for Planning a Stripeset

Keep the following points in mind as you plan your stripesets:

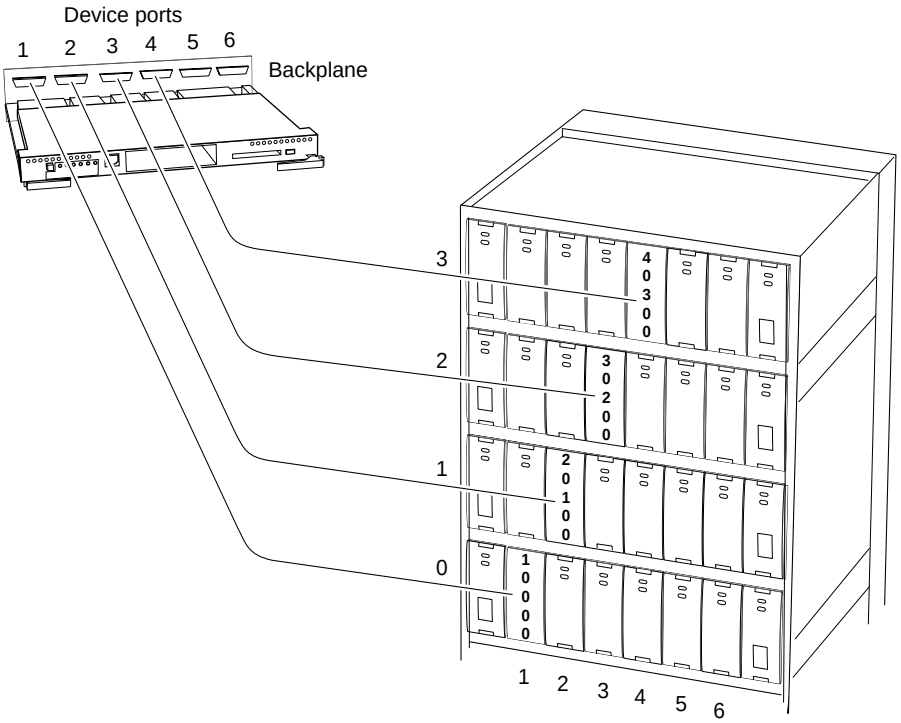
- A controller can support up to 45 storagesets, consisting of stripesets, mirrorsets and RAIDsets (refer to Table 3–1).
- Reporting methods and size limitations prevent certain operating systems from working with large stripesets. See the *HSG80 Array Controller ACS Version 8.2G Release Notes* or the Getting Started Guide that came with your platform kit for details about these restrictions.
- A storageset should only contain disk drives of the same capacity. The controller limits the capacity of each member to the capacity of the smallest member in the storageset when the storageset is initialized (the base member size). Thus, if you combine 9 GB disk drives with 4 GB disk drives in the same storageset, the 4 GB disk drive will be the base member size, and you will waste 5 GB of capacity on each 9 GB member.

  If you need high performance and high availability, consider using a RAIDset, striped mirrorset, or a host-based shadow of a stripeset.
- Striping does not protect against data loss. In fact, because the failure of one member is equivalent to the failure of the entire stripeset, the likelihood of losing data is higher for a stripeset than for a single disk drive.

  For example, if the mean time between failures (MTBF) for a single disk is one hour, then the MTBF for a stripeset that comprises N such disks is l/N hours. As another example, if a single disk's MTBF is 150,000 hours (about 17 years), a stripeset comprising four of these disks would only have an MTBF of slightly more than four years.

  For this reason, you should avoid using a stripeset to store critical data. Stripesets are more suitable for storing data that can be reproduced easily or whose loss does not prevent the system from supporting its critical mission.
- Evenly distribute the members across the device ports to balance load and provide multiple paths as shown in the Figure 3–4.

Figure 3–4 Distribute Members across Ports



- Stripesets contain between 2 and 24 members.
- Stripesets are well-suited for the following applications:
  - Storing program image libraries or run-time libraries for rapid loading
  - Storing large tables or other structures of read-only data for rapid application access
  - Collecting data from external sources at very high data transfer rates
- Stripesets are not well-suited for the following applications:
  - A storage solution for data that cannot be easily reproduced or for data that must be available for system operation

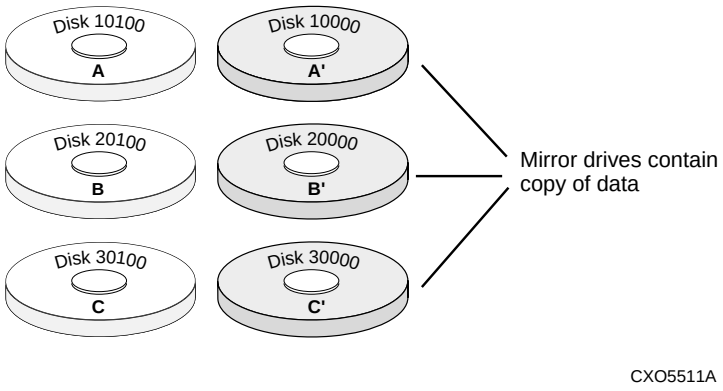
- Applications that make requests for small amounts of sequentially-located data
- Applications that make synchronous random requests for small amounts of data

By spreading the traffic evenly across the buses, you will ensure that no bus handles the majority of data to the storageset.

Using Mirrorsets to Ensure Availability

Mirrorsets use redundancy to ensure availability, as illustrated in Figure 3–5. For each primary disk drive, there is at least one mirror disk drive. Thus, if a primary disk drive fails, its mirror drive immediately provides an exact copy of the data.

Figure 3–5 Mirrorsets Maintain Two Copies of the Same Data



Considerations for Planning a Mirrorset

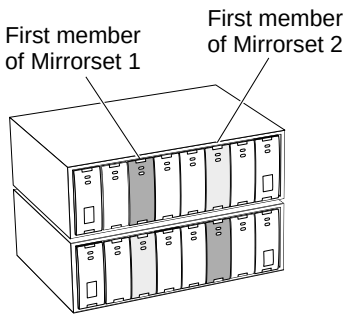
Keep these points in mind as you plan your mirrorsets:

- A controller can support up to 30 storagesets, consisting of mirrorsets and RAIDsets. Mirrorsets that are members of a stripeset count against this limitation (refer to Table 3–1).
- Data availability with a mirrorset is excellent but costly—you need twice as many disk drives to satisfy a given capacity requirement. If availability is your top priority, consider using redundant power supplies and dual-redundant controllers.

- You can configure up to 30 mirrorsets per controller or pair of dual-redundant controllers. Each mirrorset contains a minimum of one and a maximum of six members.
- A write-back cache module is required for mirrorsets, but write-back cache need not be enabled for the mirrorset to function properly.
- Both write-back cache modules must be the same size.
- If you're using more than one mirrorset in your subsystem, you should put the first member of each mirrorset on different buses as shown in Figure 3–6. (The first member of a mirrorset is the first disk drive you add.)

  When a controller receives a request to read data from a mirrorset, it typically accesses the first member of the mirrorset. Read access depends upon the read source switches, as described in "Read Source," page 3–43. If you have several mirrorsets in your subsystem and their first members are on the same bus, that bus will be forced to handle the majority of traffic to your mirrorsets. When a controller receives a request to write data to a mirrorset, it accesses and writes to all members.

Figure 3–6 First Mirrorset Members on Different Buses



To avoid an I/O bottleneck on one bus, you can simply put the first members on different buses. Additionally, you can set the read-source switch to Round Robin. See "Read Source," page 3–43, for more information about this switch.

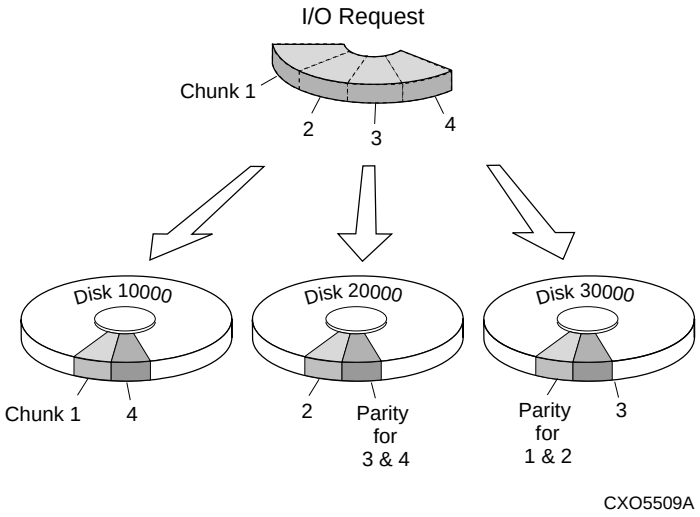
- Place mirrorsets and RAIDsets on different ports to minimize risk in the event of a single port bus failure.

- Mirrorset units are set to WRITEBACK_CACHE by default which increases a unit's performance.
- A storageset should only contain disk drives of the same capacity. The controller limits the capacity of each member to the capacity of the smallest member in the storageset. Thus, if you combine 9 GB disk drives with 4 GB disk drives in the same storageset, the 4 GB disk drive will be the base member size, and you waste 5 GB of capacity on each 9 GB member.
- Evenly distribute the members across the device ports to balance load and provide multiple paths as shown in Figure 3–4 on page 3–11.
- Mirrorsets are well-suited for the following:
  - Any data for which reliability requirements are extremely high
  - Data to which high-performance access is required
  - Applications for which cost is a secondary issue
- Mirrorsets are not well-suited for the following applications:
  - Write-intensive applications (JBODs are better for this type of application, but mirrorsets are preferred over Raid5 RADsets.)
  - Applications for which cost is a primary issue

Using RAIDsets to Increase Performance and Availability

RAIDsets are enhanced stripesets—they use striping to increase I/O performance and distributed-parity data to ensure data availability. Figure 3–7 illustrates the concept of RAIDsets and parity data.

Figure 3–7 Parity Ensures Availability; Striping Provides Good Performance



Just as with stripesets, the I/O requests are broken into smaller "chunks" and striped across the disk drives until the request is read or written. But, in addition to the I/O data, chunks of parity data—derived mathematically from the I/O data—are also striped across the disk drives. This parity data enables the controller to reconstruct the I/O data if a disk drive fails. Thus, it becomes possible to lose a disk drive without losing access to the data it contained. (Data could be lost if a second disk drive fails before the controller replaces the first failed disk drive.)

For example, in a three-member RAIDset that contains disk drives 10000, 20000, and 30000, the first chunk of an I/O request is written to 10000, the second to 20000, then parity is calculated and written to 30000; the third chunk is written to 30000, the fourth to 10000, and so on until all of the data is saved.

The relationship between the chunk size and the average request size determines if striping maximizes the request rate or the data-transfer rates. You can set the chunk size or let the controller set it automatically. See "Chunk Size," page 3–47, for information about setting the chunk size.

Considerations for Planning a RAIDset

Keep these points in mind as you plan your RAIDsets:

- A controller can support up to 20 storagesets, consisting of RAIDsets (refer to Table 3–1).
- Reporting methods and size limitations prevent certain operating systems from working with large RAIDsets. See the *HSG80 Array Controller ACS Version 8.2G Release Notes* or the Getting Started Guide that came with your platform kit for details about these restrictions.
- A cache module is required for RAIDsets, but write-back cache need not be enabled for the RAIDset to function properly.
- Both cache modules must be the same size.
- A RAIDset must include at least 3 disk drives, but no more than 14.
- Evenly distribute the members across the device ports to balance load and provide multiple paths as shown in Figure 3–4 on page 3–11.
- A storageset should only contain disk drives of the same capacity. The controller limits the capacity of each member to the capacity of the smallest member in the storageset when the storageset is initialzed (the base member size). Thus, if you combine 9 GB disk drives with 4 GB disk drives in the same storageset, you will waste 5 GB of capacity on each 9 GB member.
- RAIDset units are set to WRITEBACK_CACHE by default which increases a unit's performance.
- RAIDsets and mirrorsets on different ports to minimize risk in the event of a single port bus failure.
- RAIDsets are particularly well-suited for the following:
  - Small to medium I/O requests
  - Applications requiring high availability

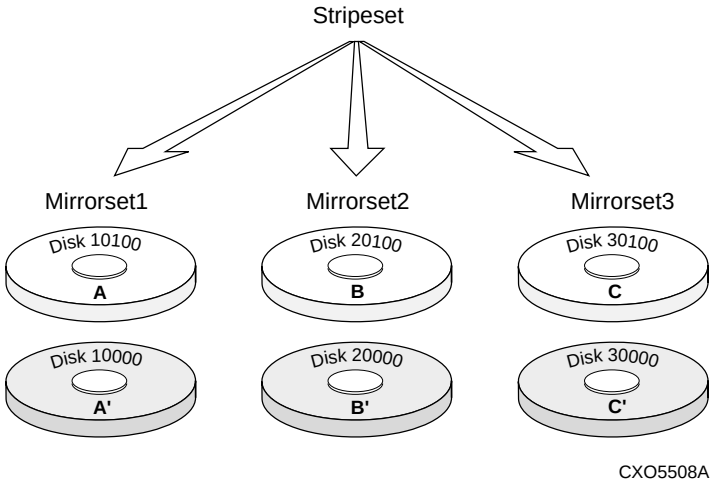
- High read request rates
- Inquiry-type transaction processing

- RAIDsets are not particularly well-suited for the following:
  - Write-intensive applications
  - Applications that require high data transfer capacity
  - High-speed data collection
  - Database applications in which fields are continually updated
  - Transaction processing

Using Striped Mirrorsets for Highest Performance and Availability

As illustrated in Figure 3–8, striped mirrorsets are simply stripesets whose members are mirrorsets. Consequently, this kind of storageset combines the performance of striping with the reliability of mirroring. The result is a storageset with very high I/O performance and high data availability.

Figure 3–8 Striping and Mirroring in the Same Storageset



The failure of a single disk drive has no effect on this storageset's ability to deliver data to the host and, under normal circumstances, it has very little effect on performance. Because striped mirrorsets do not

require any more disk drives than mirrorsets, this storageset is an excellent choice for data that warrants mirroring.

Considerations for Planning a Striped Mirrorset

Plan the mirrorset members, then plan the stripeset that will contain them. Review the recommendations in "Considerations for Planning a Stripeset," page 3–10, and "Considerations for Planning a Mirrorset," page 3–12.

There are the following limitations for a striped mirrorset:

- A maximum of 24 mirrorsets in a stripeset.
- A maximum of 6 disks in each mirrorset.
- A maximum of 48 disks in the entire striped mirrorset.

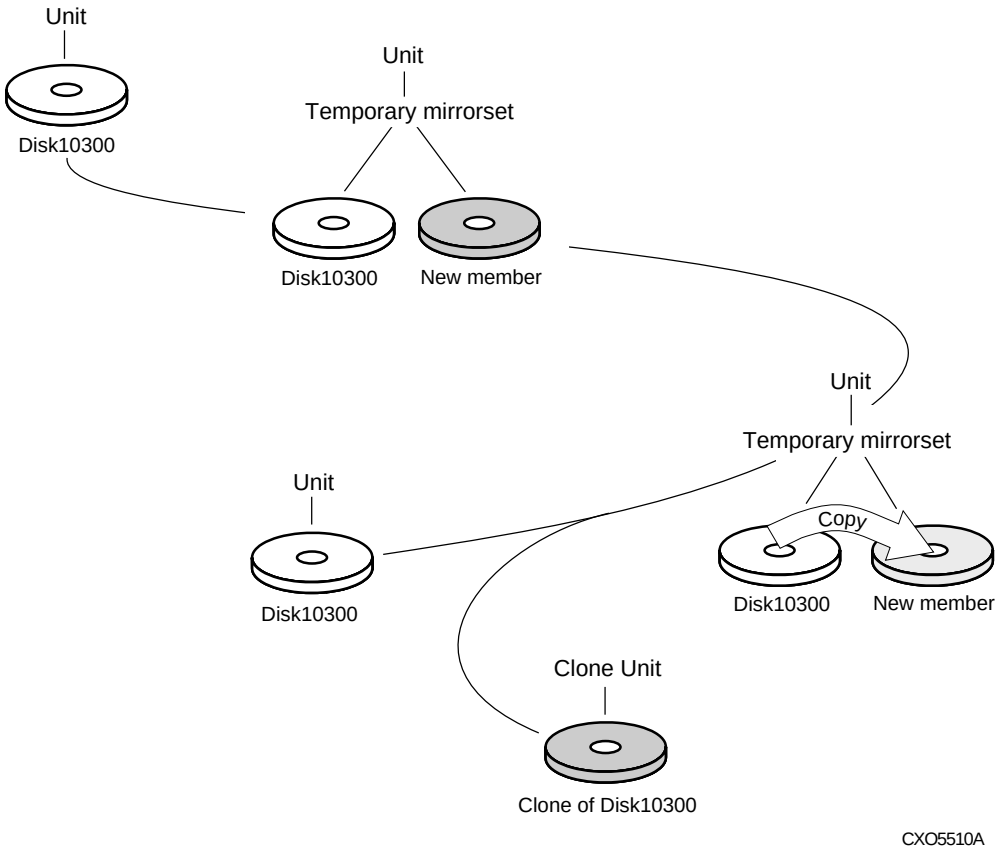
Cloning Data for Backup

Use the CLONE utility to duplicate the data on any unpartitioned single-disk unit, stripeset, mirrorset, or striped mirrorset in preparation for backup. When the cloning operation is done, you can back up the clones rather than the storageset or single-disk unit, which can continue to service its I/O load. When you are cloning a mirrorset, CLONE does not need to create a temporary mirrorset. Instead, it adds a temporary member to the mirrorset and copies the data onto this new member.

The CLONE utility creates a temporary, two-member mirrorset for each member in a single-disk unit or stripeset. Each temporary mirrorset contains one disk drive from the unit you are cloning and one disk drive onto which CLONE copies the data. During the copy operation, the unit remains online and active so the clones contain the most up-to-date data.

After the CLONE utility copies the data from the members to the clones, it restores the unit to its original configuration and creates a clone unit you can backup. The CLONE utility uses steps shown in Figure 3–9 to duplicate each member of a unit.

Figure 3–9 CLONE Steps for Duplicating Unit Members



Use the following steps to clone a single-disk unit, stripeset, or mirrorset:

1. Establish a connection to the controller that accesses the unit you want to clone.
2. Start CLONE using the following command:

   RUN CLONE

3. When prompted, enter the unit number of the unit you want to clone.
4. When prompted, enter a unit number for the clone unit that CLONE will create.

5. When prompted, indicate how you would like the clone unit to be brought online: either automatically or only after your approval.
6. When prompted, enter the disk drives you want to use for the clone units.
7. Back up the clone unit.

Example

This example shows the commands you would use to clone storage unit D98. The clone command terminates after it creates storage unit D99, a clone or copy of D98.

```
RUN CLONE

CLONE LOCAL PROGRAM INVOKED

UNITS AVAILABLE FOR CLONING:101

                                98

ENTER UNIT TO CLONE ? 98

CLONE WILL CREATE A NEW UNIT WHICH IS A COPY OF UNIT 98.

ENTER THE UNIT NUMBER WHICH YOU WANT ASSIGNED TO THE
NEW UNIT ? 99

THE NEW UNIT MAY BE ADDED USING ONE OF THE FOLLOWING
METHODS:

1. CLONE WILL PAUSE AFTER ALL MEMBERS HAVE BEEN COPIED. THE
USER MUST THEN PRESS RETURN TO CAUSE THE NEW UNIT TO BE
ADDED.

2. AFTER ALL MEMBERS HAVE BEEN COPIED, THE UNIT WILL BE ADDED
AUTOMATICALLY.

UNDER WHICH ABOVE METHOD SHOULD THE NEW UNIT BE
ADDED[]?1

DEVICES AVAILABLE FOR CLONE TARGETS:

DISK20200 (SIZE=832317)

DISK20300 (SIZE=832317)

DISK30100 (SIZE=832317)

USE AVAILABLE DEVICE DISK20200(SIZE=832317) FOR MEMBER
DISK10300(SIZE=832317) (Y,N) [Y] ? Y

MIRROR DISK10300 C_MA

SET C_MA NOPOLICY

SET C_MA MEMBERS=2

SET C_MA REPLACE=DISK220
```

```
DEVICES AVAILABLE FOR CLONE TARGETS:
DISK20300 (SIZE=832317)
DISK30100 (SIZE=832317)
USE AVAILABLE DEVICE DISK10400(SIZE=832317) FOR MEMBER
DISK10000(SIZE=832317) (Y,N) [Y] ? Y
MIRROR DISK10000 C_MB
SET C_MB NOPOLICY
SET C_MB MEMBERS=2
SET C_MB REPLACE=DISK10400
COPY IN PROGRESS FOR EACH NEW MEMBER. PLEASE BE PATIENT...
.
.
COPY FROM DISK10300 TO DISK10200 IS 100% COMPLETE
COPY FROM DISK10000 TO DISK10400 IS 100% COMPLETE

PRESS RETURN WHEN YOU WANT THE NEW UNIT TO BE CREATED
REDUCE  DISK10200 DISK10400
UNMIRROR DISK10300
UNMIRROR DISK10000
ADD MIRRORSET C_MA      DISK10200
ADD MIRRORSET C_MB      DISK10400
ADD STRIPESET C_ST1  C_MA C_MB
INIT C_ST1     NODESTROY CHUNK=128
ADD UNIT D105 C_ST1
D105 HAS BEEN CREATED. IT IS A CLONE OF D104.
CLONE - NORMAL TERMINATION
```

Backing Up Your Subsystem Configuration

Your controller stores information about your subsystem configuration in its nonvolatile memory. This information could be lost if the controller fails or when you replace a module in your subsystem.

See “Considerations for Saving the Configuration,” page 3–51, and “Saving Configuration Information in Dual-Redundant Configurations,” page 3–52, for more information.

You can avoid reconfiguring your subsystem manually by saving configuration information on one or more of your subsystem disks using the INITIALIZE SAVE_CONFIGURATION command. The controller updates the configuration information saved to disk whenever it changes. If the controller fails or you replace a module, you can easily restore your subsystem configuration from this information on the disks. Storing the configuration information uses a small amount of space on each device.

You do not need to store the configuration on all devices in the subsystem. You can use the INITIALIZE command without the SAVE_CONFIGURATION option for any devices on which you do not want to save the configuration.

You cannot use the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch on TRANSPORTABLE disks.

Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to a Single Disk

You can choose to save your subsystem configuration information on a single disk.

Choose a disk on which to save the information by using the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch when you initialize the disk with the INITIALIZE command. Use the following command:

INITIALIZE DISK*nnn* SAVE_CONFIGURATION

Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to Multiple Disks

You can save your subsystem configuration information to as many individual disks as you would like, but you must initialize each using

the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch. Use the following command for each:

INITIALIZE DISK*nnn* **SAVE_CONFIGURATION**

Saving Subsystem Configuration Information to a Storageset

You can save your subsystem configuration information to a storageset. The configuration information is duplicated on every disk that is a member of the storageset. Use the following command:

INITIALIZE *storageset-name* **SAVE_CONFIGURATION**

Displaying the Status of the Save Configuration Feature

You can use the SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL command to find out if the save configuration feature is active and which devices are being used to store the configuration. The display includes a line that indicates status and how many devices have copies of the configuration, as shown in the following example.

SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL

```
Controller:
        HSG80    (C) DEC ZG64100138 Firmware QBFB-0, Hardware CX02
        Configured for dual-redundancy with ZG64100209
            In dual-redundant configuration
        Device Port SCSI address 7
        Time: NOT SET
Host port:
        SCSI target(s) (1, 3, 11)
        Preferred target(s) (3, 11)
        TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = 20MHZ
        Host Functionality Mode = A
        Command Console LUN is target 1, lun 5
Cache:
        64 megabyte write cache, version 4
        Cache is GOOD
        Battery is GOOD
        No unflushed data in cache
        CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER = DEFAULT (10 seconds)
        NOCACHE_UPS
Mirrored Cache:
        64 megabyte write cache, version 4
        Cache is GOOD
        Battery is GOOD
        No unflushed data in cache
Extended information:
        Terminal speed 19200 baud, eight bit, no parity, 1 stop bit
        Operation control: 00000001  Security state code: 75524
        Configuration backup enabled on 3 devices
```

The following example shows sample devices with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch enabled:

$ SHOW DEVICES FULL

```
Name          Type                    Port Targ  Lun        Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DISK10000     disk                       1    0    0        S2
          DEC      RZ28M    (C) DEC 1003
        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = 20MHZ (synchronous 10.00 MHZ negotiated)
        Size: 4108970 blocks
        Configuration being backed up on this container
DISK30300     disk                       3    3    0        S2
          DEC      RZ28M    (C) DEC 1003
        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = 20MHZ (synchronous 10.00 MHZ negotiated)
        Size: 4108970 blocks
        Configuration being backed up on this container
```

Controller and Port Worldwide Names (Node IDs)

A worldwide name (node ID) is a unique 64-bit number assigned to a subsystem by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) and set by DIGITAL manufacturing prior to shipping. The worldwide name assigned to a subsystem never changes.

Each subsystem's worldwide name ends in zero, for example 5000-1FE1-FF0C-EE00. The controller port ID numbers are derived from the worldwide name. In a subsystem with two controllers (a dual-redundant configuration) the port ID of Port 1 for both controllers is the worldwide ID plus 1. In this example, both controllers' Port 1 port ID would be 5000-1FE1-FF0C-EE01. Similarly, both controllers would have the same port ID for Port 2, 5000-1FE1-FF0C-EE02. The controllers automatically assign their port IDs.

Use the CLI command SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER to display the subsytem's worldwide name. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about the SHOW command and worldwide names. The CLI uses the term node ID for worldwide names. When you enter the SHOW command, the subsystem worldwide name (node ID) displays as the REPORTED NODEID and will look like the following:

```
5000-1FE1-FF0C-EE00
```

Restoring Worldwide Names (Node IDs)

When you remove a controller to replace it in a dual-redundant configuration, the remaining controller remembers the subsystem worldwide name (node ID). When you install the replacement controller, the remaining controller tells the new controller the worldwide name; the replacement controller assumes the correct port ID numbers.

If you have a single controller configuration, you must have a save configuration disk if you want to be able to automatically restore the worldwide name in the event of a failure. In this case the controller could read the worldwide name from the save configuration disk.

If a situation occurs that requires you to restore the worldwide name, you can restore it using the worldwide name and check sum printed on the sticker on the frame into which your controller is inserted. See the SET *controller* command in Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for details about setting the worldwide name (node ID).

Unit World Wide Names (LUN IDs)

In addition, each unit has its own world wide name, or LUN ID. This is a unique, 128-bit value that the controller assigns at the time of unit initialization. It cannot be altered by the user but does change when the unit is re-initialized. Use the SHOW command to list the LUN ID.

Caution Each subsystem has its own unique worldwide name (node ID). This ID can be found on a sticker, which is located on top of the frame that houses the controller(s), the EMU, the PVA, and cache modules. If you attempt to set the subsystem worldwide name to a name other than the one that came with the subsystem, the data on the subsystem will not be accessible. Never set two subsystems to the same worldwide name, or data corruption will occur.

Assigning Unit Numbers for Host Access to Storagesets

You will need to assign a unit number to each storageset, single disk unit, or storage device that you want your host to know about in your subsystem. The host uses these numbers to indicate the source or target for every I/O request it sends to a controller.

Each unit number contains the following:

- A letter that indicates the kind of devices in the storage unit. For example, D for disk drives; P for passthrough devices (i.e. tape drives, loaders, and libraries).
- A number from 0-199.

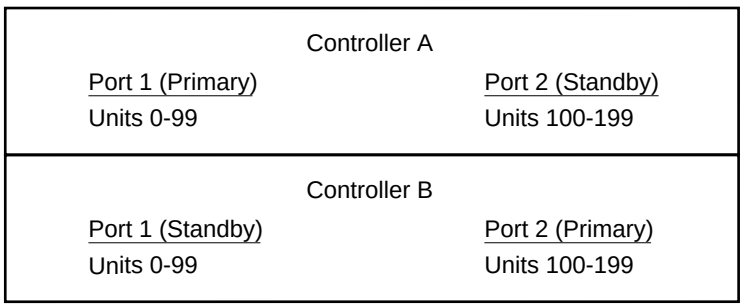
Assigning Unit Numbers in Transparent Failover Mode

Each controller has two ports, Port 1 and Port 2, as shown in Figure 3–10. There is a set number of units that are accessible, depending on the host operating system. This maximum is a limitation of the host.

In transparent failover mode, the range of assignable units is 0-99 on Port 1, and 100-199 on Port 2, regardless of what unit offset is set on the host. In other words, all hosts on Port 2 have a unit offset of 100. Do not split partitioned storagesets across ports; they must be on the same port.

See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for details about the ADD UNIT command.

Figure 3–10 Controller Port ID and Unit Numbers in Transparent Failover Mode

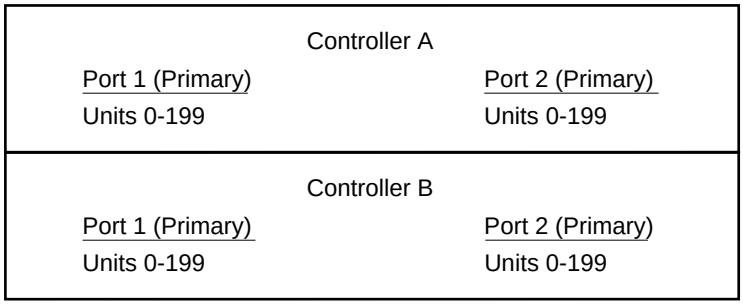


CXO6187A

Assigning Unit Numbers in Multiple Bus Failover Mode

In multiple bus failover mode, the range of assignable units, which are accessible from any port on the subsystem, is 0-199. Hosts obtain units by reserving the unit for sole access. This is done on a first-available basis. Figure 3–11 illustrates the controller port ID and unit numbers in multiple bus failover mode.

Figure 3–11 Controller Port ID Numbers and Unit Numbers in Mulitple Bus Failover Mode



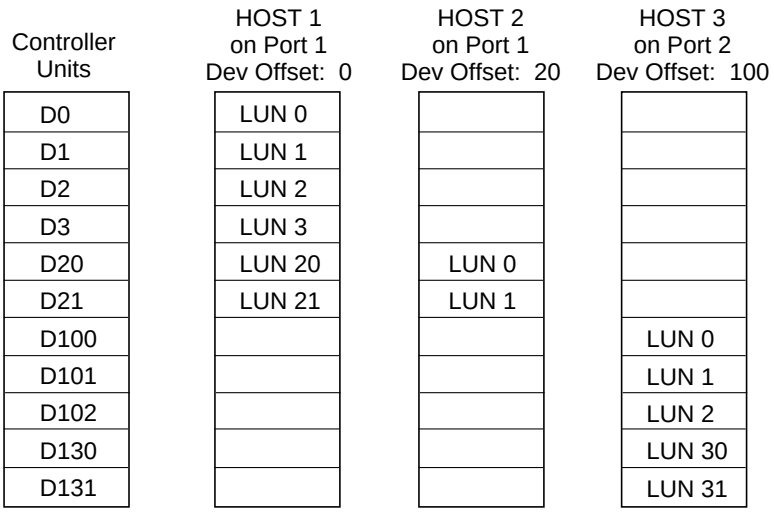
CXO6454A

Assigning Unit Offsets

Unit offsets are used to define the first unit number that a host is able to access on the controller. When assigning unit offsets, keep in mind that the unit offset is settable on a per-host basis. Thus, one host can have a unit offset of 0 and see units 0-99 as LUNs 0-99, and another host can have a unit offset of 10 and see units 10-99 as LUNs 0-89 (controller unit number 10 is seen at the host as LUN 0). This is useful for hosts that have a limited LUN addressing range.

Figure 3–12 depicts the use of unit offsets on a per-host basis. Note that controller units 0-99 are presented only on Port 1, and units 100-199 are presented only on Port 2. This implies that Port 1 hosts can have a unit offset range of 0-99, and Port 2 hosts can have a unit offset range of 100-199.

Figure 3–12 LUN Presentation Using Unit Offset on a Per-Host Basis



CXO6455A

Assigning Access Paths

The HSG80 subsystem allows the user to specify unit access privileges to limit host access. This feature is defined on a unit-by-unit basis.

You can enable host access to a unit by mapping the unit accessible through the specified host paths. (A path is the logical connection between the host and the controller.) The path is referenced by the name attached to the logical connection. Once the unit is set for access through a path, the access privilege is defined.

Paths may be automatically added to the system through the host fibre channel login process or manually with the ADD command. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about this procedure.

Note Even when hosts are automatically entered, user intervention is still recommended to set a meaningful connection name.

By default, host access is set to ALL. If you wish to have the unit access limited, you must first disable access to ALL, then set it to a specified host access path.

You can define a unit's access privileges with the ADD command. These access privileges can be changed using the SET command. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information about these commands.

Also, see Chapter 2, "Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller,"for configuration rules and requirements that you should consider when setting up and working in a multiple host environment.

Creating a Storageset Map

Configuring your subsystem will be easier if you know how the storagesets correspond to the disk drives in your subsystem. You can see this relationship by creating a storageset map like the one shown in Figure 3–13. This storageset map is for a subsystem that contains two RAIDsets, two mirrorsets, and three disk drives in the spareset. Each enclosure also has redundant power supplies.

Figure 3–13 Storageset Map

Power Supply	R1	R1	R1	spare			**Power Supply**
Power Supply	R2	R2	R2	spare			**Power Supply**
Power Supply	R2	R2	R2	spare			**Power Supply**
Power Supply	M1	M1	M2	M1			**Power Supply**

To create a storageset map:

1. Copy the template from "Enclosure Template," page A–4.

2. Establish a local or remote connection to one of the controllers in your subsystem.
3. Show the devices that are assigned to the controller. Use the following command:

   SHOW DEVICES

4. Locate each device assigned to the controller and record its location on your copy of the cabinet template. Use the following command:

   LOCATE *device_name*

   The LOCATE command causes the device's LED to flash continuously.

5. Turn off the LED, using the following command:

   LOCATE CANCEL

   The controller names each device based on its Port-Target-LUN (PTL) location. See the next section for details about the controller's PTL addressing convention. Repeat step 2 through step 4 for each controller or dual-redundant pair of controllers.

6. After you have mapped the devices to your cabinet template, create the storageset map by circling each group of disk drives that you want to combine into a storageset or put into the spareset. Label each group with a storageset name, for example: RAID1 for a RAIDset; Mirr1 for a mirrorset; and Stripe1 for a stripeset.

Device PTL Addressing Convention within the Controller

Your controller has six SCSI–2 device ports. Each device port connects to an enclosure that supports 1 to 4 devices or "targets." Every device uses LUN 0.

The controller identifies the location of devices based on a Port-Target-LUN (PTL) numbering scheme. The controller uses the PTL address to locate devices.

- P—Designates the controller's SCSI device port number (1 through 6).
- T—Designates the target identification (ID) number of the device. Valid target ID numbers for a single-controller configuration and dual-redundant controller configuration are 0 through 15, excluding ID numbers 4 through 7. ID numbers 4 and 5 are never used.
- L—Designates the logical unit (LUN) of the device.

Note The controller operates with BA370 rack-mountable enclosures that are assigned ID numbers 0, 2, and 3. These ID numbers are set through the PVA module. Enclosure ID number 1, which houses devices at targets 4 through 7, is not supported. Do not use device target ID numbers 4 through 7 in a storage subsystem.

Place one space between the port number, target number, and the two-digit LUN number when entering the PTL address. An example of a PTL address is shown below.

Figure 3–14 PTL Naming Convention

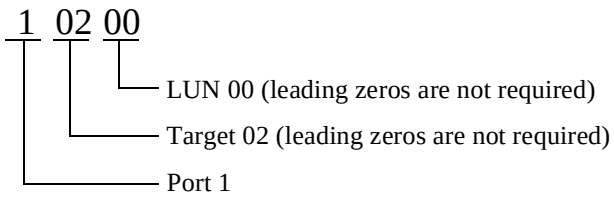


Figure 3–15 shows the addresses for each device in an extended configuration. Use this figure along with "Configuration Rules," page 2–2, to help you work with the devices in your configuration.

Caution Selecting SCSI–3 mode enables access to the Command Console LUN (CCL) by all hosts. If the hosts access the CCL simultaneously, unpredictable consequences can occur. In cases where the CCL can be accessed through multiple paths and LUNs, system administrators of each host must not attempt to access the CCL simultaneously.

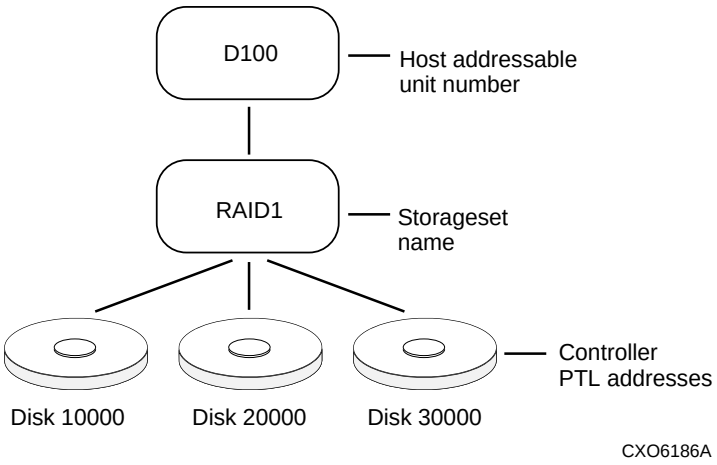
Figure 3–15 PTL Addressing in a Configuration

In Figure 3–15, the controller addresses DISK30800 through device port 3, target 08, LUN 00. This PTL location indicates the pathway the controller uses to address a disk drive (device) in the subsystem. It also indicates the device name.

The controller uses the PTL location to name each device that you add to your subsystem with StorageWorks Command Console or the CONFIG utility. (Factory-installed devices are added with the CONFIG utility. Thus, their names derive from their PTL locations.) For example, if the controller finds a disk in PTL 10200, it names it DISK10200.

When your controller receives an I/O request, it identifies the storageset unit number for the request, then correlates the unit number to the storageset name. From the storageset name, the controller locates the appropriate device for the I/O request. (For example, the RAIDset "RAID1" might contain DISK10000, DISK20000, and DISK30000.) The controller generates the read or write request to the appropriate device using the PTL addressing convention. Figure 3–16 illustrates the concept of PTL addressing.

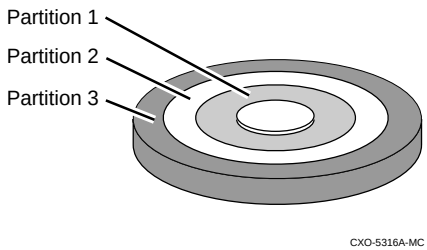
Figure 3–16 Locating Devices using PTLs



Planning Partitions

Use partitions to divide a storageset or disk drive into smaller pieces, which can each be presented to the host as its own storage unit. Figure 3–17 shows the conceptual effects of partitioning a single-disk unit.

Figure 3–17 Partitioning a Single-Disk Unit



You can create up to eight partitions per disk drive, RAIDset, mirrorset, stripeset, or striped mirrorset. Each partition has its own unit number so that the host can send I/O requests to the partition just as it would to any unpartitioned storageset or device. Because partitions are separately-addressable storage units, you can partition a single storageset to service more than one user group or application.

Defining a Partition

Partitions are expressed as a percentage of the storageset or single disk unit that contains them. For mirrorsets and single disk units, the controller allocates the largest whole number of blocks that are equal to or less than the percentage you specify. For RAIDsets and stripesets, the controller allocates the largest whole number of stripes that are less than or equal to the percentage you specify. For stripesets, the stripe size = chunk size x number of members. For RAIDsets, the stripe size = chunk size x (number of members-1).

An unpartitioned storage unit has more capacity than a partition that uses the whole unit because each partition requires five blocks of administrative metadata. Thus, a single disk unit that contains one partition can store *n*-5 blocks of user or application data.

See “Partitioning a Storageset or Disk Drive,” page 3–61, for information on manually partitioning a storageset or single-disk unit.

Guidelines for Partitioning Storagesets and Disk Drives

Keep these points in mind as you plan your partitions:

- You can create up to eight partitions per storageset or disk drive.
- All of the partitions on the same storageset or disk drive must be addressed through the same controller port. This ensures a transparent failover of devices should one of the dual-redundant controllers fail.
- Partitions cannot be combined into storagesets. For example, you cannot divide a disk drive into three partitions, then combine those partitions into a RAIDset.
- Partitioned storagesets cannot function in multiple bus failover dual-redundant configurations. Because they are not supported, you must delete your partitions before configuring the controllers for multiple bus failover.
- Once you partition a container, you cannot unpartition it without reinitializing the container.
- Just as with storagesets, you do not have to assign unit numbers to partitions until you are ready to use them.

Choosing Switches for Storagesets and Devices

Depending upon the kind of storageset or device you are configuring, you can enable the following options or "switches":

- RAIDset and mirrorset switches
- Initialize switches
- Unit switches
- Device switches

Enabling Switches

If you use StorageWorks Command Console to configure the device or storageset, you can set switches from the command console screens during the configuration process. The Command Console automatically applies them to the storageset or device. See *Getting Started with Command Console* for information about using the Command Console.

If you use CLI commands to configure the storageset or device manually, the procedures in "Configuring Storagesets with CLI Commands," page 3–55, indicate when and how to enable each switch.

Changing Switches

You can change the RAIDset, mirrorset, device, and unit switches at any time. See "Changing Switches for a Storageset or Device," page 3–66, for information about changing switches for a storageset or device.

You cannot change the initialize switches without destroying the data on the storageset or device. These switches are integral to the formatting and can only be changed by re-initializing the storageset. (Initializing a storageset is similar to formatting a disk drive; all of the data is destroyed during this procedure.)

RAIDset Switches

You can enable the following switches to control how a RAIDset behaves to ensure data availability:

- Replacement policy
- Reconstruction policy
- Membership

Replacement Policy

Specify a replacement policy to determine how the controller replaces a failed disk drive:

- POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (default) puts the failed disk drive in the failedset then tries to find a replacement (from the spareset) that is on a different device port than the remaining operational disk drives. If more than one disk drive meets this criterion, this switch selects the drive that also provides the best fit.
- POLICY=BEST_FIT puts the failed disk drive in the failedset then tries to find a replacement (from the spareset) that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the RAIDset was initialized). If more than one disk drive meets this criterion, this switch selects one that also provides the best performance.
- NOPOLICY puts the failed disk drive in the failedset and does not replace it. The storageset operates with less than the nominal number of members until you specify a replacement policy or manually replace the failed disk drive.

Reconstruction Policy

Specify the speed with which the controller reconstructs the data from the remaining operational disk drives and writes it to a replacement disk drive:

- RECONSTRUCT=NORMAL (default) balances the overall performance of the subsystem against the need for reconstructing the replacement disk drive.
- RECONSTRUCT=FAST gives more resources to reconstructing the replacement disk drive, which may reduce the subsystem's overall performance during the reconstruction task.

Membership

Indicate to the controller that the RAIDset you are adding is either complete or reduced, which means it is missing one of its members:

- NOREDUCED (default) indicates to the controller that all of the disk drives are present for a RAIDset.
- REDUCED lets you add a RAIDset that is missing one of its members. For example, if you dropped or destroyed a disk drive while moving a RAIDset, you could still add it to the subsystem by using this switch.

Mirrorset Switches

You can enable the following switches to control how a mirrorset behaves to ensure data availability:

- Replacement policy
- Copy speed
- Read source

Replacement Policy

Specify a replacement policy to determine how the controller replaces a failed disk drive:

- POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (default) puts the failed disk drive in the failedset then tries to find a replacement (from the spareset) that is on a different device port than the remaining operational disk drives. If more than one disk drive meets this criterion, this switch selects the drive that also provides the best fit.
- POLICY=BEST_FIT puts the failed disk drive in the failedset then tries to find a replacement (from the spareset) that most closely matches the size of the remaining, operational disk drives. If more than one disk drive meets this criterion, this switch selects the one that also provides the best performance.
- NOPOLICY puts the failed disk drive in the failedset and does not replace it. The storageset operates with less than the nominal number of members until you specify a replacement policy or manually replace the failed disk drive.

Copy Speed

Specify a copy speed to determine the speed with which the controller copies the data from an operational disk drive to a replacement disk drive:

- COPY=NORMAL (default) balances the overall performance of the subsystem against the need for reconstructing the replacement disk drive.
- COPY=FAST allocates more resources to reconstructing the replacement disk drive, which may reduce the subsystem's overall performance during the reconstruction task.

Read Source

Specify the read source to determine how the controller reads data from the members of a mirrorset:

- READ_SOURCE=LEAST_BUSY (default) forces the controller to read data from the “normal” or operational member that has the least-busy work queue. If multiple disks have equally short queues, the controller queries normal local disks for each read request as it would when READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN is specified. If no normal local disk exists, then the controller will query any remote disks if available.
- READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN forces the controller to read data sequentially from all “normal” or operational members in a mirrorset. For example, in a four-member mirrorset (A, B, C, and D), the controller reads from A, then B, then C, then D, then A, then B, and so forth. No preference is given to any member. If no normal local disk exists, then the controller will query any remote disks if available.
- READ_SOURCE=DISK*nnnnn* forces the controller to always read data from a particular “normal” or operational member. If the specified member fails, the controller reads from the least busy member.

Device Switches

When you add a disk drive or other storage device to your subsystem, you can enable the following switches:

- Transportability
- Transfer rate

Transportability

Indicate whether a disk drive is transportable when you add it to your subsystem:

- NOTRANSPORTABLE disk drives (default) are marked with StorageWorks-exclusive metadata. This metadata supports the error-detection and recovery methods that the controller uses to ensure data availability. Disk drives that contain this metadata cannot be used in non-StorageWorks subsystems.

  Consider these points when using the NOTRANSPORTABLE switch:

  - When you bring non-transportable devices from another subsystem to your controller subsystem, add the device to your configuration using the ADD command. Do not initialize the device, or you will reset and destroy any forced error information contained on the device.
  - When you add units, the controller software verifies that the disks or storagesets within the units contain metadata. To determine whether a disk or storageset contains metadata, try to create a unit from it. This causes the controller to check for metadata. If no metadata is present, the controller displays a message; initialize the disk or storageset before adding it.
- TRANSPORTABLE disk drives can be used in non-StorageWorks subsystems. Transportable disk drives can be used as single-disk units in StorageWorks subsystems as well as disk drives in other systems. They cannot be combined into storagesets in a StorageWorks subsystem.

TRANSPORTABLE is especially useful for moving a disk drive from a workstation into your StorageWorks subsystem. When you add a disk drive as transportable, you can configure it as a single-disk unit and access the data that was previously saved on it.

Transportable devices have these characteristics:

- Can be interchanged with any SCSI interface that does not use the device metadata, for example, a PC.
- Cannot have write-back caching enabled.
- Cannot be members of a shadowset, storageset, or spareset.
- Do not support forced errors.

Consider these points when using the TRANSPORTABLE switch:

- Before you move devices from the subsystem to a foreign subsystem, delete the units and storagesets associated with the device and set the device as transportable. Initialize the device to remove any metadata.
- When you bring foreign devices into the subsystem with customer data follow this procedure:

1. Add the disk as a transportable device. Do not initialize it.
2. Copy the data the device contains to another nontransportable unit.
3. Initialize the device again after resetting it as nontransportable. Initializing it now places metadata on the device.

- Storagesets cannot be made transportable. Specify NOTRANSPORTABLE for all disks used in RAIDsets, stripesets, and mirrorsets.
- Do not keep a device set as transportable on a subsystem. The unit attached to the device loses forced error support which is mandatory for data integrity on the entire array.

Device Transfer Rate

Specify a transfer rate that the controller uses to communicate with the device. Use one of these switches to limit the transfer rate to accommodate long cables between the controller and a device, such as a tape library. Use one of the following values:

- TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=20MHZ (default)
- TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=10MHZ
- TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=5MHZ
- TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=ASYNCHRONOUS

Initialize Switches

You can enable the following kinds of switches to affect the format of a disk drive or storageset:

- Chunk size (for stripesets and RAIDsets only)
- Save configuration
- Destroy/Nodestroy

After you initialize the storageset or disk drive, you cannot change these switches without reinitializing the storageset or disk drive.

Chunk Size

Specify a chunk size to control the stripesize used for RAIDsets and stripesets:

- CHUNKSIZE=DEFAULT lets the controller set the chunk size based on the number of disk drives (d) in a stripeset or RAIDset. If $d \leq 9$ then chunk size = 256. If $d > 9$ then chunk size = 128.
- CHUNKSIZE=*n* lets you specify a chunk size in blocks. The relationship between chunk size and request size determines whether striping increases the request rate or the data-transfer rate.

See page B–72 for more information on Chunk Size.

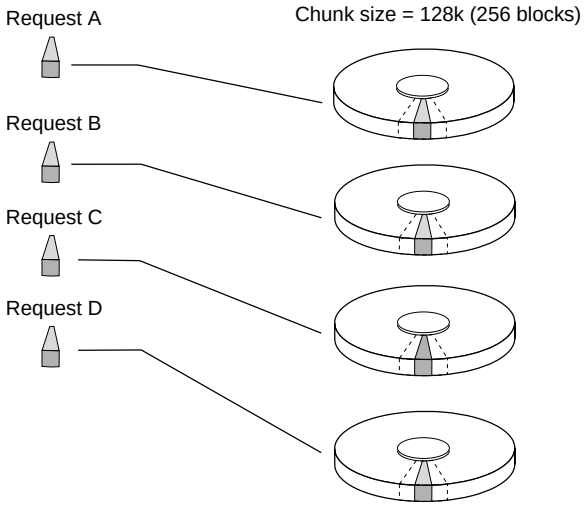
Tip While a storageset may be initialized with a user-selected chunk size, it is recommended that only the default value be used. The default value is chosen to produce optimal performance for a wide variety of loads. The use of a chunk size less than 128 blocks (64K) is **strongly discouraged**. There are almost no customer loads for which small chunk sizes are of value and, in almost all cases, selecting a small chunk size will **severely** degrade the performance of the storageset **and** the controller as a whole. Use of a small chunk size on any storageset can result in **severe** degradation of overall system performance.

Increasing the Request Rate

A large chunk size (relative to the average request size) increases the request rate by allowing multiple disk drives to respond to multiple requests. If one disk drive contains all of the data for one request, then

the other disk drives in the storageset are available to handle other requests. Thus, in principle, separate I/O requests can be handled in parallel, thereby increasing the request rate. This concept is shown in Figure 3–18.

Figure 3–18 Chunk Size Larger than the Request Size



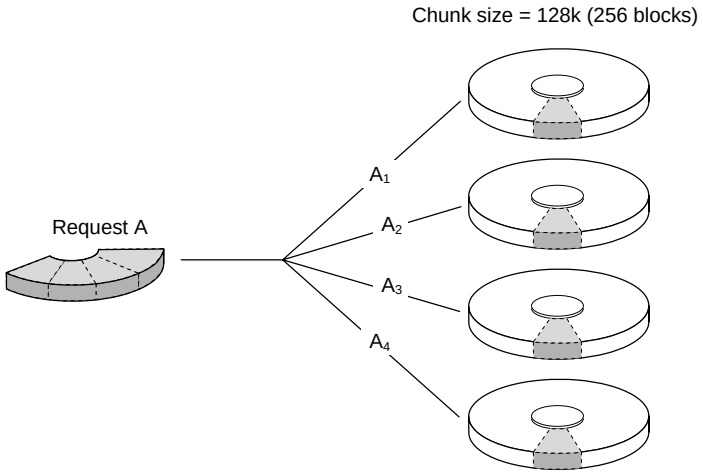
Applications such as interactive transaction processing, office automation, and file services for general timesharing tend to require high I/O request rates.

Large chunk sizes also tend to increase the performance of random reads and writes. It is recommended that you use a chunk size of 10 to 20 times the average request size, rounded up to the nearest multiple of 64. In general, a chunk size of 256 works well for UNIX® systems; 128 works well for OpenVMS™ systems.

Increasing the Data Transfer Rate

A small chunk size relative to the average request size increases the data transfer rate by allowing multiple disk drives to participate in one I/O request. This concept is shown in Figure 3–19.

Figure 3–19 Chunk Size Smaller than the Request Size



Applications such as CAD, image processing, data collection and reduction, and sequential file processing tend to require high data-transfer rates.

Increasing Sequential Write Performance

For stripesets (or striped mirrorsets), use a large chunk size relative to the I/O size to increase the sequential write performance. A chunk size of 256 generally works well.

Chunk size does not significantly affect sequential read performance.

Maximum Chunk Size for RAIDsets

Do not exceed the chunk sizes shown in Table 3–3 for a RAIDset. (The maximum chunk size is derived by $2048/(d - 1)$ where d is the number of disk drives in the RAIDset.)

Table 3–3 Maximum Chunk Sizes for a RAIDset

RAIDset Size	Max Chunk Size
3 members	1024 blocks
4 members	682 blocks
5 members	512 blocks
6 members	409 blocks
7 members	341 blocks
8 members	292 blocks
9 members	256 blocks
10 members	227 blocks
11 members	204 blocks
12 members	186 blocks
13 members	170 blocks
14 members	157 blocks

Save Configuration

Indicate whether to save the subsystem's configuration on the storage unit when you initialize it:

- NOSAVE_CONFIGURATION (default) means that the controller stores the subsystem's configuration in its nonvolatile memory only. Although this is generally secure, the configuration could be jeopardized if the controller fails. For this reason, you should initialize at least one of your storage units with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch enabled.
- SAVE_CONFIGURATION allows the controller to use 256K of each device in a storage unit to save the subsystem's configuration. The controller saves the configuration every time you change it or add a patch to your controller. If the controller should fail, you can recover your latest configuration from the storage unit rather than rebuild it from scratch.

  The save configuration option saves the following information:

- All configuration information normally saved when you restart your controller except, the controller serial number, product ID number, vendor ID number, and any manufacturing fault information.
- Patch information

The save configuration option does not save the following information:

- Software or hardware upgrades
- Inter-platform conversions

Considerations for Saving the Configuration

- Use the SET FAILOVER COPY= command to restore configuration information in a replacement controller. See “Saving Configuration Information in Dual-Redundant Configurations,” page 3–52 for details.
- Do not remove and replace disk devices between the time you save and restore your configuration. This is particularly important for devices that you migrate from another system. The controller could recover and use the wrong configuration information on your subsystem.
- Save your subsystem configuration as soon as possible after removing and replacing any disk devices in your subsystem. This ensures that the devices always contain the latest, valid information for your system.
- When you incorporate a spare into a storageset that you initialized with the INITIALIZE SAVE_CONFIGURATION command, the controller reserves space on the spare for configuration information. The controller updates this information when the configuration changes.
- You cannot use a storageset that contains user data to save your subsystem configuration unless you backup and restore the user data.
- If you previously configured storagesets with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION option, you do not need to initialize them again after you reconfigure your devices with a new controller.

- When you replace a controller, make sure the replacement controller does not contain any configuration data. If the controller is not new, use the CONFIGURATION RESET command to purge any existing configuration. If you do not take this precaution, you can lose configuration data if non-volatile memory changes.

Saving Configuration Information in Dual-Redundant Configurations

If you decide to use SAVE_CONFIGURATION in a dual-redundant configuration, keep these points in mind:

- The controller-unique data for both controllers is saved.
- Saved configuration data from a dual controller configuration can be used to restore the configuration to a replacement controller. However, if one controller in a dual configuration is replaced, use the SET FAILOVER COPY= command to restore the configuration.
- When replacing both controllers, you can replace the first and restart it alone by holding in port button 6 and simultaneously pressing the reset button on the controller's operator control panel. (This controller picks up any previously saved configuration data on disk and uses it to set up the subsystem configuration.) Replace the second controller using the SET FAILOVER COPY= command to copy the configuration information from the operating controller.
- Both controllers update the saved data; each writes to only those devices currently preferred to it. This prevents conflicting data transfer.

More information on Save Configuration can be found in Appendix B, page B–73.

Destroy/Nodestroy

Specify whether to destroy or retain the user data and metadata when you initialize a disk drive that has been previously used in a mirrorset or as a single-disk unit.

Note The DESTROY and NODESTROY switches are only valid for striped mirrorsets and mirrorsets.

- DESTROY (default) overwrites the user data and forced-error metadata on a disk drive when it is initialized.
- NODESTROY preserves the user data and forced-error metadata when a disk drive is initialized. Use NODESTROY to create a single-disk unit from any disk drive that has been used as a member of a mirrorset. See the REDUCED command in the Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for information on removing disk drives from a mirrorset.
  The NODESTROY switch is not valid for RAIDsets and single-disk configurations.

See Appendix B, page B–73, for more information on the Destroy/ Nodestroy switch.

Unit Switches

You can enable the Unit switches listed in Table 3–4 for the listed storagesets and devices.

Table 3–4 Unit Switches

Container Type	ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH	MAXIMUM_CACHED_ TRANSFER	IDENTIFIER NOIDENTIFIER	PREFERRED_PATH NOPREFERRED_PATH	READ_CACHE NOREAD_CACHE	READAHEAD_CACHE NOREADAHEAD_CACHE	WRITE_PROTECT NOWRITE_PROTECT	WRITEBACK_CACHE NOWRITEBACK_CACHE	RUN NORUN
RAIDset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Stripeset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Mirrorset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
NoTransportable Disk	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Transportable Disk	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔		✔

See “ADD UNIT,” page B–27 and “SET unit-number,” page B–137 in Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for a complete list and further explanation of the unit switches.

Configuring Storagesets with CLI Commands

One method of configuring storagesets is manual configuration. This method allows you the most flexibility in defining and naming storagesets. See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for complete information about the CLI commands shown in this chapter.

Adding Disk Drives

The factory-installed devices in your StorageWorks subsystem have already been added to the controller’s list of eligible devices. If you want to add new devices to your subsystem, you must issue one of the following CLI commands before you can use them in any kind of storageset, single disk unit, or spareset:

Adding One Disk Drive at a Time

To add one new disk drive to your controller’s list of eligible devices, enter the following command at the prompt:

ADD DISK DISK*nnn ptl-location switch_value*

Adding Several Disk Drives at a Time

To add several new disk drives to your controller’s list of eligible devices, enter the following command at the prompt:

RUN CONFIG

Configuring a Stripeset

See “Using Striped Mirrorsets for Highest Performance and Availability,” page 3–17, for information about creating a profile and understanding the switches you can set for this kind of storage unit.

To configure a stripeset:

1. Create the stripeset by adding its name to the controller’s list of storagesets and specifying the disk drives it contains. Use the following command:

   ADD STRIPESET *stripeset-name* **DISK***nnnnn* **DISK***nnnnn*

2. Initialize the stripeset. If you want to set any Initialize switches, you must do so in this step. Use the following command:

   INITIALIZE *stripeset-name switch*

3. Present the stripeset to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

   ADD UNIT *unit-number stripeset-name switch*

4. Verify the stripeset configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *stripeset-name*

5. Verify the unit configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *unit-number*

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to create Stripe1, a three-member stripeset:

```
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 DISK10000 DISK20000 DISK30000
INITIALIZE STRIPE1 CHUNKSIZE=128
ADD UNIT D100 STRIPE1 MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER=16
SHOW STRIPE1
SHOW D100
```

See Appendix B, "CLI Commands,"for more information on stripeset switches and values.

Configuring a Mirrorset

See Chapter 3, "Creating Storagesets," for information about creating a profile and understanding the switches you can set for this kind of storage unit.

To configure a mirrorset:

1. Create the mirrorset by adding its name to the controller's list of storagesets and specifying the disk drives it contains. Optionally, you can append Mirrorset switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

   Use the following command to create a mirrorset:

   ADD MIRRORSET *mirrorset-name* **DISK***nnnnn* **DISK***nnnnn switch*

2. Initialize the mirrorset. If you want to set any Initialize switches, you must do so in this step. Use the following command:

   INITIALIZE *mirrorset-name switch*

3. Present the mirrorset to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied. Use the following command:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number mirrorset-name switch*

4. Verify the mirrorset configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *mirrorset-name*

5. Verify the unit configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *unit-number*

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to create Mirr1, a two-member stripeset:

```
ADD MIRRORSET MIRR1 DISK10000 DISK20000
INITIALIZE MIRR1
ADD UNIT D110 MIRR1
SHOW MIRR1
SHOW D110
```

Refer to Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for more information on the ADD_MIRRORSET, INITIALIZE, ADD_UNIT, and SHOW commands for creating a mirrrorset.

Configuring a RAIDset

To configure a RAIDset:

1. Create the RAIDset by adding its name to the controller’s list of storagesets and specifying the disk drives it contains. Optionally, you can append RAIDset switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

Use the following command to create a RAIDset:

ADD RAIDSET *RAIDset-name* **DISK***nnnnn* **DISK***nnnnn* **DISK***nnnnn switch*

2. Initialize the RAIDset. Optional: If you want to set the Initialize switches, you must do so in this step. Use the following command:

   INITIALIZE *RAIDset-name switch*

Note It is recommended that you allow initial reconstruct to complete before allowing I/O to the RAIDset. Not doing so may generate forced errors at the host level. To determine whether initial reconstruct has completed, enter SHOW S or SHOW RAIDSET FULL.

---

3. Present the RAIDset to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

   Use the following command to present the RAIDset to the host:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number RAIDset-name switch*

4. Verify the RAIDset configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *RAIDset-name*

5. Verify the unit configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *unit-number*

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to create Raid1, a three-member RAIDset:

```
ADD RAIDSET RAID1 DISK10000 DISK20000 DISK30000
INITIALIZE RAID1
ADD UNIT D99 RAID1
SHOW RAID1
SHOW D99
```

Appendix B, "CLI Commands," contains more information on valid switches and values for configuraing a RAIDset.

Configuring a Striped Mirrorset

See Chapter 3, “Creating Storagesets,” for information about creating a profile and understanding the switches you can set for this kind of storage unit.

To configure a striped mirrorset:

1. Create—but do not initialize—at least two mirrorsets.
2. Create a stripeset and specify the mirrorsets it contains. Use the following command:

   ADD STRIPESET *mirrorset_1 mirrorset_2*
3. Initialize the stripeset. If you want to set any Initialize switches, you must do so in this step. Use the following command:

   INITIALIZE *stripeset-name switch*

   See page B–121 of Appendix B for a complete list of valid mirrorset switches and values.
4. Present the stripeset to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

   Use the following command to present the stripeset to the host:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number stripeset-name switch*
5. Verify the striped mirrorset configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *stripeset-name*
6. Verify the unit configuration and switches. Use the following command:

   SHOW *unit-number*

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to create Stripe1, a three-member striped mirrorset that comprises Mirr1, Mirr2, and Mirr3, each of which is a two-member mirrorset:

```
ADD MIRRORSET MIRR1 DISK10000 DISK20000
ADD MIRRORSET MIRR2 DISK30000 DISK40000
ADD MIRRORSET MIRR3 DISK50000 DISK60000
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 MIRR1 MIRR2 MIRR3
INITIALIZE STRIPE1 CHUNKSIZE=DEFAULT
ADD UNIT D101 STRIPE1
SHOW STRIPE1
SHOW D101
```

For more detailed information on configuring a striped mirrorset, refer to Appendix B, "CLI Commands."

Configuring a Single-Disk Unit

Follow these steps to use a single disk drive as a single-disk unit in your subsystem:

1. Add the disk drive by following the steps in "Adding Disk Drives," page 3–55. Optionally, you can append Device switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.
2. Initialize the disk drive using the following command:

   INITIALIZE DISK*nnn switch*
3. Present the disk drive to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied. Use the following command:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number* **DISK***nnn switch_value*

   Note If you make a disk transportable, you cannot specify WRITEBACK_CACHE for that disk.
4. Verify the configuration using the following command:

   SHOW DEVICES

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to configure DISK10000 as a single-disk unit.

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD UNIT D101 DISK10000
SHOW DEVICES
```

See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for further information on these switches and values.

Partitioning a Storageset or Disk Drive

See "Planning Partitions," page 3–37, for details about partitioning a storage unit.

To partition a storageset or disk drive:

1. Add the storageset or disk drive to the controller's list of storagesets and specify the disk drives it contains. Use the following command:

   ADD *storageset-name* **DISK***nnnnn* **DISK***nnnnn*

   or

   ADD DISK DISK*nnnnn ptl-location*

   Do not split partitioned units across ports. They must be on a single port. The subsystem assigns units 0-99 to Port 1; units 100-199 are assigned to Port 2.

2. Initialize the storageset or disk drive. If you want to set any Initialize switches, you must do so in this step. Use the following command:

   INITIALIZE *storageset-name switch*

3. Create each partition in the storageset or disk drive by indicating the partition's size. Use the following command:

   CREATE_PARTITION *storageset-name* **SIZE=***n*

   where n is the percentage of the disk drive or storageset that will be assigned to the partition. Enter SIZE=LARGEST to let the controller assign the largest free space available to the partition.

4. Verify the partitions, using the following command:

   SHOW *storageset-name*

The partition number appears in the first column, followed by the size and starting block of each partition.

5. Present each partition to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. (You can skip this step until you are ready to put the partitions online.) Optionally, you can append Unit switch values. If you do not specify switch values, the default values are applied.

   Use the following command to present partitions to the host:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number storageset-name* **PARTITION=***partition-number switch*

6. Verify the unit numbers for the partitions using the following command:

   SHOW *storageset-name*

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to create Raid1, a three-member RAIDset, then partition it into four storage units:

```
ADD RAIDSET RAID1 DISK10000 DISK20000 DISK30000
INITIALIZE RAID1
CREATE_PARTITION RAID1 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITION RAID1 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITION RAID1 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITION RAID1 SIZE=LARGEST
SHOW RAID1

 Partition number       Size       Starting Block   Used by
        1          1915 (0.98 MB)        0          Raid1
        2          1915 (0.98 MB)       1920        Raid1
        3          1915 (0.98 MB)       3840        Raid1
        4          2371 (1.21 MB)       5760        Raid1
        .
        .
        .
```

```
ADD UNIT D1 RAID1 PARTITION=1
ADD UNIT D2 RAID1 PARTITION=2
ADD UNIT D3 RAID1 PARTITION=3
ADD UNIT D4 RAID1 PARTITION=4
SHOW RAID1
.
.
.

 Partition number      Size      Starting Block   Used by
        1         1915 (0.98 MB)        0           D1
        2         1915 (0.98 MB)      1920          D2
        3         1915 (0.98 MB)      3840          D3
        4         2371 (1.21 MB)      5760          D4
        .
        .
        .
```

Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” contains more information on partitioning a storageset or disk drive.

Adding a Disk Drive to the Spareset

The spareset is a collection of hot spares that are available to the controller should it need to replace a failed member of a RAIDset or mirrorset.

Use the following steps to add a disk drive to the spareset:

Note This procedure assumes that the disks that you are adding to the spareset have already been added to the controller’s list of eligible devices.

---

1. Add the disk drive to the controller’s spareset list. Use the following command:

   ADD SPARESET DISK*nnnnn*

   Repeat this step for each disk drive you want to add to the spareset:

2. Verify the contents of the spareset using the following command:

   SHOW SPARESET

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to add DISK60000 and DISK60100 to the spareset.

```
ADD SPARESET DISK60000
ADD SPARESET DISK60100
SHOW SPARESET
```

Removing a Disk Drive from the Spareset

You cannot delete the spareset—it always exists whether or not it contains disk drives. However, you can delete disks in the spareset if you need to use them elsewhere in your StorageWorks subsystem.

To remove a disk drive from the spareset:

1. Show the contents of the spareset using the following command:

   ```
   SHOW SPARESET
   ```

2. Delete the desired disk drive using the following command:

   DELETE SPARESET DISK*nnnnn*

   Verify the contents of the spareset using the following command:

   ```
   SHOW SPARESET
   ```

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to remove DISK60000 from the spareset.

```
SHOW SPARESET
```

Name	Storageset	Uses	Used by
SPARESET	spareset	disk60000	
		disk60100	

```
DELETE SPARESET DISK60000
SHOW SPARESET
```

Name	Storageset	Uses	Used by
SPARESET	spareset	disk60100	

Enabling Autospare

With AUTOSPARE enabled on the failedset, any new disk drive that is inserted into the PTL location of a failed disk drive is automatically initialized and placed into the spareset. If initialization fails, the disk drive remains in the failedset until you manually delete it from the failedset.

To enable autospare use the following command:

SET FAILEDSET AUTOSPARE

To disable autospare use the following command:

SET FAILEDSET NOAUTOSPARE

During initialization, AUTOSPARE checks to see if the new disk drive contains metadata—the information that indicates it belongs to, or has been used by, a known storageset. If the disk drive contains metadata, initialization stops. (A new disk drive will not contain metadata but a repaired or re-used disk drive might. To erase metadata from a disk drive, add it to the controller's list of devices, then set it to be TRANSPORTABLE and initialize it.)

Deleting a Storageset

If the storageset you are deleting is partitioned, you must delete each partitioned unit before you can delete the storageset. Use the following steps to delete a storageset:

1. Show the configuration using the following command:

   SHOW STORAGESETS

2. Delete the unit number shown in the "Used by" column. Use the following command:

   DELETE *unit-number*

3. Delete the name shown in the "Name" column. Use the following command:

   DELETE *storageset-name*

4. Verify the configuration using the following command:

   SHOW STORAGESETS

Example

The following example shows the commands you would use to delete Stripe1, a three-member stripeset that is comprised of DISK10000, DISK20000, and DISK30000.

SHOW STORAGESETS

Name	Storageset	Uses	Used by
STRIPE1	stripeset	DISK10000	D100
		DISK20000	
		DISK30000	

DELETE D100

DELETE STRIPE1

SHOW STORAGESETS

Changing Switches for a Storageset or Device

You can optimize a storageset or device at any time by changing the switches that are associated with it. See "Choosing Switches for Storagesets and Devices," page 3–39, for an explanation of the switches. Remember to update the storageset's profile when you change its switches.

Displaying the Current Switches

To display the current switches for a storageset or single-disk unit, enter the following command at a CLI prompt:

SHOW *storageset-name* or *device-name* **FULL**

Changing RAIDset and Mirrorset Switches

Use the SET *storageset-name* command to change the RAIDset and Mirrorset switches associated with an existing storageset. For example, the following command changes the replacement policy for RAIDset Raid1 to BEST_FIT:

SET RAID1 POLICY=BEST_FIT

Changing Device Switches

Use the SET command to change the device switches. For example, the following command enables DISK10000 to be used in a non-StorageWorks environment:

```
SET DISK10000 TRANSPORTABLE
```

The TRANSPORTABLE switch cannot be changed for a disk if the disk is part of an upper-level container. Additionally, the disk cannot be configured as a unit if it is to be used as indicated in this example.

Changing Initialize Switches

The Initialize switches cannot be changed without destroying the data on the storageset or device. These switches are integral to the formatting and can only be changed by reinitializing the storageset. Initializing a storageset is similar to formatting a disk drive; all data is destroyed during this procedure.

Changing Unit Switches

Use the SET command to change Unit switches that are associated with a unit. For example, the following command enables write protection for unit D100:

```
SET D100 WRITE_PROTECT
```

Configuring with the Command Console LUN

The Command Console LUN (CCL) is a type of LUN that allows you to communicate with the controller from the host using StorageWorks Command Console (SWCC) or CLI commands instead of using the maintenance port cable.

The most common tasks performed with the CCL include:

- Configuring storage units
- Preparing the subsystem for use
- Checking a failed set
- Checking performance with VTDPY
- Troubleshooting with FMU

Note Do not use the CCL with HSUTIL, FRUTIL, or DILX. The host and controller must communicate through the maintenance port cable when using these utilities and exercisers. Also, do not use the CCL to troubleshoot and maintain the controller. Instead, run the utilities and exercisers with the local connection that uses the maintenance port cable. See "Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller," page 2–7.

Enabling and Disabling the CCL

If you have not configured any units and have not yet enabled the CCL, you must first establish a local connection through the maintenance port cable to provide a means of enabling CCL. See "Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller," page 2–9. Once the CCL is enabled, you can communicate with the controller over the host port connection instead of through the maintenance port connection.

If the the CCL is not automatically enabled on your controller, use the following command:

```
SET THIS_CONTROLLER COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN
```

To turn it off, use the following command:

```
SET THIS_CONTROLLER NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN
```

Caution Disabling the CCL while SWCC is running may result in loss of connection for the StorageWorks Command Console. Turn off SWCC before issuing the command.

Finding the CCL Location

To see where each CCL is located, use the following commands:

```
SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER
```

or

```
SHOW OTHER_CONTROLLER
```

Look under host port to find the Command Console LUN location. Because the CCL is not an actual device or unit, the SHOW UNITS command will display only unit information and no CCL locations.

Multiple-Bus and Transparent Failover in SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 Modes

The way the host sees the CCL varies, depending on whether you've enabled transparent or multiple-bus failover modes and whether you are in SCSI-2 or SCSI-3 mode.

SCSI-2 Mode

Multiple-Bus Failover
If SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER is enabled, all ports will be able to see and access the CCL. In addition, the CCL appears to the host as a direct access device.

Transparent Failover
If you are in SCSI-2 mode and have enabled the SET FAILOVER command, only one CCL will be enabled.

SCSI-3 Mode

In SCSI-3 mode, a CCL will appear at LUN 0 of each unit offset.

Multiple-Bus Failover

If you are in multiple-bus failover mode, all ports will be able to see and access the CCLs. As a result, all hosts will have access to each CCL, and they will appear to the host as array controllers.

Transparent Failover

If you are in transparent failover mode, each CCL will be accessible from the port that has the unit offset enabled. Ports with multiple unit offsets assigned will have multiple CCLs, and they will appear to the host as an array controller.

Caution Selecting SCSI-3 mode enables access to the CCL by all hosts. If the hosts access the CCL simultaneously, unpredictable consequences can occur. In cases where the CCL can be accessed through multiple paths and LUNs, system administrators of each host must not attempt to access the CCL simultaneously.

Adding Storage Units Using the CCL

To start configuring storage units, you must first assign unit offsets. See "Assigning Unit Offsets," page 3–29.

SCSI-2 Mode

As you add storage units and assign unit offsets over the CCL or above its location, the CCL immediately and automatically moves into the next available free space, which would be the lowest available LUN.

Note If you delete a unit at a setting below the CCL setting, the CCL does not automatically move. Instead, it only moves to the lowest deleted unit's setting when you reboot the controller.

SCSI-3 Mode

The CCL will appear at the default unit offset of each port. Because the default unit offset is 0 for Port 1 and 100 for Port 2, the CCL will be at LUN 0 on Port 1 and LUN 100 on Port 2.

Note Lun 100 on Port 2 appears as LUN 0 to its hosts.

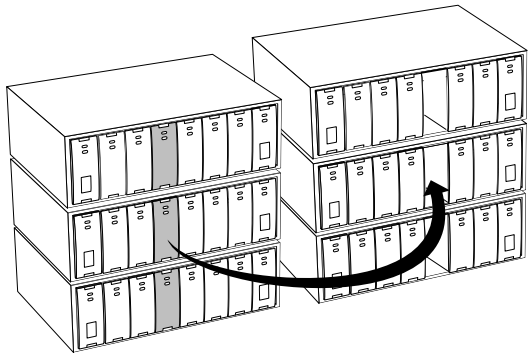
Moving Storagesets

You can move a storageset from one subsystem to another without destroying its data as shown in Figure 3–20. You also can follow the steps in this section to move a storageset to a new location within the same subsystem.

Caution Move only normal storagesets. Do not move storagesets that are reconstructing or reduced, or data corruption will result.

You can use the procedure in this section to migrate wide devices from an HSZ70 controller in a BA370 rack-mountable enclosure to an HSG80 environment. However, if you have an HSZ40 or HSZ50 subsystem, you cannot migrate to an HSG80 in a BA370 rack-mountable enclosure. Refer to the *HSG80 Array Controller ACS Version 8.2G Release Notes* for drives that can be supported.

Figure 3–20 Moving a Storageset from one Subsystem to Another



CXO5595A

Caution Never initialize any container or this procedure will not protect data.

Use the following procedure to move a storageset while maintaining the data it contains:

1. Show the details for the storageset you want to move. Use the following command:

   SHOW *storageset-name*

2. Label each member with its name and PTL location.

   If you do not have a storageset map for your subsystem, you can enter the LOCATE command for each member to find its PTL location. Use the following command:

   LOCATE *disk-name*

   To cancel the locate command, enter the following:

   LOCATE CANCEL

3. Delete the unit-number shown in the "Used by" column of the SHOW storageset-name command. Use the following command:

   DELETE *unit-number*

4. Delete the storageset shown in the "Name" column of the SHOW storageset-name command. Use the following command:

   DELETE *storageset-name*

5. Delete each disk drive—one at a time—that the storageset contained. Use the following command:

   DELETE *disk-name*

   DELETE *disk-name*

   DELETE *disk-name*

6. Remove the disk drives and move them to their new PTL locations.

7. Add again each disk drive to the controller's list of valid devices. Use the following command:

   ADD DISK *disk-name PTL-location*

   ADD DISK *disk-name PTL-location*

   ADD DISK *disk-name PTL-location*

8. Recreate the storageset by adding its name to the controller's list of valid storagesets and specifying the disk drives it contains. (Although you have to recreate the storageset from its original disks, you do not have to add them in their original order.) Use the following command:

   ADD *storageset-name disk-name disk-name*

9. Represent the storageset to the host by giving it a unit number the host can recognize. You can use the original unit number or create a new one. Use the following command:

   ADD UNIT *unit-number storageset-name*

Example

The following example moves unit D100 to another cabinet. D100 is the RAIDset RAID99 that is comprised of members DISK10000, DISK20000, and DISK30000.

SHOW RAID99

Name	Storageset	Uses	Used by
RAID99	raidset	disk10000	D100
		disk20000	
		disk30000	

DELETE D100

DELETE RAID99

DELETE DISK10000

DELETE DISK20000

DELETE DISK30000

(...move the disk drives to their new location...)

ADD DISK DISK20000 2 0 0

ADD DISK DISK30000 3 0 0

ADD DISK DISK40000 4 0 0

ADD RAIDSET RAID99 DISK20000 DISK30000 DISK40000

ADD UNIT D100 RAID99

Example

The following example moves the reduced RAIDset, R3, to another cabinet. (R3 used to contain DISK20000, which failed before the RAIDset was moved. R3 contained DISK10000, DISK30000, and DISK40000 at the beginning of this example.)

```
DELETE D100
DELETE R3
DELETE DISK10000
DELETE DISK30000
DELETE DISK40000
```

(...move disk drives to their new location...)

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK30000 3 0 0
ADD DISK DISK40000 4 0 0
ADD RAIDSET R3 DISK10000 DISK30000 DISK40000 REDUCED
ADD UNIT D100 R3
```

CHAPTER 4

Troubleshooting

This chapter provides guidelines for troubleshooting the controller, cache module, and external cache battery (ECB). It also describes the utilities and exercisers that you can use to aid in troubleshooting these components. See the appendixes for a list of LEDs and event codes. See the documentation that accompanied the enclosure for information on troubleshooting its hardware, such as the power supplies, cooling fans, and environmental monitoring unit (EMU).

Maintenance Features

Use the following maintenance features to troubleshoot and service a controller:

- “Operator Control Panel,” page 1–13
- “Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller,” page 2–7
- “Utilities and Exercisers,” page 1–14

Troubleshooting Checklist

The following checklist provides a general procedure for diagnosing the controller and its supporting modules. If you follow this checklist, you'll be able to identify many of the problems that occur in a typical installation. When you've identified the problem, use Table 4–1 to confirm your diagnosis and fix the problem.

If your initial diagnosis points to several possible causes, use the tools described later in this chapter to further refine your diagnosis. If the problem can't be diagnosed using the checklist and tools, call customer service for additional support.

To troubleshoot the controller and its supporting modules:

1. Check the power to the cabinet and its components. Are the cords properly connected? Is the power within specifications?
2. Check the component cables. Are the bus cables to the controllers connected properly? Are the ECB cables properly connected?
3. Check the program cards to ensure they're fully seated.
4. Check the operator control panel and devices for LED codes. See Appendix C, "LED Codes," to interpret the LED codes.
5. Connect a local terminal to the controller and check its configuration with the following command:

   SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL

   Ensure that the ACS version is correct and that pertinent patches have been installed. Also, check the status of the cache module and its ECB.

   In a dual redundant configuration, check the other controller with the following command:

   SHOW OTHER_CONTROLLER FULL
6. Using FMU, check for last failure or memory-system failure entries. Show these codes and translate the last failure codes they contain. "Significant Event Reporting," page 4–14.

   If the controller has failed to the extent that it cannot support a local terminal for FMU, check the host's error log for the instance or last-failure codes. See Appendix D, "Event Reporting: Templates and Codes," to interpret the event codes.

7. Check the status of the devices with the following command:

   SHOW DEVICES FULL

   Look for errors such as “misconfigured device” or “No device at this PTL.” If a device reports misconfigured or missing, check its status with the following command:

   SHOW *device-name*

8. Check the status of the storagesets with the following command:

   SHOW STORAGESETS FULL

   Ensure that all storagesets are normal (or normalizing if it’s a RAIDset or mirrorset). Check again for misconfigured or missing devices.

9. Check the status of the units with the following command:

   SHOW UNITS FULL

   Ensure that all of the units are available or online. If the controller reports that a unit is unavailable or offline, recheck the storageset it belongs to with the following command:

   SHOW *storageset-name*

   If the controller reports that a unit has lost data or is unwriteable, recheck the status of the devices that make up the storageset. If the devices are OK, recheck the status of the cache module. If the unit reports a media format error, recheck the status of the storageset and its devices.

Troubleshooting Table

Use the troubleshooting checklist that begins on page 4–2 to find a symptom, then use this table to verify and fix the problem.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Reset button not lit	No power to subsystem.	Check power to subsystem and power supplies on controller's shelf.	Replace cord or AC input power module.
		Ensure that all cooling fans are installed. If one or more fans are missing or all are inoperative for more than eight minutes, the EMU shuts down the subsystem.	Turn off power switch on AC input power module. Replace cooling fan. Restore power to subsystem.
		Verify that the standby power switch on the PVA was not depressed for more than five seconds.	Depress the alarm control switch on the EMU.
	Failed controller.	If the foregoing check fails to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Replace controller.
Reset button lit steadily; other LEDs also lit.	Various	See "Operator Control Panel LED Codes," page C–2.	Follow repair action.
Reset button blinking; other LEDs also lit.	Device in error or FAIL set on corresponding device port with other LEDs lit.	SHOW *device* FULL	Follow repair action.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Cannot set failover to create dual-redundant configuration.	Incorrect command syntax.	See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for the SET FAILOVER command.	Use the correct command syntax.
	Different software versions on controllers.	Check software versions on both controllers.	Update one or both controllers so that both controllers are using the same software version.
	Incompatible hardware.	Check hardware versions.	Upgrade controllers so that they’re using compatible hardware.
	Controller previously set for failover.	Ensure that neither controller is configured for failover.	Use the SET NOFAILOVER command on both controllers, then reset “this controller” for failover.
	Failed controller.	If the foregoing checks fail to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Follow repair action.
	Node ID is all zeros.	SHOW_THIS to see if node ID is all zeros.	Set node ID using the node ID (bar code) that is located on the frame in which the controller sits. See SET THIS CONTROLLER NODE_ ID in Appendix B, “CLI Commands.” Also, be sure that you are copying in the right direction. If you are cabled to the new controller, use SET FAILOVER COPY=OTHER. If cabled to old controller, use SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Nonmirrored cache; controller reports failed DIMM in cache module A or B.	Improperly installed DIMM.	Remove cache module and ensure that DIMM is fully seated in its slot. See Figure 1–7 on page 1–13 for location of cache module and see Figure 5–7 on page 5–42 for location of DIMM.	Reseat DIMM (see Figure 5–8 on page 5–44).
	Failed DIMM.	If the foregoing check fails to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Replace DIMM.
Mirrored cache; "this controller" reports DIMM 1 or 2 failed in cache module A or B.	Improperly installed DIMM in "this controller's" cache module (see Figure 1–7 on page 1–13 and Figure 5–7 on page 5–42).	Remove cache module and ensure that DIMMs are installed properly. See "Replacing DIMMs," page 5–42.	Reseat DIMM (see Figure 5–8 on page 5–44).
	Failed DIMM in "this controller's" cache module.	If the foregoing check fails to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Replace DIMM in "this controller's" cache module.
Mirrored cache; "this controller"reports DIMM 3 or 4 failed in cache module A or B.	Improperly installed DIMM in "other controller's" cache module (see Figure 1–7 on page 1–13 and Figure 5–7 on page 5–42).	Remove cache module and ensure that DIMMs are installed properly. See "Replacing DIMMs," page 5–42.	Reseat DIMM (see Figure 5–8 on page 5–44).
	Failed DIMM in "other controller's" cache module.	If the foregoing check fails to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Replace DIMM in "other controller's" cache module.
Mirrored cache; controller reports battery not present.	Memory module was installed before it was connected to an ECB.	ECB cable not connected to cache module.	Connect ECB cable to cache module, then restart both controllers by pushing their reset buttons simultaneously.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Mirrored cache; controller reports cache or mirrored cache has failed.	Primary data and its mirrored copy data are not identical.	SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER indicates that the cache or mirrored cache has failed. Spontaneous FMU message displays: "Primary cache declared failed - data inconsistent with mirror," or "Mirrored cache declared failed - data inconsistent with primary."	Enter the SHUTDOWN command on controllers that report the problem. (This command flushes the contents of cache to synchronize its primary and mirrored data.) Restart the controllers that you shut down.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Invalid cache	Mirrored-cache mode discrepancy. This may occur after you've installed a new controller. Its existing cache module is set for mirrored caching, but the new controller is set for unmirrored caching. (It may also occur if the new controller is set for mirrored caching but its existing cache module is not.)	SHOW THIS CONTROLLER indicates "invalid cache." Spontaneous FMU message displays: "Cache modules inconsistent with mirror mode."	Connect a terminal to the maintenance port on the controller reporting the error and clear the error with the following command—all on one line: CLEAR_ERRORS THIS_CONTROLLER NODESTROY INVALID_CACHE.
	Cache module may erroneously contain unflushed write-back data. This may occur after you've installed a new controller. Its existing cache module may indicate that it contains unflushed write-back data, but the new controller expects to find no data in the existing cache module. (This error may also occur if you install a new cache module for a controller that expects write-back data in the cache.)	SHOW THIS CONTROLLER indicates "invalid cache." No spontaneous FMU message.	Connect a terminal to the maintenance port on the controller reporting the error, and clear the error with the following command—all on one line: CLEAR_ERRORS THIS_CONTROLLER DESTROY INVALID_CACHE. See Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for more information.

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Cannot add device	Illegal device.	See product-specific release notes that accompanied the software release for the most recent list of supported devices.	Replace device.
	Device not properly installed in shelf.	Check that SBB is fully seated.	Firmly press SBB into slot.
	Failed device.	Check for presence of device LEDs.	Follow repair action in the documentation provided with the enclosure or device.
	Failed power supplies.	Check for presence of power supply LEDs.	Follow repair action in the documentation provided with the enclosure or power supply.
	Failed bus to device.	If the foregoing checks fail to produce a remedy, check for OCP LED codes.	Replace enclosure or shelf.
Cannot configure storagesets	Incorrect command syntax.	See Appendix B, “CLI Commands,” for the ADD *storageset* command.	Reconfigure storageset with correct command syntax.
	Exceeded maximum number of storagesets.	Use the SHOW command to count the number of storagesets configured on the controller.	Delete unused storagesets.
	Failed battery on ECB. (An ECB or UPS is required for RAIDsets and mirrorsets.)	Use the SHOW command to check the ECB’s battery status.	Replace the ECB if required.

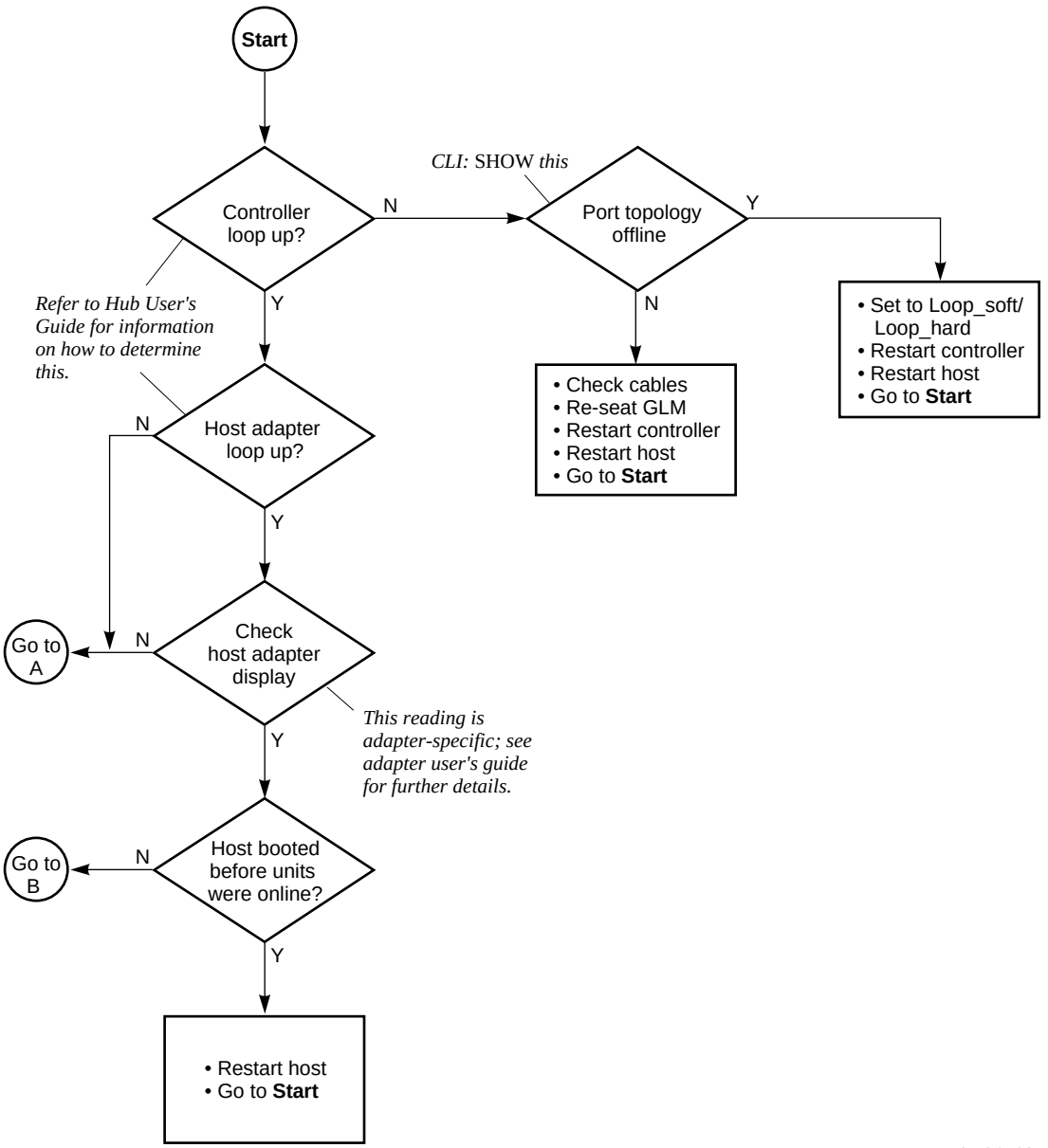
Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Can't assign unit number to storageset.	Incorrect command syntax.	See the Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for correct syntax.	Reassign the unit number with the correct syntax.
	Incorrect SCSI target ID numbers set for controller that accesses desired unit. (First number of unit number must be one of the SCSI target ID numbers for the controller.)	Use the SHOW command to check the controller's SCSI target ID numbers.	Reset the controller's SCSI target ID numbers or assign a new unit number as desired.
Unit is available but not online	This is normal. Units are "available" until the host accesses them, at which point their status is changed to "online."	None	None
Host cannot see device	Broken cables or a missing, incorrect, or defective terminator.	Check for broken cables or a missing, incorrect, or defective terminator.	Replace broken cablesor the missing, incorrect, or defective terminator.
Host cannot access unit	Host files or device drivers not properly installed or configured.	Check for the required device special files.	Configure device special files as described in the getting started manual that accompanied your software release.
	Invalid Cache	See the description for the invalid cache symptom.	See the description for the invalid cache symptom.
	Unit(s) have lost data.	Issue the SHOW_UNIT command.	CLEAR_ERRORS *unit* lost data.
	For a more detailed description of how to troubleshoot this symptom, see Figure 4–1.		

Table 4–1 Troubleshooting Table (Continued)

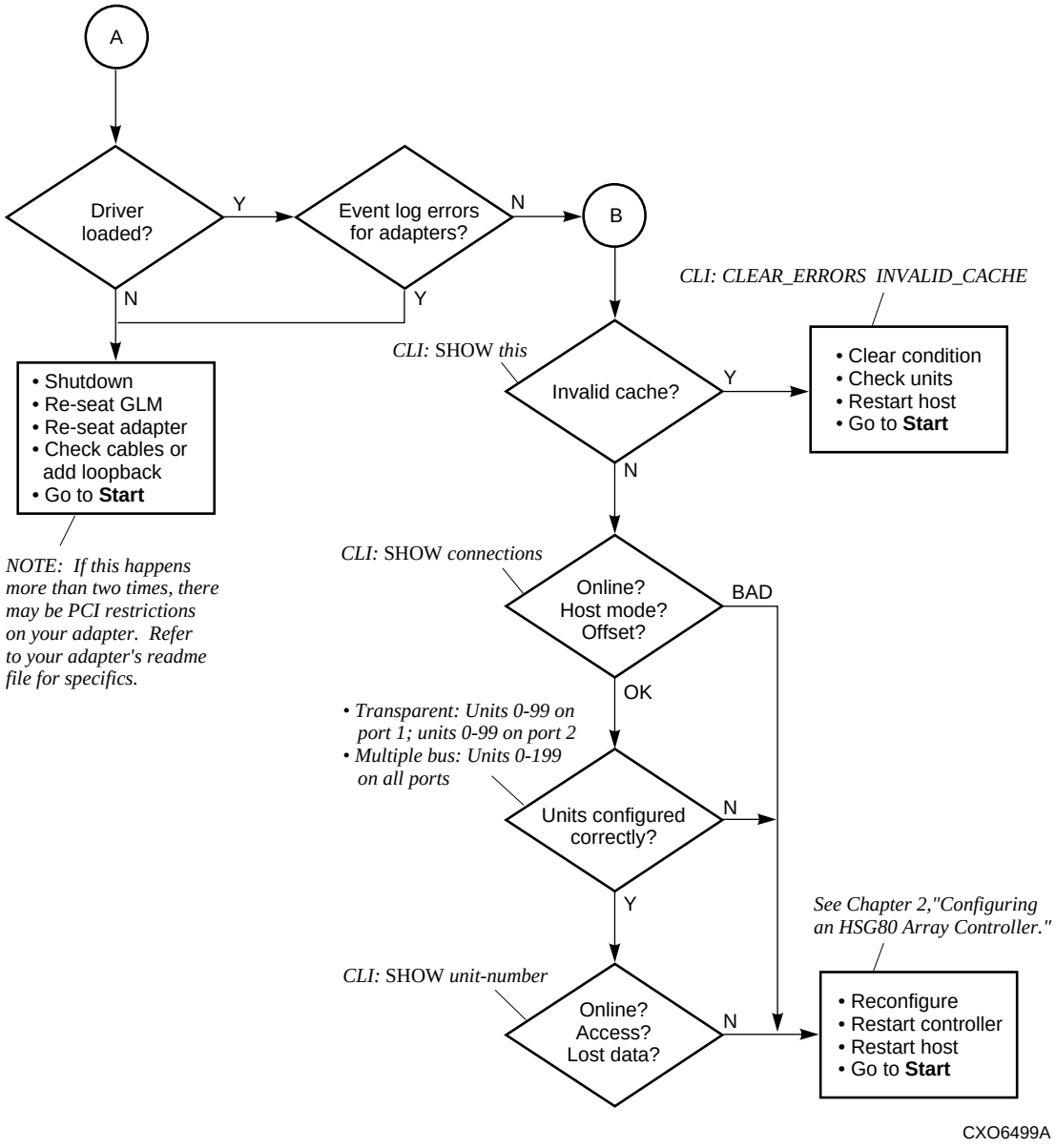
Symptom	Possible Cause	Investigation	Remedy
Host's log file or maintenance terminal indicates that a forced error occurred when the controller was reconstructing a RAIDset or mirrorset	Unrecoverable read errors may have occurred when controller was reconstructing the storageset. Errors occur if another member fails while the controller is reconstructing the storageset.	Conduct a read scan of the storageset using the appropriate utility from the host's operating system, such as the "dd" utility for a DIGITAL UNIX host.	Rebuild the storageset, then restore its data from a backup source. While the controller is reconstructing the storageset, monitor the host error log activity or spontaneous event reports on the maintenance terminal for any unrecoverable errors. If unrecoverable errors persist, note the device on which they occurred, and replace the device before proceeding.
	Host requested data from a normalizing storageset that didn't contain the data.	Use the SHOW *storageset-name* to see if all of its members are "normal."	Wait for normalizing members to become normal, then resume I/O to them.

Figure 4–1 Troubleshooting: Host Cannot Access Unit



CXO6498A

Figure 4–1 Troubleshooting: Host Cannot Access Unit (continued)



Significant Event Reporting

The controller's fault-management software reports information about significant events that occur. These events are reported via the:

- Maintenance terminal
- Host error log
- Operator control panel (OCP)

Some events cause controller operation to terminate; others allow the controller to remain operable. Each of these two instances are detailed in the following sections.

Events that cause controller termination

When an event causes the controller to terminate, there are three possible ways in which it is reported:

- Flashing OCP Pattern Display
- Solid OCP Pattern Display
- Last Failure

Flashing OCP Pattern Display Reporting

Certain events can cause an alternating display of the OCP LEDs. These patterns are detailed in Appendix C, "LED Codes."

Solid OCP Pattern Display Reporting

Some events cause a steady pattern to be displayed in the OCP LEDs, as outlined in Appendix C, "LED Codes."

In addition, information related to the solid OCP patterns may be displayed on the maintenance terminal using %FLL formatting, as detailed in the following examples:

```
%FLL--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:39:45 (time not set)-- OCP Code: 38
Controller operation terminated.

%FLL--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:32:26 (time not set)-- OCP Code: 26
Memory module is missing.
```

Last Failure Reporting

Last Failures are displayed on the maintenance terminal using %LFL formatting. The example below details an occurrence of a Last Failure report:

```
%LFL--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:39:45 (time not set)-- Last Failure Code: 20090010
Power On Time: 0.Years, 14.Days, 19.Hours, 58.Minutes, 42.Seconds
Controller Model: HSG80
Serial Number: AA12345678 Hardware Version: 0000(00)
Software Version: V080G(50)
Informational Report
Instance Code: 0102030A
Last Failure Code: 20090010 (No Last Failure Parameters)

Additional information is available in Last Failure Entry: 1.
```

In addition, Last Failures are reported to the host error log using Template 01, following a reboot of the controller. See Figure D–2 “Template 01 - Last Failure Event Sense Data Response Format,” on page D–4, for a more detailed explanation.

Events that do not cause controller operation to terminate

Events that do not cause controller operation to terminate are displayed in one of two ways:

- Spontaneous Event Log
- CLI Event Reporting

Spontaneous Event Log

Spontaneous event logs are displayed on the maintenance terminal using %EVL formatting, as illustrated in the following examples:

```
%EVL--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:32:47 (time not set)-- Instance Code: 0102030A (not
yet reported to host)
Template: 1.(01)
Power On Time: 0.Years, 14.Days, 19.Hours, 58.Minutes, 43.Seconds
Controller Model: HSG80
Serial Number: AA12345678 Hardware Version: 0000(00)
Software Version: V082G(50)
Informational Report
Instance Code: 0102030A
Last Failure Code: 011C0011
Last Failure Parameter[0.] 0000003F

%EVL--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:32:47 (time not set)-- Instance Code: 82042002 (not
yet reported to host)
Template: 19.(13)
Power On Time: 0.Years, 14.Days, 19.Hours, 58.Minutes, 43.Seconds
Controller Model: HSG80
Serial Number: AA12345678 Hardware Vesion: 0000(00)
Software Version: V082G(50)
Header type: 00 Header flags: 00
Test entity number: 0F Test number Demand/Failure: F8 Command: 01
Error Code: 0008 Return Code: 0005 Address of Error: A0000000
Expected Error Data: 44FCFCFC Actual Error Data: FFFF01BB
Extra Status(1): 00000000 Extra Status(2): 00000000 Extra Status(3): 00000000
Instance Code: 82042002
HSG>
```

Spontaneous event logs are reported to the host error log using SCSI Sense Data Templates 01, 04, 05, 11, 12, 13, 14, 41, and 51. See Appendix D, "Event Reporting: Templates and Codes," for a more detailed explanation.

CLI Event Reporting

CLI event reports are displayed on the maintenance terminal using %CER formatting, as shown in the following example:

```
%CER--HSG> --13-JAN-1946 04:32:20 (time not set)-- Previous controller-
operation terminated with display of solid fault code, OCP Code: 3F
HSG>
```

Fault Management Utility

The Fault Management Utility (FMU) provides a limited interface to the controller's fault-management software. Use FMU to:

- Display the last-failure and memory-system-failure entries that the fault-management software stores in the controller's non-volatile memory.
- Translate many of the code values contained in event messages. For example, entries may contain code values that indicate the cause of the event, the software component that reported the event, the repair action, and so on.
- Control the display characteristics of significant events and failures that the fault-management system displays on the maintenance terminal. See "Controlling the Display of Significant Events and Failures," page 4–20, for specific details on this feature.

Displaying Failure Entries

The controller stores the 16 most recent last-failure reports as entries in its non-volatile memory. The occurrence of any failure event will terminate operation of the controller on which it occurred.

Note Memory system failures are reported via the last failure mechanism but can be displayed separately.

Use the following steps to display the last-failure entries:

1. Connect a local terminal to the controller.
2. Start FMU with the following command:

   RUN FMU
3. Show one or more of the entries with the following command:

   SHOW *event_type entry# FULL*

   where:

   - *event-type* is LAST_FAILURE or MEMORY_SYSTEM_FAILURE
   - *entry#* is ALL, MOST_RECENT, or 1 through 16

- *FULL* displays additional information, such as the I960 stack and hardware component register sets (for example, the memory controller, FX, host port, and device ports, and so on).

4. Exit FMU with the following command:

   EXIT

Example

The following example shows a last-failure entry. The Informational Report—the lower half of the entry—contains the instance code, reporting component, and so forth that you can translate with FMU to learn more about the event.

```
Last Failure Entry: 4. Flags: 006FF300
Template: 1.(01) Description: Last Failure Event
Power On Time: 0. Years, 14. Days, 19. Hours, 51. Minutes, 31. Seconds
Controller Model: HSG80
Serial Number: AA12345678 Hardware Version: 0000(00)
Software Version: V082G(50)
Informational Report
Instance Code: 0102030A Description:
An unrecoverable software inconsistency was detected or an intentional
restart or shutdown of controller operation was requested.
Reporting Component: 1.(01) Description:
Executive Services
Reporting component's event number: 2.(02)
Event Threshold: 10.(0A) Classification:
SOFT. An unexpected condition detected by a controller software com-
ponent (e.g., protocol violations, host buffer access errors, internal
inconsistencies, uninterpreted device errors, etc.) or an intentional
restart or shutdown of controller operation is indicated.
Last Failure Code: 20090010 (No Last Failure Parameters)
Last Failure Code: 20090010 Description:
This controller requested this controller to shutdown.
Reporting Component: 32.(20) Description:
Command Line Interpreter
Reporting component's event number: 9.(09)
Restart Type: 1.(01) Description: No restart
```

Translating Event Codes

Use the following steps to translate the event codes in the fault-management reports for spontaneous events and failures:

1. Connect a local terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. Start FMU with the following command:

   RUN FMU

3. Show one or more of the entries with the following command:

   DESCRIBE *code_type code#*

   where *code_type* is one of those listed in Table 4–2 and *code#* is the alpha-numeric value displayed in the entry. The code types marked with an asterisk (*) require multiple code numbers.

Table 4–2 Event-Code Types

Event-Code Type
ASC_ASCQ_CODE*
COMPONENT_CODE
CONTROLLER_UNIQUE_ASC_ASCQ_CODE*
DEVICE_TYPE_CODE
EVENT _THRESHOLD_CODE
INSTANCE_CODE
LAST_FAILURE_CODE
REPAIR_ACTION_CODE
RESTART_TYPE
SCSI_COMMAND_OPERATION_CODE*
SENSE_DATA_QUALIFIERS*
SENSE_KEY_CODE
TEMPLATE_CODE

Example

The following example shows the FMU translation of a last-failure code.

```
FMU>DESCRIBE LAST_FAILURE_CODE 206C0020
Last Failure Code: 206C0020
Description: Controller was forced to restart in order for new con-
troller code image to take effect.
Reporting Component: 32.(20)
Description: Command Line Interpreter
Reporting component's event number: 108.(6C)
Restart Type: 2.(02)
Description: Automatic hardware restart
```

Instance Codes and Last-Failure Codes

Instance codes identify and accompany significant events that do not cause the controller to terminate operation; last-failure codes identify and accompany failure events that cause the controller to stop operating. Last-failure codes are sent to the host only after the affected controller is restarted successfully.

Controlling the Display of Significant Events and Failures

You can control how the fault-management software displays significant events and failures with FMU's SET command.

Table 4–3 describes various SET commands that you can enter while running FMU. These commands remain in effect only as long as the current FMU session remains active, unless you enter the PERMANENT qualifier—the last entry in Table 4–3.

Table 4–3 FMU SET Commands

Command	Result
SET EVENT_LOGGING SET NOEVENT_LOGGING	enable and disable the spontaneous display of significant events to the local terminal; preceded by "%EVL." By default, logging is enabled (SET EVENT_LOGGING). When logging is enabled, the controller spontaneously displays information about the events on the local terminal. Spontaneous event logging is suspended during the execution of CLI commands and operation of utilities on a local terminal. Because these events are spontaneous, logs are not stored by the controller.
SET LAST_FAILURE LOGGING SET NOLAST_FAILURE LOGGING	enable and disable the spontaneous display of last failure events; preceded by "%LFL." By default, logging is enabled (SET LAST_FAILURE LOGGING). The controller spontaneously displays information relevant to the sudden termination of controller operation. In cases of automatic hardware reset (for example, power failure or pressing the controller's reset button), the fault LED log display is inhibited because automatic resets do not allow sufficient time to complete the log display.
SET *log_type* REPAIR_ACTION SET *log_type* NOREPAIR_ACTION	enable and disable the inclusion of repair action information for event logging or last-failure logging. By default, repair actions are not displayed for these log types (SET *log_type* NOREPAIR_ACTION). If the display of repair actions is enabled, the controller displays any of the recommended repair actions associated with the event.
SET *log_type* VERBOSE SET *log_type* NOVERBOSE	enable and disable the automatic translation of event codes that are contained in event logs or last-failure logs. By default, this descriptive text is not displayed (SET *log_type* NOVERBOSE). See Translating Event Codes on page 4–18 for instructions to translate these codes manually.

Table 4–3 FMU SET Commands (Continued)

Command	Result
SET PROMPT SET NOPROMPT	enable and disable the display of the CLI prompt string following the log identifier "%EVL," or "%LFL," or "%FLL." This command is useful if the CLI prompt string is used to identify the controllers in a dual-redundant configuration (see Appendix B, "CLI Commands," for instructions to set the CLI command string for a controller). If enabled, the CLI prompt will be able to identify which controller sent the log to the local terminal. By default, the prompt is set (SET PROMPT).
SET TIMESTAMP SET NOTIMESTAMP	enable and disable the display of the current date and time in the first line of an event or last-failure log. By default, the timestamp is set (SET TIMESTAMP)
SET FMU_REPAIR_ACTION SET FMU_NOREPAIR_ACTION	enable and disable the inclusion of repair actions with SHOW LAST_FAILURE and SHOW MEMORY_SYSTEM_FAILURE commands. By default, the repair actions are not shown (SET FMU NOREPAIR_ACTION). If repair actions are enabled, the command outputs display all of the recommended repair actions associated with the instance or last-failure codes used to describe an event.
SET FMU VERBOSE SET FMU NOVERBOSE	enable and disable the inclusion of instance and last failure code descriptive text with SHOW LAST_FAILURE and SHOW MEMORY_SYSTEM_ FAILURE commands. By default, this descriptive text is not displayed (SET FMU_NOVERBOSE). If the descriptive text is enabled, it identifies the fields and their numeric content that comprise an event or last-failure entry.
SET CLI_EVENT_REPORTING SET NOCLI_EVENT_REPORTING	enable and disable the asynchronous errors reported at the CLI prompt (for example, "swap signals disabled" or "shelf has a bad power supply"). Preceded by "%CER." By default, these errors are reported (SET CLI_EVENT_REPORTING). These errors are cleared with the CLEAR ERRORS_CLI command.

Table 4–3 FMU SET Commands (Continued)

Command	Result
SET FAULT_LED_LOGGING SET NOFAULT_LED_LOGGING	enable and disable the solid fault LED event log display on the local terminal. Preceded by "%FLL." By default, logging is enabled (SET FAULT_LED_LOGGING). When enabled, and a solid fault pattern is displayed in the OCP LEDs, the fault pattern and its meaning are displayed on the maintenance terminal. For many of the patterns, additional information is also displayed to aid in problem diagnosis. In cases of automatic hardware reset (for example, power failure or pressing the controller's reset button), the fault LED log display is inhibited because automatic resets do not allow sufficient time to complete the log display.
SHOW PARAMETERS	displays the current settings associated with the SET command.
SET command PERMANENT	preserves the SET command across controller resets.

Using VTDPY to Check for Communication Problems

Use the virtual terminal display (VTDPY) utility to get information about the following communications:

- Communication between the controller and its hosts
- Communication between the controller and the devices in the subsystem
- The state and I/O activity of the logical units, devices, and device ports in the subsystem

Use the following steps to run VTDPY:

1. Connect a terminal to the controller. The terminal must support ANSI control sequences.
2. Set the terminal to NOWRAP mode to prevent the top line of the display from scrolling off of the screen.
3. Start VTDPY with the following command:

   RUN VTDPY

   Use the key sequences and commands liosted in Table 4–4 to control VTDPY.

Table 4–4 VTDPY Key Sequences and Commands

Command	Action
Ctrl/C	Enables command mode; after entering Ctrl/C, enter one of the following commands and press Return: CLEAR DISPLAY CACHE DISPLAY DEFAULT DISPLAY DEVICE DISPLAY HOST DISPLAY STATUS HELP INTERVAL *seconds* (to change update interval)
Ctrl/G	Updates screen
Ctrl/O	Pauses (and resumes) screen updates
Ctrl/R	Refreshes current screen display
Ctrl/Y	Exits VTDPY

You may abbreviate the commands to the minimum number of characters necessary to identify the command. Enter a question mark (?) after a partial command to see the values that can follow the supplied command. For example, if you enter DISP ?, the utility will list CACHE, DEFAULT, and so forth. (Separate "DISP" and "?" with a space.) Upon successfully executing a command—other than HELP—VTDPY exits command mode. Pressing Return without a command also causes VTDPY to exit command mode.

Checking Controller-to-Host Communications

Use the display host VTDPY command to see how or if the controller is communicating with the host (see Figure 4–2).

Figure 4–2 Xfer Rate Region of the Default Display

```
VTDPY> DISPLAY DEFAULT

                S/N: ZG74100120 SW: R052G-0 HW: 00-00
                     35.8% Idle 98237 KB/S 1559 Rq/S

Pr Name     Stk/Max Typ  Sta  CPU%     Target            Unit   ASWC  KB/S  Rd%   Wr%   Cm%   HT%
0  NULL     0/0          Rn   35.8     111111            D0000  o^a   3288  100   0     0     100
4  HP_MAIN  40/2    FNC  Rn   64.1     0123456789012345  D0001  o^a   3288  100   0     0     100
                                       P1 DDD hH         D0002  o^a   3288  100   0     0     100
                                       o2 DDD hH         D0003  o^a   3283  100   0     0     100
                                       r3 DDD hH         D0004  o^a   8800  100   0     0     100
                                       t4 DDD hH         D0005  o^a   8918  100   0     0     100
                                       5 DDD hH          D0006  o^a   8795  100   0     0     100
                                       6 DDD hH          D0007  o^a   8725  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0100  o^a   6254  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0101  o^a   6211  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0102  o^a   6227  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0103  o^a   6265  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0104  o^a   6216  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0105  o^a   6222  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0106  o^a   6227  100   0     0     100
                                                         D0107  o^a   6222  100   0     0     100
```

Checking Controller-to-Device Communications

Use the VTDPY display device to see how or if the controller is communicating with the devices in the subsystem (see Figure 4–3). This display contains three important regions:

- Device map region (upper left)
- Device status region (upper right)
- Device-port status region (lower left)

Figure 4–3 Regions on the Device Display

```
                                VTDPY>DISPLAY DEVICE

                                                    S/N: ZG64100176 SW: v7.0 HW: CX-02
                                          67% I/D    99.9% Idle    0 KB/S     Up: 0 5:17.54

Target                          PTL       ASWF    Rq/S   RdKB/S   WrKB/S  Que  Tg   CR   BR   TR
111111                          P1120      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
0123456789012345                D1130      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
P1 hH PDD                       D1140      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
o2 hH DDD                       D2120      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
r3 ????hH                       D2130      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
t4 hH DDD                       D2150      a^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
5   P  hH                       ?3020       ^F      0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
6 DDD  hH                       ?3030       ^F      0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                ?3040       ^F      0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                ?3050       ^F      0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D4090      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D4100      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D4110      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                P5030      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D6010      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D6020      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0
                                D6030      A^       0       0        0      0    0    0    0    0

 Port  Rq/S   RdKB/S   WrKB/S    CR     BR     TR
   1     0       0        0       0      0      0
   2     0       0        0       0      0      0
   3     0       0        0       0      0      0
   4     0       0        0       0      0      0
   5     0       0        0       0      0      0
   6     0       0        0       0      0      0
```

Checking Device Type and Location

The device map region of the device display (upper left) shows all of the devices that the controller recognizes through its device ports. Table 4–5 lists the heading and contents for each column of the device map region.

Table 4–5 Device Map Columns

Column	Contents
Port	SCSI ports 1 through 6.
Target	SCSI targets 0 through 15. Single controllers occupy 7; dual-redundant controllers occupy 6 and 7.
	D = disk drive or CD-ROM drive
	F = foreign device
	H = this controller
	h = other controller in dual-redundant configurations

Table 4–5 Device Map Columns (Continued)

Column	Contents
	P = passthrough device
	? = unknown device type
	= no device at this port/target location

Checking Device Status and I/O Activity

The device status region of the device display (upper right) shows the name and I/O characteristics for all of the devices that the controller recognizes. Table 4–6 lists the heading and contents for each column of the device status region.

Table 4–6 Device Status Columns

Column	Contents
PTL	Kind of device and its port-target-lun (PTL) location:
	D = disk drive
	P = passthrough device
	? = unknown device type
	= no device at this port/target location
A	Availability of the device:
	A = available to this controller
	a = available to other controller
	U = unavailable, but configured on “this controller”
	u = unavailable, but configured on “other controller”
	= unknown availability state
S	Spindle state of the device:
	^ = disk spinning at correct speed; tape loaded
	> = disk spinning up
	< = disk spinning down
	v = disk not spinning

Table 4–6 Device Status Columns (Continued)

Column	Contents
	= unknown spindle state
W	Write-protection state of the device. For disk drives, a W in this column indicates that the device is hardware write-protected. This column is blank for other kinds of devices.
F	Fault state of the device. An F in this column indicates an unrecoverable device fault. If this field is set, the device fault LED should also be lit.
Rq/S	Average request rate for the device during the last update interval. Requests can be up to 32K and generated by host or cache activity.
RdKB/S	Average data transfer rate from the device (reads) during the last update interval.
WrKB/S	Average data transfer rate to the device (writes) during the last update interval.
Que	Maximum number of I/O requests waiting to be transferred to the device during the last update interval.
Tg	Maximum number of requests queued to the device during the last update interval. If the device doesn't support tagged queuing, the maximum value is 1.
CR	Number of SCSI command resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.
BR	Number of SCSI bus resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.
TR	Number of SCSI target resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.

Checking Device-Port Status and I/O Activity

The device-port status region of the device display (lower left) shows the I/O characteristics for the controller's device ports. Table 4–7 lists the heading and contents for each column of the device-port status region.

Table 4–7 Device-Port Status Columns

Column	Contents
Port	SCSI device ports 1 through 6.
Rq/S	Average request rate for the port during the last update interval. Requests can be up to 32K and generated by host or cache activity.
RdKB/S	Average data transfer rate from the devices on the port (reads) during the last update interval.
WrKB/S	Average data transfer rate to the devices on the port (writes) during the last update interval.
CR	Number of SCSI command resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.
BR	Number of SCSI bus resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.
TR	Number of SCSI target resets that occurred since VTDPY was started.

Checking Unit Status and I/O Activity

Use the cache display to see the status and I/O activity for the logical units configured on the controller (see Figure 4–4). Table 4–8 lists the heading and contents for each column of the device status region.

Figure 4–4 Unit Status on the Cache Display

```
VTDPY> DISPLAY CACHE

                    S/N: ZG64100176 SW: v7.0 HW: CX-02
              66% I/D     Hit  99.8% Idle     0 KB/S 0 Rq/S    Up: 0  5:16.42

 Unit   ASWC        KB/S    Rd%   Wr%   Cm%   HT%   PH%   MS%  Purge BlChd BlHit
 P0300  o             0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
 D0303  o^ b          0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
 D0304                0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
 P0400                0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
 P0401                0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
 D0402  x^ b          0      0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0     0
```

Table 4–8 Unit Status Columns

Column	Contents
Unit	Kind of unit (and its unit number):
	D = disk drive or CD-ROM drive
	P = passthrough device
	? = unknown device type
A	Availability of the unit:
	a = available to other controller
	d = disabled for servicing, offline
	e = mounted for exclusive access by a user
	f = media format error
	i = inoperative
	m = maintenance mode for diagnostic purposes
	o = online. Host may access this unit through “this controller.”
	r = rundown with the SET NORUN command
	v = no volume mounted due to lack of media

Table 4–8 Unit Status Columns (Continued)

Column	Contents
	x = online. Host may access this unit through "other controller."
	= unknown availability
S	Spindle state of the device:
	^ = disk spinning at correct speed; tape loaded
	> = disk spinning up; tape loading
	< = disk spinning down; tape unloading
	v = disk not spinning; tape unloaded
	= unknown spindle state
W	Write-protection state. For disk drives, a W in this column indicates that the device is hardware write-protected. This column is blank for units that comprise other kinds of devices.
C	Caching state of the device:
	a = read, write-back, and read-ahead caching enabled
	b = read and write-back caching enabled
	c = read and read-ahead caching enabled
	p = read-ahead caching enabled
	r = read caching only
	= caching disabled
KB/S	Average amount of data transferred to and from the unit during the last update interval in 1000-byte increments.
Rd%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were read from the unit.
Wr%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were written to the unit.
CM%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were compared. A compare operation can accompany a read or a write operation, so this column is not the sum of columns Rd% and Wr%.

Table 4–8 Unit Status Columns (Continued)

Column	Contents
	x = online. Host may access this unit through "other controller."
	= unknown availability
S	Spindle state of the device:
	^ = disk spinning at correct speed; tape loaded
	> = disk spinning up; tape loading
	< = disk spinning down; tape unloading
	v = disk not spinning; tape unloaded
	= unknown spindle state
W	Write-protection state. For disk drives, a W in this column indicates that the device is hardware write-protected. This column is blank for units that comprise other kinds of devices.
C	Caching state of the device:
	a = read, write-back, and read-ahead caching enabled
	b = read and write-back caching enabled
	c = read and read-ahead caching enabled
	p = read-ahead caching enabled
	r = read caching only
	= caching disabled
KB/S	Average amount of data transferred to and from the unit during the last update interval in 1000-byte increments.
Rd%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were read from the unit.
Wr%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were written to the unit.
CM%	Percentage of data transferred between the host and the unit that were compared. A compare operation can accompany a read or a write operation, so this column is not the sum of columns Rd% and Wr%.

Table 4–8 Unit Status Columns (Continued)

Column	Contents
HT%	Cache-hit percentage for data transferred between the host and the unit.
PH%	Partial cache-hit percentage for data transferred between the host and the unit.
MS%	Cache-miss percentage for data transferred between the host and the unit.
Purge	Number of blocks purged from the cache during the last update interval.
BlChd	Number of blocks added to the cache during the last update interval.
BlHit	Number of blocks hit during the last update interval.

Checking Fibre Channel Link Errors

You can also use the display host VTDPY command to check for any channel link errors (see Figure 4–5).

Note The following section outlines the VTDPY display for "this controller" only. To see other connections, you must run VTDPY again on the "other controller."

Figure 4–5 Fibre Channel Host Status Display

```
                              FIBRE CHANNEL HOST STATUS DISPLAY

********* KNOWN HOSTS **********       ******* PORT 1 *******          ******* PORT 2 *******
## NAME      BB FrSz  ID/ALPA  P S   Topology               :  LOOP  Topology               : LOOP
00 ASSIGN     0 2048    01     1 F   Current Status         :STNDBY  Current Status         : LOOP
01 !NEWCON47  0 2048    81     2 N   Current ID/ALPA        :        Current ID/ALPA        :   e4
                                     Tachyon Status         :     0  Tachyon Status         :    0
                                     Queue Depth            :     0  Queue Depth            :   24
                                     Busy/QFull Rsp         :     0  Busy/QFull Rsp         :    0
                                       LINK ERROR COUNTERS             LINK ERROR COUNTERS
                                     Link Downs             :    30  Link Downs             :    5
                                     Soft Inits             :    14  Soft Inits             :    6
                                     Hard Inits             :     0  Hard Inits             :    0
                                     Loss of Signals        :     0  Loss of Signals        :    0
                                     Bad Rx Chars           :   243  Bad Rx Chars           :  207
                                     Loss of Syncs          :     0  Loss of Syncs          :    0
                                     Link Fails             :     0  Link Fails             :    0
                                     Received EOFa          :     0  Received EOFa          :    0
                                     Generated EOFa         :     0  Generated EOFa         :    0
                                     Bad CRCs               :     0  Bad CRCs               :    0
                                     Protocol Errors        :     0  Protocol Errors        :    0
                                     Elastic Errors         :     0  Elastic Errors         :    1
```

Use the VTDPY>CLEAR command to clear the host display link error counters.

Table outlines the “Known Hosts” portion of the Fibre Channel Host Status Display that appears with the display host VTDPY command. For a more detailed explanation on certain field labels and their definitions, consult the FC-PH specification.

Table 4–9 Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Known Hosts (Connections)

Field Label	Description
##	Internal ID
NAME	Refer to the SHOW *connection* command in Appendix B.
BB	Buffer-to-buffer credit
FrSz	Frame size
ID/ALPA	Host ID
P	Port number (1 or 2)
S	Status: N = online F = offline

The following tables detail the remaining portions of the Fibre Channel Host Status Display. Table 4–10 includes the labels that report the status of ports one and two, and Table 4–11 describes the Link Error Counters.

Table 4–10 Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Port Status

Field Label	Description
Topology	LOOP OFFLNE
Current Status	DOWN LOOP STNDBY
Current ID/ALPA	Controller ID
Tachyon Status	This denotes the current state of the Tachyon, or Fibre Channel control chip. See "Tachyon Status," page 4–36, for more detail.
Queue Depth	Queue depth shows the instantaneous number of commands at the controller port.
Busy/QFull RSP	This field represents the total number of QFull/ Busy responses sent by the port.

Table 4–11 Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Link Error Counters

Field Label	Description
Link Downs	This field refers to the total number of link down/up transitions.
Soft Inits	Soft initializations are the number of loop initialization caused by this port.
Hard Inits	Hard initializations indicate the number of Tachyon chip resets.
Loss of Signals	Loss of signals show the number of times the Frame Manager detected a low-to-high transition on the lnk_unuse signal.

Table 4–11 Fibre Channel Host Status Display- Link Error Counters (Continued)

Field Label	Description
Bad Rx Chars	This field represents the number of times the 8B/10B decode detected an invalid 10-bit code. FC-PH denotes this value as “Invalid Transmission Word during frame reception.” This field may be non-zero after initialization. After initialization, the host should read this value to determine the correct starting value for this error count.
Loss of Syncs	Loss of Sync denotes the number of times the loss of sync is greater than RT_TOV.
Link Fails	This field indicates the number of times the Frame Manager detected a NOS or other initialization protocol failure that caused a transition to the Link Failure state.
Received EOFa	Received EOFa refers to the number of frames containing an EOFa delimiter that Tachyon has received.
Generated EOFa	This field reveals the number of problem frames that Tachyon has received that caused the Frame Manager to attach an EOFa delimiter. Frames that Tachyon discarded due to internal FIFO overflow are not included in this or any other statistic.
Bad CRCs	Bad CRCs denotes the number of bad CRC frames that Tachyon has received.
Protocol Errors	This field indicates the number of protocol errors that the Frame Manager has detected.
Elastic Errors	Elastic errors reveal the timing difference between the receive and transmit clocks and usually indicate cable pulls.

Tachyon Status

The number that appears in the Tachyon Status field represents the current state of the Tachyon, or Fibre Channel control chip. It consists of a two-digit hex number, the first of which is explained in Figure 4–12. The second digit is outlined in Figure 4–13. Refer to the Tachyon user's manual for a more detailed explanation of the Tachyon definitions.

Table 4–12 Tachyon First Digit

State	Definition	State	Definition
0	MONITORING	8	INITIALIZING
1	ARBITRATING	9	O_I INIT FINISH
2	ARBITRATION WON	A	O_I PROTOCOL
3	OPEN	B	O_I LIP RECEIVED
4	OPENED	C	HOST CONTROL
5	XMITTED CL0SE	D	LOOP FAIL
6	RECEIVED CLOSE	F	OLD PORT
7	TRANSFER		

Table 4–13 Tachyon Second Digit

State	Definition	State	Definition
0	OFFLINE	6	LR2
1	OL1	7	LR3
2	OL2	9	LF1
3	OL3	A	LF2
5	LR1	F	ACTI VE

Checking for Disk-Drive Problems

Use the disk inline exerciser (DILX) to check the data-transfer capability of disk drives. DILX generates intense read/write loads to the disk drive while monitoring the drive's performance and status. You may run DILX on as many disk drives as you'd like, but because this utility creates substantial I/O loads on the controller, DIGITAL recommends that you stop host-based I/O during the test. You may also use DILX to exercise the read capability of CD-ROM drives.

Finding a Disk Drive in the Subsystem

Use the following steps to find a disk drive or device in the subsystem:

1. Connect a terminal to the controller"s maintenance port.
2. Show the devices that are configured on the controller with the following command:

   SHOW DEVICES

3. Find the device in the enclosure with the following command:

   LOCATE *device-name*

   This command causes the device's LED to blink continuously.

4. Enter the following command to turn off the LED:

   LOCATE CANCEL

Testing the Read Capability of a Disk Drive

Use the following steps to test the read capability of a disk drive:

1. From a host console, dismount the logical unit that contains the disk drive you want to test.
2. Connect a terminal to the maintenace port of the controller that accesses the disk drive you want to test.
3. Run DILX with the following command:

   RUN DILX

4. Decline the Auto-configure option so that you can specify the disk drive to test.
5. Accept the default test settings and run the test in read-only mode.
6. Enter the unit number of the disk drive you want to test. For example, to test D107, enter the number 107.

7. If you want to test more than one disk drive, enter the appropriate unit numbers when prompted. Otherwise, enter "n" to start the test. Use the control sequences listed in Table 4–14 to control DILX during the test.

Table 4–14 DILX Control Sequences

Command	Action
Ctrl/C	Terminates the test
Ctrl/G	Displays the performance summary for the current test and continue testing
Ctrl/Y	Terminates the test and exits DILX

Testing the Read and Write Capabilities of a Disk Drive

Run a DILX Basic Function test to test the read and write capability of a disk drive. During the Basic Function test, DILX runs the following four tests. (DILX repeats the last three tests until the time that you specify in step 6 on page 4–40 expires.)

- **Write test.** Writes specific patterns of data to the disk drive (see Table 4–15 on page 4–39.) DILX does not repeat this test.
- **Random I/O test.** Simulates typical I/O activity by issuing read, write, access, and erase commands to randomly-chosen logical block numbers (LBNs). You can set the ratio of these commands as well as the percentage of read and write data that are compared throughout this test. This test takes six minutes.
- **Data-transfer test.** Tests throughput by starting at an LBN and transferring data to the next LBN that has not been written to. This test takes two minutes.
- **Seek test.** Stimulates head motion on the disk drive by issuing single-sector erase and access commands. Each I/O uses a different track on each subsequent transfer. You can set the ratio of access and erase commands. This test takes two minutes.

Table 4–15 Data Patterns for Phase 1: Write Test

Pattern	Pattern in Hexadecimal Numbers
1	0000
2	8B8B
3	3333
4	3091
5	0001, 0003, 0007, 000F, 001F, 003F, 007F, 00FF, 01FF, 03FF, 07FF, 0FFF, 1FFF, 3FFF, 7FFF
6	FIE, FFFC, FFFC, FFFC, FFE0, FFE0, FFE0, FFE0, FE00, FC00, F800, F000, F000, C000, 8000, 0000
7	0000, 0000, 0000, FFFF, FFFF, FFFF, 0000, 0000, FFFF, FFFF, 0000, FFFF, 0000, FFFF, 0000, FFFF
8	B6D9
9	5555, 5555, 5555, AAAA, AAAA, AAAA, 5555, 5555, AAAA, AAAA, 5555, AAAA, 5555, AAAA, 5555, AAAA, 5555
10	DB6C
11	2D2D, 2D2D, 2D2D, D2D2, D2D2, D2D2, 2D2D, 2D2D, D2D2, D2D2, 2D2D, D2D2, 2D2D, D2D2, 2D2D, D2D2
12	6DB6
13	0001, 0002, 0004, 0008, 0010, 0020, 0040, 0080, 0100, 0200, 0400, 0800, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000
14	FIE, FFFD, FFFB, FFF7, FFEF, FFDF, FFBF, FF7F, FEFF, FDFF, FBFF, F7FF, EFFF, BFFF, DFFF, 7FFF
15	DB6D, B6DB, 6DB6, DB6D, B6DB, 6DB6, DB6D, B6DB, 6DB6, DB6D, B6DB, 6DB6, DB6D
16	3333, 3333, 3333, 1999, 9999, 9999, B6D9, B6D9, B6D9, B6D9, FFFF, FFFF, 0000, 0000, DB6C, DB6C
17	9999, 1999, 699C, E99C, 9921, 9921, 1921, 699C, 699C, 0747, 0747, 0747, 699C, E99C, 9999, 9999
18	FFFF

Use the following steps to test the read and write capabilities of a specific disk drive:

1. From a host console, dismount the logical unit that contains the disk drive you want to test.
2. Connect a terminal to the maintenance port of the controller that accesses the disk drive you want to test.
3. Run DILX with the following command:

   RUN DILX

4. Decline the auto-configure option so that you can specify the disk drive to test.

Tip Use the auto-configure option if you want to test the read and write capabilities of every disk drive in the subsystem.

5. Decline the default settings.
6. Enter the number of minutes you want the DILX Basic Function test to run.

Note To ensure that DILX accesses the entire disk space, you should enter 120 or more.

7. Enter the number of minutes between the display of performance summaries.
8. Choose to include performance statistics in the summary.
9. Choose to display both hard and soft errors.
10. Choose to display the hex dump.
11. Accept the hard-error limit default.
12. Accept the soft-error limit default.
13. Accept the queue depth default.
14. Choose option 1 to run a Basic Function test.
15. Enable phase 1, the write test.
16. Accept the default percentage of requests that DILX issues as read requests during phase 2, the random I/O test. DILX issues the balance as write requests.

17. Choose ALL for the data patterns that DILX issues for write requests.
18. Perform the initial write pass.
19. Allow DILX to compare the read and write data.
20. Accept the default percentage of reads and writes that DILX compares.
21. Enter the unit number of the disk drive you want to test. For example, if you want to test D107, enter the number 107.
22. If you want to test more than one disk drive, enter the appropriate unit numbers when prompted, otherwise, enter “n” to start the test. Use the command sequences shown in Table 4–14 to control the write test.

DILX Error Codes

Table 4–16 explains the error codes that DILX may display during and after testing.

Table 4–16 DILX Error Codes

Error Code	Explanation
1	Illegal Data Pattern Number found in data pattern header. DILX read data from the disk and discovered that the data did not conform to the pattern in which it was previously written.
2	No write buffers correspond to data pattern. DILX read a legal data pattern from the disk, but because no write buffers correspond to the pattern, the data must be considered corrupt.
3	Read data does not match write buffer. DILX compared the read and write data and discovered that they didn’t correspond.

Running the Controller's Diagnostic Test

During start up, the controller automatically tests its device ports, host port, cache module, and value-added functions. If you're experiencing intermittent problems with one of these components, you can run the controller's diagnostic test in a continuous loop, rather than restarting the controller over and over again.

Use the following steps to run the controller's diagnostic test:

1. Connect a terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. Start the self test with one of the following commands:

   SELFTEST THIS CONTROLLER

   SELFTEST OTHER_CONTROLLER

Note The self test runs until it detects an error or until you press the controller's reset button.

If the self test detects an error, it saves information about the error and produces an OCP LED code for a "daemon hard error." Restart the controller to write the error information to the host's error log, then check the log for a "built-in self-test failure" event report. This report will contain an instance code, located at offset 32 through 35, that you can use to determine the cause of the error. See "Translating Event Codes," page 4–18 for help on translating instance codes.

CHAPTER 5

Replacement Procedures

This chapter describes the procedures for replacing the controller, cache module, external cache battery (ECB), gigabit link module (GLM), power verification and addressing (PVA) module, I/O module, PCMCIA card, DIMMs, fibre cable or hub, and a failed storageset member. Additionally, there are procedures for shutting down and restarting the subsystem.

See the enclosure documentation for information about the power supplies, cooling fans, cables, and environmental monitoring unit (EMU).

Electrostatic Discharge

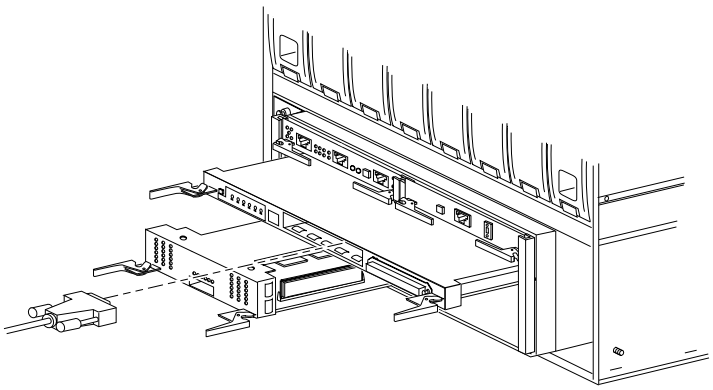
Electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a common problem and may cause data loss, system down time, and other problems. The most common source of static electricity is the movement of people in contact with carpets and clothing. Low humidity also increases the amount of static electricity. You must discharge all static electricity prior to touching electronic equipment. Follow the precautions in "Electrostatic Discharge Precautions" given in the Preface whenever you are replacing any component.

Replacing Modules in a Single Controller Configuration

Follow the instructions in this section to replace modules in a single controller configuration (see Figure 5–1). If you're replacing modules in a dual-redundant controller configuration, see "Replacing Modules in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration," page 5–8.

To upgrade a single controller configuration to a dual redundant controller configuration, see "Upgrading to a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration," page 6–16.

Figure 5–1 Single Controller Configuration



CXO6188A

The following sections cover procedures for replacing both the controller and cache module, replacing the controller, and replacing the cache module.

Caution You must shut down the subsystem before removing or replacing any modules. If you remove the controller or any other module without first shutting down the subsystem, data loss may occur.

Replacing the Controller and Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration

If both the controller and cache module need to be replaced, follow the steps in "Replacing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–3, and the steps in "Replacing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–6.

Replacing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps in “Removing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration” and “Installing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration” to replace the controller.

Removing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to remove the controller:

1. From the host console, dismount the logical units in the subsystem. If you are using a Windows NT platform, shut down the server.
2. If the controller is operating, connect a PC or terminal to the controller’s maintenance port.

   If the controller is not operating, go to step 5.
3. Run FMU to obtain the last failure codes, if desired.

Note If you initialized a container with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch (see page B–73), you can save this controller’s current device configuration using the CONFIGURATION SAVE command (see page B–49). If CONFIGURATION SAVE is not used, you will have to manually configure the new controller as described in Chapter 2, “Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller.”

Caution The cache module may contain data if the controller crashed and you weren’t able to shut it down with the SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER command.

4. Shut down the controller with the following command:

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controller shuts down, its reset button and the first three LEDs are lit continuously.

Caution ESD can easily damage a controller. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

5. Remove the program card’s ESD cover and program card. Save them for the replacement controller.

6. Disconnect the hub cables from the controller.

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

7. If connected, disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.
8. Disengage both retaining levers and remove the controller, then place the controller into an antistatic bag or onto a grounded antistatic mat.

Installing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to install the controller:

Caution ESD can easily damage a controller. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Make sure you align the controller in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the module correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

1. Insert the new controller into its slot, and engage its retaining levers.
2. Connect the hub cables to the new controller.

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

3. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
4. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the new controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover.
5. When the CLI prompt reappears, display details about the controller you configured. Use the following command:

   SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL

   See the SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL on page B–145 for more information about using this command.

6. See “Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller,” page 2–3, to configure the controller.

Note If the controller you’re installing was previously used in another subsystem, it will need to be purged of the controller’s old configuration (see “CONFIGURATION RESET,” page B–45).

7. To restore a configuration saved with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch, hold button 6 while releasing the reset button.
8. Using CLCP, install any patches that you had installed on the previous controller (see “Installing a Software Patch,” page 6–6).
9. Mount the logical units on the host. If you are using a Windows NT platform, restart the server.
10. Set the subsystem date and time with the following command:

    SET THIS_CONTROLLER TIME=*dd-mmm-yyyy:hh:mm:ss*

11. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller’s maintenance port.

Replacing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps in "Removing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration" and "Installing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration" to replace the cache module.

Removing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to remove the cache module:

1. From the host console, dismount the logical units in the subsystem. If you are using a Windows NT platform, shut down the server.
2. If the controller is operating, connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.

   If the controller is not operating, go to step 5.
3. Run FMU to obtain the last failure codes, if desired.
4. Shut down the controller with the following command:

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controller shuts down, its reset button and the first three LEDs are lit continuously.

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

5. Disable the ECB by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before disconnecting the ECB cable from the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result cache module damage.

6. Disconnect the ECB cable from the cache module.
7. Disengage both retaining levers, remove the cache module, and place the cache module into an antistatic bag or onto a grounded antistatic mat.

Installing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to install the cache module:

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Make sure you align the cache module in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the cache module correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

1. Insert the new cache module into its slot and engage its retaining levers.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before connecting the ECB cable to the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in ECB damage.

2. Connect the ECB cable to the new cache module.
3. If not already connected, connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
4. Mount the logical units on the host. If you are using a Windows NT platform, restart the server.
5. Set the subsystem date and time with the following command:

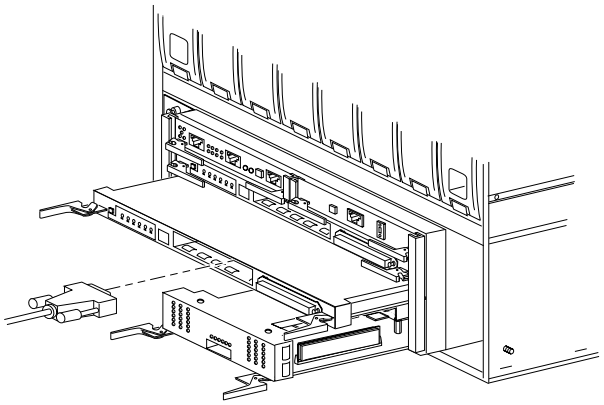
   SET THIS_CONTROLLER TIME=*dd-mmm-yyyy:hh:mm:ss*

6. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Replacing Modules in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Follow the instructions in this section to replace modules in a dual-redundant controller configuration (see Figure 5–2). If you're replacing modules in a single controller configuration, see "Replacing Modules in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–2.

Figure 5–2 Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration



CXO6189A

The following sections cover procedures for replacing both the controller and cache module, replacing the controller, and replacing the cache module.

Note the following before starting the replacement procedures:

- The new controller's hardware must be compatible with the functioning controller's hardware. See the product-specific release notes that accompanied the software release for information regarding hardware compatibility.
- The software versions and patch levels must be the same on both controllers.
- The new cache module must contain the same memory configuration as the module it's replacing.

Replacing a Controller and Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps in “Removing a Controller and Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” and “Installing a Controller and its Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” to replace a controller and its cache module.

Removing a Controller and Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to remove a controller and its cache module.

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller’s maintenance port. The controller to which you’re connected is “this controller”; the controller that you’re removing is the “other controller.”
2. Disable failover with the following command:
   SET NOFAILOVER
3. Remove the ESD cover and program card from the “other controller.” Save them for the replacement controller.
4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:
   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller’s cache battery? Y/N
   ```

5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

6. Enter option 1, *Replace or remove a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Replace or Remove Options menu:

   ```
   Replace or remove Options:
    1. Other controller and cache module
    2. Other controller module
    3. Other cache module
    4. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
   ```

7. Enter option 1, *Other controller and cache module*, from the Replace or Remove Options menu. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
                    Slot Designations
                       (front view)

          [  ---   EMU  ---  ][  ---   PVA  ---  ]
          [  --------   Controller A  -------    ]
          [  --------   Controller B  -------    ]
          [  Cache Module A  ][  Cache Module B  ]

Remove both the slot A [or B] controller and cache module? Y/N
```

8. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
Remove the slot A [or B] controller (the one without a
blinking green LED) within 4 minutes.
```

Caution The device ports must quiesce before removing the controller. Failure to allow the ports to quiesce may result in data loss. Quiescing may take several minutes.

ESD can easily damage a controller or a cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Note A countdown timer allows a total of four minutes to remove the controller and cache module. If you exceed four minutes, "this controller" will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

9. Remove the Hub cables from the "other controller."

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

10. Disengage both retaining levers and remove the “other controller,” then place the controller into an antistatic bag or onto a grounded antistatic mat.

    Once the controller is removed, FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Remove the slot A [or B] cache module within x minutes, xx
    seconds.
    ```

11. Disengage both retaining levers and partially remove the “other controller’s” cache module—about half way.
12. Disable the ECB by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before disconnecting the ECB cable from the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in cache module damage.

13. Disconnect the ECB cable from the “other controller’s” cache module, remove the cache module, and place it onto a grounded antistatic mat or into an antistatic bag.

    Once the cache module is removed, FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Restarting all device ports. Please wait...
      Device Port 1 restarted.
      Device Port 2 restarted.
      Device Port 3 restarted.
      Device Port 4 restarted.
      Device Port 5 restarted.
      Device Port 6 restarted.
    Do you have a replacement controller and cache module? Y/N
    ```

14. Enter N(o) if you don’t have a replacement controller and cache module; disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller’s maintenance port.

    Enter Y(es) if you have a replacement controller and cache module and want to install it now. FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Insert both the slot A [or B] controller and cache module? Y/N
    ```

Note If you entered Y(es) go to step 6 on page 5–13.

Installing a Controller and its Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to install a controller and its cache module.

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller"; the controller whose cache module you're installing is the "other controller."
2. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

3. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

4. Enter option 2, *Install a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Install Options menu:

   ```
   Install Options:
    1. Other controller and cache module
    2. Other controller module
    3. Other cache module
    4. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
   ```

5. Enter option 1, *Other controller and cache module*, from the Install Options menu. FRUTIL display the following:

   ```
   Insert both the slot A [or B] controller and cache module? Y/N
   ```

6. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
  .
  .
  .
Perform the following steps:
 1. Turn off the battery for the new cache module by pressing
    the battery's shut off button for five seconds
 2. Connect the battery to the new cache module.
 3. Insert the new cache module in slot A [or B] within 4
    minutes.
```

Note A countdown timer allows a total of four minutes to install the cache module and controller. If you exceed four minutes, "this controller" will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

Caution ESD can easily damage a controller or a cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

7. Disable the ECB to which you're connecting the new cache module by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before connecting the ECB cable to the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in ECB damage.

Make sure you align the cache module and controller in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the modules correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

8. Connect the ECB cable to the new cache module.

9. Insert the new cache module into its slot and engage its retaining levers. FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Insert the controller module, without its program card, in
   slot A [or B] within x minutes, xx seconds.
   ```

10. Ensure that the program card is not in the replacement controller and insert the new controller into its slot. Engage its retaining levers.

Note In mirrored mode, FRUTIL will initialize the mirrored portion of the new cache module, check for old data on the cache module, and then restart all device ports. After the device ports have been restarted, FRUTIL will test the cache module and the ECB. After the test completes, the device ports will quiesce and a mirror copy of the cache module data will be created on the newly installed cache module.

FRUTIL displays the following:

```
The configuration has two controllers.
To restart the other controller:
 1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
 2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
    program card on the slot A [or B] controller, then release
    the reset button.
    The controller will restart.

Field Replacement Utility terminated.
```

Note If the controller you're installing was previously used in another subsystem, it will need to be purged of the controller's old configuration (see "CONFIGURATION RESET," page B–45).

---

11. Wait for FRUTIL to terminate, then connect the hub cables to the new controller.

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

---

12. To allow the "other controller" to restart, enter the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

13. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the new controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.
14. See “Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller,” page 2–3, to configure the controller.
15. Enable failover, and re-establish the dual-redundant controller configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem’s configuration from “this controller” to the new controller.
16. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller’s maintenance port.

Replacing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps in “Removing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” and “Installing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” to replace a controller.

Removing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to remove a controller:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller’s maintenance port. The controller to which you’re connected is “this controller”; the controller that you’re removing is the “other controller.”
2. Disable failover and take the controllers out of their dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET NOFAILOVER
3. Remove the program card’s ESD cover and program card. Save them for the replacement controller.
4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

    RUN FRUTIL

    FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Do you intend to replace this controller’s cache battery? Y/N
    ```

5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

```
FRUTIL Main Menu:
 1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
 2. Install a controller or cache module
 3. Replace a PVA module
 4. Replace an I/O module
 5. Exit
Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
```

6. Enter option 1, *Replace or remove a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Replace or Remove Options menu:

```
Replace or remove Options:
 1. Other controller and cache module
 2. Other controller module
 3. Other cache module
 4. Exit
Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
```

7. Enter option 2, *Other controller module*, from the Replace or Remove Options menu. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
                    Slot Designations
                       (front view)

        [  ---   EMU  ---  ][  ---   PVA  ---  ]
        [  --------   Controller A  -------    ]
        [  --------   Controller B  -------    ]
        [  Cache Module A  ][  Cache Module B  ]

Remove the slot A [or B] controller? Y/N
```

8. Type Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
Remove the slot A [or B] controller (the one without a
blinking green LED) within 2 minutes.
```

Caution The device ports must quiesce before removing the controller. Failure to allow the ports to quiesce may result in data loss. Quiescing may take several minutes.

ESD can easily damage a controller. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Note A countdown timer allows a total of two minutes to remove the controller. If you exceed two minutes, "this controller" will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

9. Remove the hub cables from the "other controller."

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

10. Disengage both retaining levers, remove the "other controller," and place this controller into an antistatic bag or onto a grounded antistatic mat.

    Once the controller is removed, FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Restarting all device ports. Please wait...
  Device Port 1 restarted.
  Device Port 2 restarted.
  Device Port 3 restarted.
  Device Port 4 restarted.
  Device Port 5 restarted.
  Device Port 6 restarted.
Do you have a replacement controller? Y/N
```

11. Enter N(o) if you don't have a replacement controller and disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

    Enter Y(es) if you have a replacement controller and want to install it now. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Insert the slot A [or B] controller? Y/N
```

Note If you entered Y(es) go to step 6 on page 5–19.

Installing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to install a controller:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller"; the controller that you're installing is the "other controller."
2. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

3. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

4. Enter option 2, *Install a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Install Options menu:

   ```
   Install Options:
    1. Other controller and cache module
    2. Other controller module
    3. Other cache module
    4. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
   ```

5. Enter option 2, *Other controller module*, from the Install Options menu. FRUTIL display the following:

   ```
   Insert the slot A [or B] controller? Y/N
   ```

6. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
  .
  .
  .
Insert the controller module, without its program card, in
slot A [or B] within x minutes, xx seconds.
```

Note A countdown timer allows a total of two minutes to install the controller. If you exceed two minutes, “this controller” will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

Caution ESD can easily damage a controller. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Make sure you align the controller in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the controller correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

---

7. Ensure that the program card is not in the new controller and insert the new controller into its slot. Engage its retaining levers.

   FRUTIL will display the following:

```
The configuration has two controllers.
To restart the other controller:
 1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
 2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
    program card on the slot A [or B] controller, then release
    the reset button.
    The controller will restart.

Field Replacement Utility terminated.
```

Note If the controller you're installing was previously used in another subsystem, it will need to be purged of the controller's old configuration (see "CONFIGURATION RESET," page B–45).

8. Wait for FRUTIL to terminate and connect the hub cables to the new controller.

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

9. To allow the "other controller" to restart, type the following command:

   RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

10. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the new controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.
11. See "Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller," page 2–3, to configure the controller.
12. Enable failover, and re-establish the dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the new controller.

13. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Replacing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps in “Removing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” and “Installing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration” to replace a cache module.

Note The new cache module must contain the same memory configuration as the cache module it’s replacing.

Removing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to remove a cache module:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller’s maintenance port. The controller to which you’re connected is “this controller”; the controller that you’re removing is the “other controller.”
2. Disable failover and take the controllers out of their dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

   SET NOFAILOVER
3. Remove the ESD cover and program card from the “other controller.” Save them for reinstallation later.
4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller’s cache battery? Y/N
   ```
5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

6. Enter option 1, *Replace or remove a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Replace or Remove Options menu:

```
Replace or remove Options:
 1. Other controller and cache module
 2. Other controller module
 3. Other cache module
 4. Exit
Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
```

7. Enter option 3, *Other cache module*, from the Replace or Remove Options menu. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
                  Slot Designations
                     (front view)
        [  ---   EMU  ---  ][  ---   PVA  ---  ]
        [  --------   Controller A  -------    ]
        [  --------   Controller B  -------    ]
        [  Cache Module A  ][  Cache Module B  ]

Remove the slot A [or B] cache module? Y/N
```

8. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
Remove the slot A [or B] cache module within 2 minutes. Then
disconnect the external battery from the cache module.
```

Caution The device ports must quiesce before removing the cache module. Failure to allow the ports to quiesce may result in data loss. Quiescing may take several minutes.

ESD can easily damage the cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Note A countdown timer allows a total of two minutes to remove the cache module. If you exceed two minutes, “this controller” will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

9. Disengage both retaining levers and partially remove the “other controller’s” cache module—about half way.
10. Disable the ECB by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before disconnecting the ECB cable from the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in cache module damage.

11. Disconnect the ECB cable from the “other controller’s” cache module, remove the cache module, and place it onto a grounded antistatic mat or into an antistatic bag.

    Once the cache module is removed, FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Restarting all device ports. Please wait...
  Device Port 1 restarted.
  Device Port 2 restarted.
  Device Port 3 restarted.
  Device Port 4 restarted.
  Device Port 5 restarted.
  Device Port 6 restarted.
Do you have a replacement cache module? Y/N
```

12. Enter N(o) if you don’t have a replacement cache module, and disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller’s maintenance port.

    Enter Y(es) if you have a replacement cache module and want to install it now. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Insert the slot A [or B] cache module? Y/N
```

Note If you entered Y(es) go to step 6 on page 5–25.

Installing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to install a cache module:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the operational controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller"; the controller that you're installing is the "other controller."
2. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

3. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

4. Enter option 2, *Install a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Install Options menu:

   ```
   Install Options:
    1. Other controller and cache module
    2. Other controller module
    3. Other cache module
    4. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
   ```

5. Enter option 3, *Other cache module*, from the Install Options menu. FRUTIL display the following:

   ```
   Insert the slot A [or B] cache module? Y/N
   ```

6. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
  .
  .
  .
Perform the following steps:
 1. Turn off the battery for the new cache module by pressing
    the battery's shut off button for five seconds
 2. Connect the battery to the new cache module.
 3. Insert the new cache module in slot A [or B] within 2
    minutes.
```

Note A countdown timer allows a total of two minutes to install the cache module. If you exceed two minutes, "this controller" will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Make sure you align the cache module in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the cache module correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

7. Disable the ECB to which you're connecting the new cache module by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before connecting the ECB cable to the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in ECB damage.

8. Connect the ECB cable to the new cache module.

9. Insert the new cache module into its slot and engage its retaining levers.

Note In mirrored mode, FRUTIL will initialize the mirrored portion of the new cache module, check for old data on the cache module, and then restart all device ports. After the device ports have been restarted, FRUTIL will test the cache module and the ECB. After the test completes, the device ports will quiesce and a mirror copy of the cache module data will be created on the newly installed cache module.

FRUTIL displays the following:

```
The configuration has two controllers.
To restart the other controller:
 1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
 2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
    program card on the slot A [or B] controller, then
    release the reset button.
    The controller will restart.

Field Replacement Utility terminated.
```

10. To allow the "other controller" to restart, type the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

11. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.

12. Enable failover, and re-establish the dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

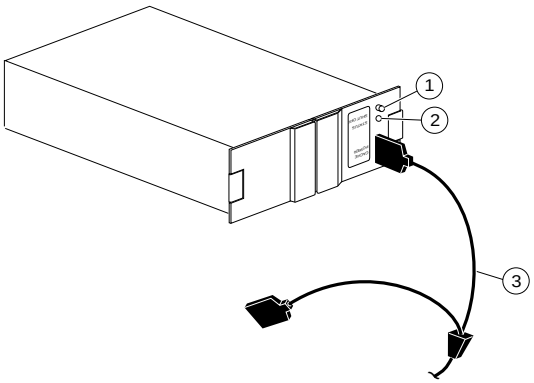
    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the "other controller."

13. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block

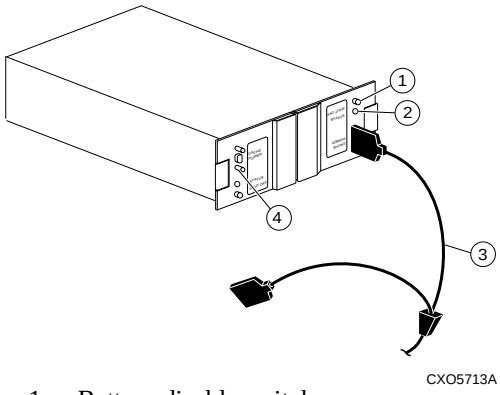
The ECB SBB can be replaced with cabinet power on or off. A single-battery ECB SBB is shown in Figure 5–3 and a dual-battery ECB SBB is shown in Figure 5–4.

Figure 5–3 Single-Battery ECB SSB Configuration



1 Battery disable switch
2 Status LED
3 ECB Y cable

Figure 5–4 Dual-battery ECB SBB Configuration



1 Battery disable switch
2 Status LED
3 ECB Y cable
4 Faceplate and controls for second battery

Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block With Cabinet Powered On

Use the following steps to replace the ECB SSB with the cabinet powered on:

Note The procedure for a dual-redundant controller configuration assumes that a single ECB SBB with a dual battery is installed and an empty slot is available for the replacement ECB SBB. If an empty slot is not available, place the new ECB SBB on the top of the enclosure. After the old ECB SBB has been removed, carefully insert the new ECB SBB into the empty slot.

---

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller with the ECB SBB that you intend to replace. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller."
2. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

3. Enter Y(es). FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   If the batteries were replaced while the cabinet was powered
   down, press return.
   Otherwise follow this procedure:
   WARNING: Ensure that at least one battery is connected to the
            Y cable at all times during this procedure.
   1. Connect the new battery to the unused end of the 'Y' cable
      attached to cache A [or B].
   2. Disconnect the old battery.  Do not wait for the new
      battery's status light to turn solid green.
   3. Press return.
   ```

Caution The ECB cable has a 12-volt and a 5-volt pin. Improper handling or misalignment when connecting or disconnecting could cause these pins to contact ground, resulting in cache module damage.

---

4. Insert the new ECB SBB into the empty battery slot.

Note If an empty slot is not available, place the new ECB SBB on the top of the enclosure.

---

5. Connect the new battery to the unused end of the Y cable attached to cache A [or B]
6. Disconnect the old battery. Do not wait for the new battery's status light to turn solid green.
7. Press return.

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Updating this battery's expiration date and deep discharge
   history.
   Field Replacement Utility terminated.
   ```

8. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.
9. If this is a dual-redundant controller configuration and you installed a dual-battery ECB SBB and you want to connect the other cache module to the new ECB SBB, connect the PC or terminal to the other controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're now connected is "this controller."
10. Repeat steps 2 through 8.
11. Remove the old ECB SBB.

Note If an empty slot was not available, and the new ECB SBB was placed on the top of the enclosure, carefully insert it now into the empty slot.

Replacing the External Cache Battery Storage Building Block With Cabinet Powered Off

Use the following steps to replace the ECB SSB with the cabinet powered off:

1. If the controller and cache module are not operating, go to step 4. Otherwise, go to the next step.
2. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller."
3. Shut down the controllers. In single-controller configurations, shut down "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the "other controller" first, then shut down "this controller" with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.

4. Turn off the power to the subsystem.
5. Insert the new ECB SBB into its slot.

Caution The ECB cable has a 12-volt and a 5-volt pin. Improper handling or misalignment when connecting or disconnecting could cause these pins to contact ground, resulting in cache module damage.

6. Connect the open end of the ECB Y cable to the new ECB.
7. Restore power to the subsystem. The controller automatically restarts.
8. Disconnect the ECB cable from the old ECB.
9. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

10. Type Y(es). FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    If the batteries were replaced while the cabinet was powered
    down, press return.
    Otherwise follow this procedure:
    WARNING: Ensure that at least one battery is connected to the
             Y cable at all times during this procedure.
    1. Connect the new battery to the unused end of the 'Y' cable
       attached to cache A [or B].
    2. Disconnect the old battery.  Do not wait for the new
       battery's status light to turn solid green.
    3. Press return.
    ```

11. Press return.

    FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Updating this battery's expiration date and deep discharge
    history.
    Field Replacement Utility terminated.
    ```

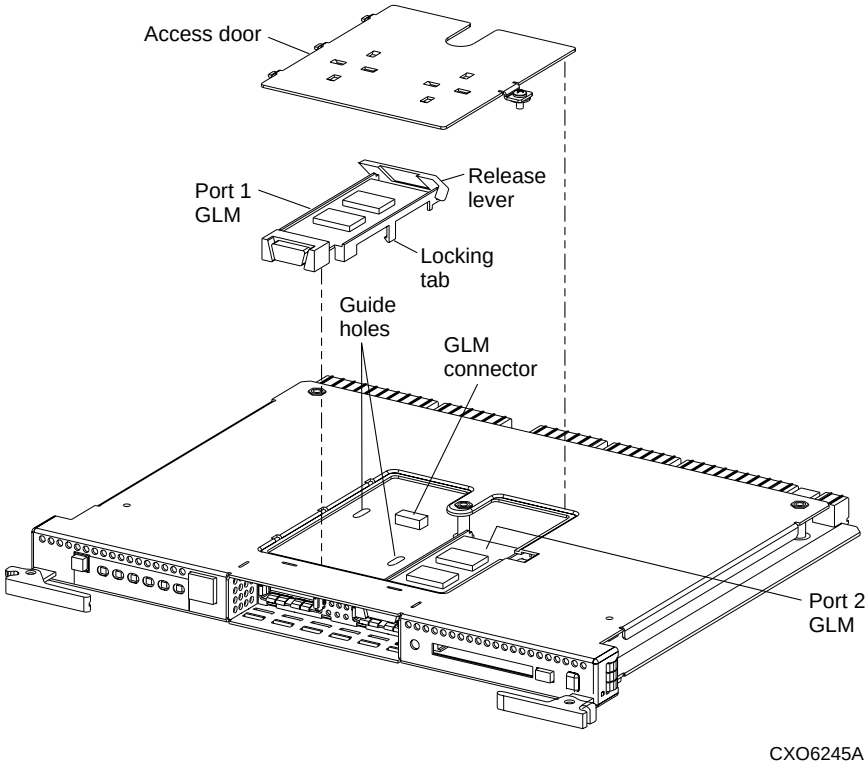
12. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

13. In a dual-redundant controller configuration and if the ECB was replaced for both cache modules, connect the PC or terminal to the other controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're now connected is "this controller."
14. Repeat steps 9 through 12.
15. Remove the old ECB SBB.

Replacing a GLM

Use the following steps in "Removing a GLM" and "Installing a GLM" to replace a GLM in a controller. Figure 5–5 shows the location and orientation of the GLMs.

Figure 5–5 Location of GLMs in Controller



Removing a GLM

Use the following steps to remove a GLM:

1. Remove the controller using either the steps in "Removing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–3, or "Removing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration," page 5–15.
2. Remove the screw that secures the access door on the top of the controller.
3. Remove the access door, and set it aside.

Caution ESD can easily damage a GLM. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

4. Disengage the GLM's locking tabs that protrude through the guide holes on the controller.
5. Use your index finger and thumb to operate the release lever on the exposed end of the GLM. Press the lower end of the release lever with your index finger while pulling the raised end of the release lever up with your thumb.
6. Remove the GLM.

Installing a GLM

Use the following steps to remove a GLM:

Note Before inserting the new GLM, note the holes in the board where the GLM will reside.

Caution ESD can easily damage a GLM. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

1. Insert the new GLM by first placing the cable connection end of the GLM through the opening on the front of the controller.
2. Line up the locking tab on the bottom of the replacement GLM with the holes in the board, and press firmly to seat the GLM.
3. Press the release lever firmly into place to secure the GLM.
4. Install the access door on the top of the controller and secure it with the screw.
5. Install the controller using either the steps in "Installing the Controller in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–4, or "Installing a Controller in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration," page 5–18.

Replacing a PVA Module

Use the following instructions in this section to replace a PVA module in either (1) the master enclosure or (2) the first expansion or second expansion enclosure.

Note This procedure is not applicable for the M1 shelf.

The HSG80 controller can support up to three enclosures: the master enclosure, the first expansion enclosure, and the second expansion enclosure.

A PVA can be replaced in either a single or a dual-redundant controller configuration using this procedure.

Replacing the PVA in the Master Enclosure (ID 0)

Use the following steps to replace the PVA in the master enclosure:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, disable failover with the following command:

   SET NOFAILOVER

3. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, remove the program card's ESD cover and program card from the other controller. Save them for reinstallation.
4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

6. Enter option 3, *Replace a PVA module* from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the PVA Replacement menu:

```
FRUTIL PVA Replacement Menu:
 1. Master Enclosure (ID 0)
 2. First Expansion Enclosure (ID 2)
 3. Second Expansion Enclosure (ID 3)
 4. Exit
Enter Choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
```

Note The HSG80 controller can support up to three enclosures. The FRUTIL PVA Replacement Menu has options for three enclosures regardless of how many enclosures are connected.

7. Enter option 1, *Master Enclosure (ID 0)*, from the FRUTIL PVA Replacement Menu. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Do you have a replacement PVA module? Y/N
```

8. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Ensure the replacement PVA's address is set to zero.
Press return to quiesce device port activity.
```

9. Set the replacement PVA's address to zero.
10. Press return and wait for FRUTIL to quiesce the device ports. This may take several minutes. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
All device ports quiesced.
Replace the PVA in the master cabinet.
```

11. Remove the old PVA and install the new PVA. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Press return to resume device port activity.
```

12. Press return to resume device port activity (this may take several minutes). When all port activity has restarted, FRUTIL displays the following:

```
PVA replacement complete.
```

In a dual-redundant configuration, FRUTIL also displays:

```
The configuration has two controllers.
To restart the other controller:
 1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
 2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
    program card on the slot A [or B] controller, then
    release the reset button.
    The controller will restart.

Field Replacement Utility terminated.
```

13. To allow the "other controller" to restart, type the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

14. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.

15. Enable failover and re-establish the dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the "other controller."

16. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Replacing the PVA in the First Expansion (ID 2) or Second Expansion (ID 3) Enclosure

Use the following steps to replace the PVA in the first expansion (ID 2) or second expansion (ID 3) enclosure:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, disable failover with the following command:

   SET NOFAILOVER

3. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, remove the program card's ESD cover and program card from the "other controller." Save them for reinstallation.

4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:
   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

6. Enter option 3, *Replace a PVA module* from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the PVA Replacement menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL PVA Replacement Menu:
    1. Master Enclosure (ID 0)
    2. First Expansion Enclosure (ID 2)
    3. Second Expansion Enclosure (ID 3)
    4. Exit
   Enter Choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
   ```

   Note The HSG80 controller can support up to three enclosures. The FRUTIL PVA Replacement menu has options for three enclosures regardless of how many enclosures are connected.

7. Enter option 2, *First Expansion Enclosure (ID 2)*, to replace the PVA in the first expansion enclosure or option 3, *Second Expansion Enclosure (ID 3)* to replace the PVA in the second expansion enclosure from the FRUTIL PVA Replacement menu. FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you have a replacement PVA module? Y/N
   ```

8. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Ensure the replacement PVA's address is set to 2 [or 3].
   Press return to quiesce device port activity.
   ```

9. Set the replacement PVA's address to 2 for the first expansion enclosure or to 3 for the second expansion enclosure.

10. Press return and wait for FRUTIL to quiesce the device ports. This may take several minutes. FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    All device ports quiesced.
    Using the power switch, power down expansion cabinet #2 [or
    #3] and replace the PVA.
    ```

11. Power down the appropriate expansion cabinet.
12. Remove the old PVA and install the new PVA.
13. Power on the appropriate expansion cabinet. FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    Press return to resume device port activity.
    ```

14. Press return to resume device port activity. This may take several minutes. When all port activity has restarted, FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    PVA replacement complete.
    ```

    In a dual-redundant configuration, FRUTIL also displays:

    ```
    The configuration has two controllers.
    To restart the other controller:
     1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
     2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
        program card on the slot B controller, then release the
        reset button.
        The controller will restart.

    Field Replacement Utility terminated.
    ```

15. To allow the "other controller" to restart, type the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

16. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the new controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.
17. Enable failover and re-establish the dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the "other controller."

18. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

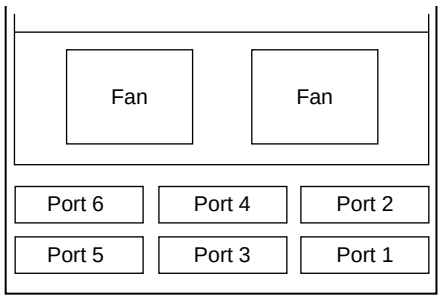
Replacing an I/O Module

Figure 5–6 shows a rear view of the BA370 enclosure and the location of the six I/O modules (also referred to as ports). Use the following steps to replace an I/O module:

Note This procedure is not applicable for the M1 shelf.

An I/O module can be replaced in either a single-controller or a dual-redundant controller configuration using this procedure.

Figure 5–6 I/O Module Locations in a BA370 Enclosure



Note The controller can function with one failed I/O module.

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, disable failover with the following command:

   SET NOFAILOVER
3. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, remove the program card's ESD cover and program card from the other controller. Save them for reinstallation.
4. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

5. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

```
FRUTIL Main Menu:
 1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
 2. Install a controller or cache module
 3. Replace a PVA module
 4. Replace an I/O module
 5. Exit
Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
```

Note The HSG80 controller can support up to three enclosures. The I/O Module status can show the following states: Single Ended – OK, Differential – OK, Termination only – OK, Missing or bad, Unknown or bad, or N/A (cabinet is not present).

6. Enter option 4, *Replace an I/O module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. In the following example, cabinet 0, port 5 is missing or bad. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
I/O Module Status:
         Cabinet 0               Cabinet 2               Cabinet 3
         --------------------    --------------------    --------------------
Port 1:  Single Ended - OK       N/A                     N/A
Port 2:  Single Ended - OK       N/A                     N/A
Port 3:  Single Ended - OK       N/A                     N/A
Port 4:  Single Ended - OK       N/A                     N/A
Port 5:  Missing or bad          N/A                     N/A
Port 6:  Single Ended - OK       N/A                     N/A
Is the replacement I/O module available? Y/N
```

7. Enter Y(es) and press return.
8. Wait for FRUTIL to quiesce the device ports. After the ports have been quiesced (this may take several minutes), FRUTIL displays the following:

```
All device ports quiesced.
```

Caution If you remove the incorrect module, the controller will crash.

9. Disconnect the cables (there may be one or two) from the appropriate I/O module.
10. Remove the failed I/O module.

11. Install a new I/O module.
12. Connect the cables (there may be one or two) to the I/O module.
13. Press return to resume device port activity. When all port activity has restarted, FRUTIL displays the following:

    ```
    I/O module replacement complete.
    ```

    In a dual-redundant configuration, FRUTIL also displays:

    ```
    The configuration has two controllers.
    To restart the other controller:
     1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
     2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
        program card on the slot A [or B] controller, then
        release the reset button.
        The controller will restart.

    Field Replacement Utility terminated.
    ```

14. To allow the "other controller" to restart, type the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

15. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the new controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.
16. Enable failover and re-establish the dual-redundant configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the "other controller."

17. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Replacing DIMMs

Use the following steps in "Removing DIMMs" and "Installing DIMMs" to replace DIMMs in a cache module. The cache module may be configured as shown in Figure 5–7 and Table 5–1.

Figure 5–7 Cache-Module Memory Configurations

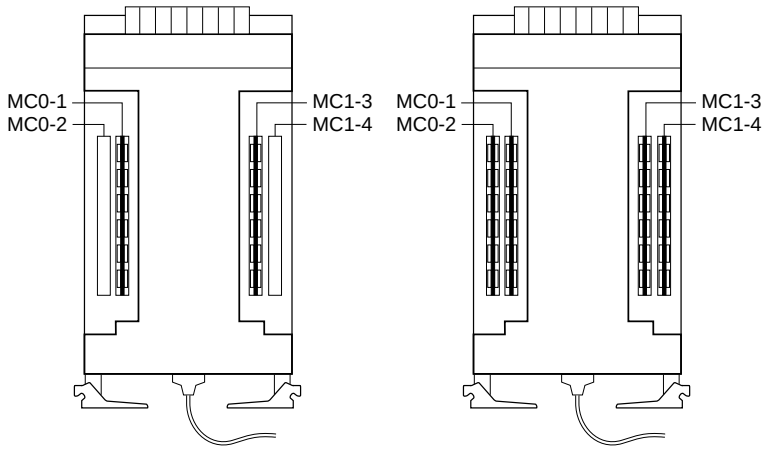


Table 5–1 Cache Module Memory Configurations

Memory	DIMMs	Quantity	Location
64 MB	32 MB	2	MC0-1 and MC1-3
128 MB	32 MB	4	MC0-1, MC0-2, MC1-3, and MC1-4
256 MB	128 MB	2	MC0-1 and MC1-3
512 MB	128 MB	4	MC0-1, MC0-2, MC1-3, and MC1-4

Note If a DIMM fails, note which DIMM you need to replace based on the diagram that displays on the console.

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module or a DIMM. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

Removing DIMMs

Use the following steps to remove a DIMM from a cache module:

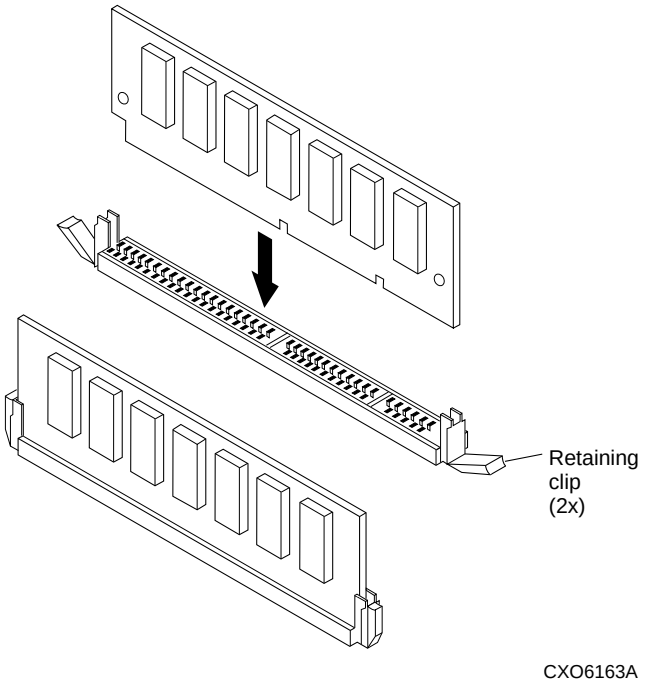
1. Remove the cache module using the steps in either “Removing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration,” page 5–6, or “Removing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration,” page 5–21.
2. Press down on the DIMM retaining levers at either end of the DIMM you want to remove.
3. Grasp the DIMM and gently remove it from the DIMM slot.

Installing DIMMs

Use the following steps to install a DIMM in a cache module:

1. Insert the DIMM straight into the socket and ensure that the notches in the DIMM align with the tabs in the socket (see Figure 5–8).

Figure 5–8 Installing a DIMM



2. Press the DIMM gently until it's seated in the socket.
3. Double-check to ensure both ends of the DIMM are firmly seated in the slot and both retaining clips engage the DIMM.
4. Install the cache module using the steps in either "Installing the Cache Module in a Single Controller Configuration," page 5–7, or "Installing a Cache Module in a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration," page 5–24.

Replacing a Fibre Cable or Hub

Use the following steps in “Remove a Fibre Cable or Hub” and “Install a Fibre Cable or Hub” to replace a cable connected to either side of your hub or to replace the hub itself.

Remove a Fibre Cable or Hub

Use the following steps to remove a cable connected to either side of your hub or to remove the hub itself:

1. Shut down the host system.
2. Shut down the controllers. In single-controller configurations, shut down “this controller.” In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the “other controller” first, then shut down “this controller” with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.
3. If you are replacing a cable, unplug the failed cable at each end. If you are replacing a hub, unplug all of the cables connected to the hub.

Install a Fibre Cable or Hub

Use the following steps to install a cable connected to either side of your hub or to install the hub itself:

1. If you are replacing a cable, plug the replacement cable into the ports that the removed cable was plugged into.

   If you are replacing a hub, plug all of the cables that were unplugged from the removed hub into the replacement hub.
2. Push both reset buttons to restart the controllers.

   The controllers automatically restart. Your subsystem is now ready for operation.

Replacing a PCMCIA Card

Use the following steps to replace a PCMCIA (program) card:

Caution The new PCMCIA card must have the same software version as the PCMCIA card being replaced. See "Installing a New Program Card," page 6–2, for more information.

1. From a host console, stop all host activity and dismount the logical units in the subsystem.
2. Connect a maintenance PC or terminal to one of the controllers' maintenance port in your subsystem.
3. Shut down the controllers. In single-controller configurations, shut down "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the "other controller" first, then shut down "this controller" with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.
4. Remove the ESD program card cover on "this controller."
5. Press and hold the reset button while ejecting the program card from "this controller" by pressing the program-card eject button (see Figure 1–3 on page 1–8 for location).
6. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the new program card; "this controller" automatically restarts. The controller is ready to handle I/O when the CLI is responsive.
7. Replace the ESD program card cover on "this controller."

   The controller restarts. Your subsystem is now ready for operation.
8. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, repeat steps 4 through 7 for the "other controller."

Replacing a Failed Storageset Member

If a disk drive fails in a RAIDset or mirrorset, the controller automatically places it into the failedset. If the spareset contains a replacement drive that satisfies the storageset's replacement policy, the controller automatically replaces the failed member with the replacement drive. If the spareset is empty or doesn't contain a satisfactory drive, the controller simply "reduces" the storageset so that it can operate without one of its members.

The storageset remains in this reduced state until the spareset contains a satisfactory drive. When the controller senses a satisfactory drive in the spareset, it automatically places the drive into the storageset and restores the storageset to normal. Therefore, replacing a failed storageset member means putting a satisfactory drive into the spareset.

Removing a Failed RAIDset or Mirrorset Member

Use the following steps to remove a failed RAIDset or mirrorset member:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the maintenance port of the controller that accesses the reduced RAIDset or mirrorset.
2. Enable AUTOSPARE with the following command:

   SET FAILEDSET AUTOSPARE

   With AUTOSPARE enabled, any new disk drive that you insert into the PTL location of a failed disk drive is automatically initialized and placed into the spareset.
3. Remove the failed disk drive.

Installing the New Member

Use the following steps to install a new member:

1. Insert a new disk drive that satisfies the replacement policy of the reduced storageset into the PTL location of the failed disk drive.

Note The controller automatically initializes the new disk drive and places it into the spareset. As soon as it becomes a member of the spareset, the controller automatically uses the new disk drive to restore the reduced RAIDset or mirrorset. If initialization fails, the new disk drive is placed into the failedset.

Shutting Down the Subsystem

Use the following steps to shut down a subsystem:

1. From a host console, stop all host activity and dismount the logical units in the subsystem.
2. Connect a maintenance PC or terminal to the maintenance port of one of the controllers in your subsystem.
3. Shut down the controllers. In single controller configurations, you only need to shut down "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the "other controller" first, then shut down "this controller" with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.
4. Turn off the power to the subsystem.

Caution If you are shutting down the controller for longer than one day, perform the steps in "Disabling and Enabling the External Cache Batteries," page 5–48, to prevent the write-back cache batteries from discharging.

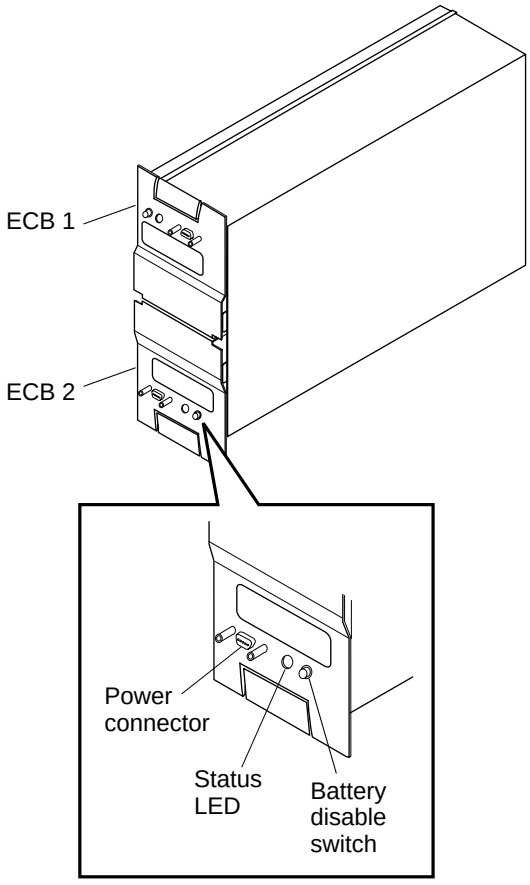
Disabling and Enabling the External Cache Batteries

Use the following steps to disable the ECBs:

Note The ECB SBB may contain one or two batteries, depending on the configuration.

1. Press the battery-disable switch located on each battery within the ECB SBB. The switch is the small button labeled SHUT OFF next to the status LED (see Figure 5–9). Hold each switch in for approximately five seconds. The ECB's status LED will flash once and then shut off. Make sure you perform this procedure on both ECB 1 and ECB 2, if appropriate.

Figure 5–9 Battery Disable Switch



2. The batteries are no longer powering the cache module.

Note To return to normal operation, apply power to the storage subsystem. The cache battery will be enabled when the subsystem is powered on.

Restarting the Subsystem

Use the following steps to restart a subsystem:

1. Plug in the subsystem's power cord, if it is not already plugged in.
2. Turn on the subsystem. The controllers automatically restart and the ECBs automatically re-enable themselves to provide backup power to the cache modules.

CHAPTER 6

Upgrading the Subsystem

This chapter provides instructions for upgrading the controller software, installing software patches, upgrading firmware on a device, upgrading from a single-controller configuration to a dual-redundant controller configuration, and upgrading cache memory.

Electrostatic Discharge

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a common problem and may cause data loss, system down time, and other problems. The most common source of static electricity is the movement of people in contact with carpets and clothing. Low humidity also increases the amount of static electricity. You must discharge all static electricity prior to touching electronic equipment. Follow the precautions in the “Electrostatic Discharge Precautions” given in the Preface whenever you are installing any component.

Upgrading Controller Software

You can upgrade the controller's software two ways:

- Install a new program card that contains the new software.
- Download a new software image, and use the menu-driven Code Load/Code Patch (CLCP) utility to write it onto the existing program card. You may also use this utility to install, delete, and list patches to the controller software.

Installing a New Program Card

Use the following steps to install a program card that contains the new software. If you're only upgrading the software in a single-controller configuration, disregard references to the "other controller" and read the plural controllers as the singular controller.

To upgrade the software by installing a new program card:

1. From the host console, dismount the storage units in the subsystem.
2. Connect a PC or terminal to one of the controllers' maintenance port.
3. Shut down the controllers. In single-controller configurations, shut down "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the "other controller" first, then shut down "this controller" with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.

Caution Do not change the subsystem's configuration or replace any of its modules until you've completed this procedure to upgrade the controller software.

4. Remove the program card's ESD cover on "this controller."
5. Press and hold the reset button while ejecting the program card from "this controller" by pressing the program card eject button (see Figure 1–3 on page 1-8).

6. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the new program card; “this controller” automatically restarts. The controller is ready to ahndle I/O when the CLI is responsive.
7. Replace the ESD program card cover on “this controller.”
8. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, repeat steps 4 through 7 for teh “other controller.”
9. Mount the storage units on the host.

Downloading New Software

Use the CLCP to download new software to the program card while it’s installed in the controller. Use the following steps to upgrade the software with CLCP:

1. Obtain the new software image file from a customer service representative.

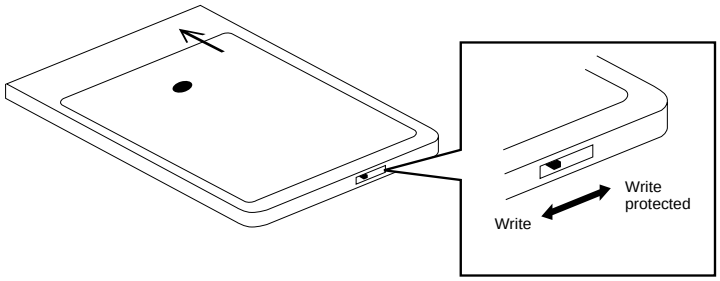
Note The image file can also be loaded either by using StorageWorks Command Console (SWCC) (see the SWCC documentation).

2. Load the image onto a PC or workstation using its file- or network-transfer capabilities.
3. From a host console, quiesce all port activity and dismount the storage units in the subsystem.

Note Do not remove the program card.

4. Remove the ESD cover. If your program card is equipped with a write-protection switch, disable write-protection by sliding the switch to the left, as shown in Figure 6–1.
5. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller’s maintenance port.

Figure 6–1 Location of Write-Protection Switch



6. Start CLCP with the following command:

   RUN CLCP

   CLCP displays the following:

```
Select an option from the following list:
Code Load & Patch local program Main Menu
0: Exit
1: Enter Code LOAD local program
2: Enter Code PATCH local program
3: Enter EMU Code LOAD Utility
Enter option number  (0..3) [0] ?
```

7. Enter option 1, *Enter Code LOAD local program*, from the CLCP Main menu to start the Code LOAD local program. CLCP displays the following:

```
You have selected the Code Load Utility.  This utility is used
to load a new software image into the program card currently
inserted in the controller.

Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort code load.

The code image may be loaded using SCSI Write Buffer commands
through the SCSI Host Port, or using KERMIT through the
maintenance terminal port.
        0: Exit
        1: Use the SCSI Host Port
        2: Use the Maintenance Terminal Port
  Enter option number (0..2) [0] ?
```

Note You can use either the SCSI host port (if your operating sysem supports it) or the maintenance port. To use the SCSI host port, go to step 8. To use the maintenance port, go to step 10.

8. Enter option 1, *Use the SCSI Host Port*, from the menu. CLCP displays the following:

```
WARNING: proceeding with Controller Code Load will overwrite
         the current Controller code image with a new image.
         Do you want to continue (y/n) [n]: ?
```

9. Enter Y(es) and the download starts. When the download is complete, CLCP writes the new image to the program card and restarts the controller. This process takes one to three minutes. Go to step 15.

10. Enter option 2, *Use the Maintenance Terminal Port*, from the menu. CLCP displays the following:

```
Perform the following steps before continuing:
  * get new image file on serial line host computer
  * configure KERMIT with the following parameters:
   terminal speed 19200 baud, eight bit, no parity, 1 stop bit

It will take approximately 35 to 45 minutes to perform the
code load operation.

WARNING: proceeding with Controller Code Load will overwrite
         the current Controller code image with a new image.
         Do you want to continue (y/n) [n]: ?
```

11. Enter Y(es) and CLCP displays:

```
Start KERMIT now...
```

12. Connect the PC to the controller's maintenance port (you'll need the PC-serial port adapter shown in Figure 1–3 on page 1–8).

13. Configure the KERMIT transfer protocol on the PC to 19200 baud, eight bits, no parity, and one stop bit.

14. Use KERMIT to transfer the binary image from the PC to the controller.

    When the download is complete, CLCP automatically writes the new image to the program card and restarts the controller.

15. Verify that the controller is running the new software version with the following command:

    SHOW THIS CONTROLLER

16. If your program card is equipped with a write-protection switch, re-enable write-protection by sliding the switch to the right.

17. Replace the program card's ESD cover.

18. Repeat the procedure to upgrade the other controller in dual-redundant subsystems.

19. Mount the storage units in the subsystem.

Using CLCP to Install, Delete, and List Software Patches

Use CLCP to manage software patches. These small programming changes are placed into the controller's non-volatile memory and become active as soon you restart the controller. There is space for about ten patches, depending upon the size of the patches you're installing.

Keep the following points in mind while installing or deleting patches:

- Patches are associated with specific software versions. CLCP verifies the patch against the currently installed version.
- Patches are sequential: patch one must be entered before patch two, and so on.
- Deleting one patch also deletes all higher-numbered patches. For example, if you delete patch two, you'll automatically delete patches three, four, and so on.
- Controllers in a dual-redundant configuration must have the same patches. You must install patches into each controller separately.

Installing a Software Patch

Use the following steps to install a software patch:

1. Obtain the patch file from a customer service representative or via the Internet at: http://www.storage.digital.com/menusupport.htm.
2. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenace port.
3. From the host console, quiesce all port activity.
4. Start CLCP with the following command:

   RUN CLCP

   CLCP displays the following:

```
Select an option from the following list:
Code Load & Patch local program Main Menu
0: Exit
1: Enter Code LOAD local program
2: Enter Code PATCH local program
3: Enter EMU Code LOAD utility
Enter option number  (0..3) [0] ?
```

5. Enter option 2, *Enter Code PATCH local program*. CLCP displays the following:

```
You have selected the Code Patch local program.  This program
is used to manage software code patches.  Select an option
from the following list:

Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort Code Patch.

Code Patch Main Menu
      0: Exit
      1: Enter a Patch
      2: Delete Patches
      3: List Patches
Enter option number (0..3) [0] ?
```

6. Enter option 1, *Enter a Patch*, to install a patch. CLCP displays the following:

```
This is the Enter a Code Patch option.  The program prompts
you for the patch information, one line at time.  Be careful
to enter the information exactly as it appears on the patch
release. Patches may be installed for any version of software;
however, patches entered for software versions other than
XXXXX are not applied until the matching version of software
is installed.

To enter any patch, you must first install all patches with
lower patch numbers than the patch you are entering, beginning
with patch number 1, for a specific software version. If you
incorrectly enter the patch information, you are given the
option to review the patch one line at a time.

Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort Code Patch.

Do you wish to continue (y/n) [y] ?
```

7. Enter Y(es) and follow the on-screen prompts.
8. After the patch is installed, press the controller's reset button to restart the controller.

Deleting a Software Patch

Use the following steps to delete a software patch:

1. From a host console, quiesce all port activity.
2. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.

3. Start CLCP with the following command:

   RUN CLCP

   CLCP displays the following:

```
Select an option from the following list:
Code Load & Patch local program Main Menu
0: Exit
1: Enter Code LOAD local program
2: Enter Code PATCH local program
3: Enter EMU Code LOAD utility
Enter option number  (0..3) [0] ?
```

4. Enter option 2, *Enter Code PATCH local program*. CLCP displays the following:

```
You have selected the Code Patch local program.  This program
is used to manage software code patches.  Select an option
from the following list:
Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort Code Patch.
Code Patch Main Menu
      0: Exit
      1: Enter a Patch
      2: Delete Patches
      3: List Patches
Enter option number (0..3) [0] ?
```

5. Enter option 2, *Delete Patches*, to delete patches. CLCP displays the following:

```
This is the Delete Patches option.  The program prompts you
for the software version and patch number you wish to delete.
If you select a patch for deletion that is required for
another patch, all dependent patches are also selected for
deletion.  The program lists your deletion selections and asks
if you wish to continue.
Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort Code Patch.
The following patches are currently stored in the patch area:
   Software Version - Patch number(s)
   xxxx               xxxx
Currently, xx% of the patch area is free.
Software Version of patch to delete ?
```

6. Enter the software version of the patch to delete and press return. CLCP displays the following:

```
Patch Number to delete ?
```

7. Enter the patch number to delete and press return. CLCP displays the following:

```
The following patches have been selected for deletion:
   Software Version - Patch #
   xxxx               xxxx
Do you wish to continue (y/n) [n] ?
```

8. Enter Y(es) and the patches are deleted. CLCP displays the following:

```
Code Patch Main Menu
      0: Exit
      1: Enter a Patch
      2: Delete Patches
      3: List Patches
Enter option number (0..3) [0] ?
```

9. Enter option 0, *Exit*.
10. Press the controller's reset button to restart the controller.

Listing Software Patches

Use the following steps to list software patches:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
2. Start CLCP with the following command:

```
RUN CLCP
```

CLCP displays the following:

```
Select an option from the following list:
Code Load & Patch local program Main Menu
0: Exit
1: Enter Code LOAD local program
2: Enter Code PATCH local program
3: Enter EMU Code LOAD utility
Enter option number  (0..3) [0] ?
```

3. Enter option 2, *Enter Code PATCH local program*. CLCP displays the following:

```
You have selected the Code Patch local program.  This program
is used to manage software code patches.  Select an option
from the following list:

Type ^Y or ^C (then RETURN) at any time to abort Code Patch.

Code Patch Main Menu
      0: Exit
      1: Enter a Patch
      2: Delete Patches
      3: List Patches
Enter option number (0..3) [0] ?
```

4. Enter option 3, *List Patches*, to list patches. CLCP displays the following:

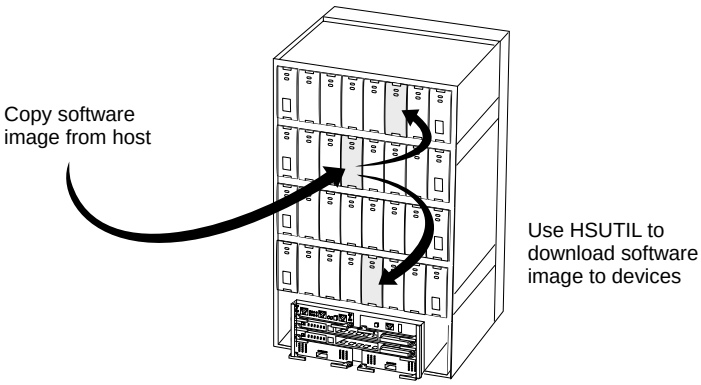
```
The following patches are currently stored in the patch area:
   Software Version - Patch number(s)
   xxxx               xxxx
Code Patch Main Menu
      0: Exit
      1: Enter a Patch
      2: Delete Patches
      3: List Patches
Enter option number (0..3) [0] ?
```

5. Enter option 0, *Exit*.

Upgrading Firmware on a Device

Use HSUTIL to upgrade a device with firmware located in contiguous blocks at a specific LBN on a source disk drive configured as a unit on the same controller. Upgrading firmware on a disk is a two-step process as shown in Figure 6–2: first, copy the new firmware from your host to a disk drive configured as a unit in your subsystem, then use HSUTIL to load the firmware onto the devices in the subsystem.

Figure 6–2 Upgrading Device Firmware



Keep the following points in mind while using HSUTIL to upgrade firmware on a device:

- HSUTIL has been tested with the qualified devices listed in the product-specific release notes that accompanied the software release. You may attempt to install firmware on unsupported devices—HSUTIL won't prevent this—but if the upgrade fails, the device may be rendered unusable and therefore require the manufacturer's attention.
- If the power fails or the bus is reset while HSUTIL is installing the new firmware, the device may become unusable. To minimize this possibility, DIGITAL recommends that you secure a reliable power source and suspend all I/O to the bus that services the device you're upgrading.

- HSUTIL cannot install firmware on devices that have been configured as single disk drive units or as members of a storageset, spareset, or failedset. If you want to install firmware on a device that has previously been configured as a single disk drive, delete the unit number and storageset name associated with it.
- During the installation, the source disk drive is not available for other subsystem operations.
- Some devices may not reflect the new firmware version number when viewed from the "other" controller in a dual-redundant configuration. If you experience this, enter the following CLI command: CLEAR_ERRORS *device-name* UNKNOWN.
- Do not issue any CLI commands that access or inspect devices that are being formatted.

Use the following steps to upgrade firmware with HSUTIL:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the maintenance port on the controller that accesses the device you want to upgrade.
2. Configure a single-disk unit.

Note In the next steps, you'll copy the firmware image to this unit, then use HSUTIL to distribute it to the devices you're upgrading. This unit must be a newly initialized disk with no label or file structure to ensure that the firmware image resides in contiguous blocks starting from LBN 0 or another known LBN. Additionally, write-back caching must be disabled (see "SET unit-number," page B–137).

See "Configuring a Single-Disk Unit," page 3–60, for instructions on configuring a single-disk unit.

3. Copy the firmware image to the single-disk unit that you configured in step 2. The firmware image must begin at a known LBN—usually 0—and must be contiguous. See the documentation that accompanied your host's operating system for instructions on copying firmware images to a disk drive.

Caution You must quiesce the host load before running HSUTIL or damage to the storage device can occur.

---

4. Start HSUTIL with the following command:

   RUN HSUTIL

   HSUTIL displays the following:

```
HSUTIL Main Menu:
 0. Exit
 1. Disk Format
 2. Disk Device Code Load
 3. Tape Device Code Load
 4. Disaster Tolerance Backend Controller Code Load
Enter function number: (0:4) [0]?
```

5. Enter option 2, *Disk Device Code Load*, from the HSUTIL menu.
6. Choose the single-disk unit as the source disk for the download.
7. Enter the starting LBN of the firmware image—usually LBN 0.
8. Enter the product ID of the device you want to upgrade. This ID corresponds to the product information that's reported in the Type column when you issue the SHOW DISK FULL command.

   HSUTIL lists all devices that correspond to the product ID you entered.

9. Enter the disk or tape name of the device you want to upgrade.
10. Confirm or enter the byte count of the firmware image.
11. Confirm the download.
12. Some disk firmware releases require that you reformat the disk after upgrading its firmware. See the documentation that accompanied the firmware to determine if you need to reformat the device.
13. When HSUTIL finishes downloading the firmware, it displays the new firmware revision for the disk drive.

HSUTIL Messages

While you are formatting disk drives or installing new firmware, HSUTIL may produce one or more of the messages in Table 6-1 (many of the self-explanatory messages have been omitted).

Table 6–1 HSUTIL Messages and Inquiries

Message	Description
Insufficient resources	HSUTIL cannot find or perform the operation because internal controller resources are not available.
Unable to change operation mode to maintenance for unit	HSUTIL was unable to put the source single disk drive unit into maintenance mode to enable formatting or code load.
Unit successfully allocated	HSUTIL has allocated the single disk drive unit for code load operation. At this point, the unit and its associated device are not available for other subsystem operations.
Unable to allocate unit	HSUTIL could not allocate the single disk drive unit. An accompanying message explains the reason.
Unit is owned by another sysop	Device cannot be allocated because it is being used by another subsystem function or local program.
Unit is in maintenance mode	Device cannot be formatted or code loaded because it is being used by another subsystem function or local program.
Exclusive access is declared for unit	Another subsystem function has reserved the unit shown.
The other controller has exclusive access declared for unit	The companion controller has locked out this controller from accessing the unit shown.
The RUNSTOP_SWITCH is set to RUN_DISABLED for unit	The RUN\NORUN unit indicator for the unit shown is set to NORUN; the disk cannot spin up.
What BUFFER SIZE, (in BYTES), does the drive require (2048, 4096, 8192) [8192]?	HSUTIL detects that an unsupported device has been selected as the target device and the firmware image requires multiple SCSI Write Buffer commands.You must specify the number of bytes to be sent in each Write Buffer command. The default buffer size is 8192 bytes. A firmware image of 256 K, for example, can be code loaded in 32 Write Buffer commands, each transferring 8192 bytes.
What is the TOTAL SIZE of the code image in BYTES [*device default*]?	HSUTIL detects that an unsupported device has been selected as the target device. You must enter the total number of bytes of data to be sent in the code load operation.

Table 6–1 HSUTIL Messages and Inquiries (Continued)

Message	Description
Does the target device support only the download microcode and save?	HSUTIL detects that an unsupported device has been selected as the target device. You must specify whether the device supports the SCSI Write Buffer command's download and save function.
Should the code be downloaded with a single write buffer command?	HSUTIL detects that an unsupported device has been selected as the target device. You must indicate whether to download the firmware image to the device in one or more contiguous blocks, each corresponding to one SCSI Write Buffer command.

Upgrading to a Dual-Redundant Controller Configuration

Use the following steps to upgrade a single-configuration subsystem to a dual-redundant configuration subsystem. To replace failed components, see Chapter 5, "Replacement Procedures," for more information. Before you complete this procedure, you'll need the following items:

- Controller with the same software version and patch level that's installed on the subsystem's current single controller
- Cache module with the same memory configuration that's installed in the current cache module
- ECB storage building block (SBB) for a dual-redundant configuration
- ECB cable

Installing a New Controller, Cache Module, and ECB

Use the following steps to install a new controller, cache module and ECB:

1. Connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port. The controller to which you're connected is "this controller"; the controller that you're installing is the "other controller."
2. Start FRUTIL with the following command:

   RUN FRUTIL

   FRUTIL displays the following:

   ```
   Do you intend to replace this controller's cache battery? Y/N
   ```

3. Enter N(o). FRUTIL displays the FRUTIL Main menu:

   ```
   FRUTIL Main Menu:
    1. Replace or remove a controller or cache module
    2. Install a controller or cache module
    3. Replace a PVA module
    4. Replace an I/O module
    5. Exit
   Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 ->
   ```

4. Enter option 2, *Install a controller or cache module*, from the FRUTIL Main menu. FRUTIL displays the Install Options menu:

```
Install Options:
 1. Other controller and cache module
 2. Other controller module
 3. Other cache module
 4. Exit
Enter choice: 1, 2, 3, or 4 ->
```

5. Enter option 1, *Other controller and cache module*, from the Install Options menu. FRUTIL display the following:

```
Insert the both the slot B controller and cache module? Y/N
```

6. Enter Y(es) and press return. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Quiescing all device ports.  Please wait...
  Device Port 1 quiesced.
  Device Port 2 quiesced.
  Device Port 3 quiesced.
  Device Port 4 quiesced.
  Device Port 5 quiesced.
  Device Port 6 quiesced.
 All device ports quiesced.
  .
  .
  .
Perform the following steps:
 1. Turn off the battery for the new cache module by pressing
    the battery's shut off button for five seconds.
 2. Connect the battery to the new cache module.
 3. Insert the new cache module in slot B within 4 minutes.
```

Note A countdown timer allows a total of four minutes to install the controller and cache module. If you exceed four minutes, "this controller" will exit FRUTIL and resume operations.

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module or controller. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

7. Insert the new ECB SBB into an empty slot.

8. Disable the ECB to which you're connecting the new cache module by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before connecting the ECB cable to the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in the ECB being damaged.

Make sure you align the cache module and controller in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the modules correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

9. Connect the ECB cable to the new cache module.
10. Insert the new cache module into its slot and engage its retaining levers. FRUTIL displays the following:

```
Insert the controller module, without its program card, in
slot B within x minutes, xx seconds.
```

11. Ensure that the program card is not in the new controller and insert the new controller into its slot. Engage its retaining levers.

Note In mirrored mode, FRUTIL will initialize the mirrored portion of the new cache module, check for old data on the cache module, and then restart all device ports. After the device ports have been restarted, FRUTIL will test the cache module and the ECB. After the test completes, the device ports will quiesce and a mirror copy of the cache module data will be created on the newly installed cache module.

FRUTIL displays the following:

```
The configuration has two controllers.
To restart the other controller:
 1. Type 'restart other_controller'.
 2. Press and hold the reset button while inserting the
    program card on the slot B controller, then release the
    reset button.
    The controller will restart.

Field Replacement Utility terminated.
```

Note If the controller you're installing was previously used in another subsystem, it will need to be purged of the controller's old configuration (see "CONFIGURATION RESET," page B–45).

12. Wait for FRUTIL to terminate and connect the hub cables to the new controller.

Note One or two hub cables may be attached, depending on the configuration.

13. To allow the "other controller"to restart, type the following command:

    RESTART OTHER _CONTROLLER

14. Hold the reset button while inserting the program card into the controller. Release the reset button and replace the ESD cover. The controller will restart.
15. See "Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller," page 2–3, to configure the controller.
16. Enable failover, and re-establish the dual-redundant controller configuration with the following command:

    SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER

    This command copies the subsystem's configuration from "this controller" to the "other controller."

17. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

Upgrading Cache Memory

The cache module may be configured as shown in Figure 5–7 on page 5-42 and Table 6–2 on page 6–20.

Table 6–2 Cache Module Memory Configurations

Memory	DIMMs	Quantity	Location
64 MB	32 MB	2	MC0-1 and MC1-3
128 MB	32 MB	4	MC0-1, MC0-2, MC1-3, and MC1-4
256 MB	128 MB	2	MC0-1 and MC1-3
512 MB	128 MB	4	MC0-1, MC0-2, MC1-3, and MC1-4

In order to upgrade cache memory, the controller must be shut down. Use the following steps to upgrade or add DIMMs:

1. From the host console, dismount the logical units in the subsystem. If you are using a Windows NT platform, shut down the server.
2. If the controller is operating, connect a PC or terminal to the controller's maintenance port.
3. Shut down the controllers. In single controller configurations, shut down "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, shut down the "other controller" first, then shut down "this controller" with the following commands:

   SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER

   SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER

   When the controllers shut down, their reset buttons and their first three LEDs are lit continuously. This may take several minutes, depending on the amount of data that needs to be flushed from the cache modules.

Caution ESD can easily damage a cache module or a DIMM. Wear a snug-fitting, grounded ESD wrist strap.

4. Disable the ECB for the cache module in which you will be adding or replacing DIMMS by pressing the battery disable switch until the status light stops blinking—about five seconds.

Caution The ECB must be disabled—the status light is not lit or is not blinking—before disconnecting the ECB cable from the cache module. Failure to disable the ECB could result in cache module damage.

5. Disconnect the ECB cable from the cache module.
6. Disengage the two retaining levers, remove the cache module, and place the cache module onto a grounded antistatic mat.

Note Allowed cache module memory configurations are shown in Figure 5–7 on page 5-42 and described in Table 6–2 on page 6–20.

7. If you are adding DIMMs, insert the new DIMM straight into the socket and ensure that the notches in the DIMM align with the tabs in the socket (see Figure 5–8 on page 5-44).
8. If you are replacing DIMMs, press down on the DIMM retaining levers at either end of the DIMM you want to remove.
9. Grasp the DIMM and gently remove it from the DIMM slot.
10. Insert the replacement DIMM straight into the socket and ensure that the notches in the DIMM align with the tabs in the socket (see Figure 5–8 on page 5-44).
11. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, repeat steps 4 through 10, as appropriate, for the other cache module.

Note In a dual-redundant controller configuration, both cache modules must contain the same memory configuration.

Caution Make sure you align the cache module in the appropriate guide rails. If you do not align the module correctly, damage to the backplane can occur.

12. Insert the cache module into its slot and engage its retaining levers.
13. Connect the ECB cable to the cache module.
14. In a dual-redundant controller configuration, repeat steps 12 and 13, as appropriate, for the other cache module.
15. Mount the logical units on the host. If you are using a Windows NT platform, restart the server.

16. Set the subsystem date and time. In single controller configurations, set "this controller." In dual-redundant controller configurations, set "this controller," then set the "other controller" with the following command:

    SET THIS_CONTROLLER TIME=*dd-mmm-yyyy:hh:mm:ss*

    SET OTHER_CONTROLLER TIME=*dd-mmm-yyyy:hh:mm:ss*

17. Disconnect the PC or terminal from the controller's maintenance port.

APPENDIX A

System Profiles

This appendix contains device and storageset profiles you can use to create your system profiles. It also contains an enclosure template you can use to help keep track of the location of devices and storagesets in your shelves.

Device Profile

Type

___ Platter disk drive
___ Tape Drive
___ Optical disk drive
___ CD-ROM

Device Name _____

Unit Number_____

Device Switches

Transportability
___ No (default)
___ Yes

Initialize Switches

Chunk size	Save Configuration	Metadata
___ Automatic (default)	___ No (default)	___ Destroy (default)
___ 64 blocks	___ Yes	___ Retain
___ 128 blocks		
___ 256 blocks		
___ Other:		

Unit Switches

Read Cache	Write Cache	Maximum Cache Transfer
___ Yes (default)	___ Yes (default)	___ 32 blocks (default)
___ No	___ No	___ Other:
Availability	**Write Protection**	**Read Ahead Cache**
___ Run (default)	___ No (default)	___ Yes (default)
___ NoRun	___ Yes	___ No

Storageset Profile

Type

___ RAIDset
___ Mirrorset
___ Stripeset
___ Striped Mirrorset

Storageset Name _____

Disk Drives _____

Unit Number _____

Partitions

Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #	Unit #
%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%

RAIDset Switches

Reconstruction Policy	Reduced Membership	Replacement Policy
___ Normal (default)	___ No (default)	___ Best performance (default)
___ Fast	___ Yes, missing:	___ Best fit
		___ None

Mirrorset Switches

Replacement Policy	Copy Policy	Read Source
___ Best performance (default)	___ Normal (default)	___ Least busy (default)
___ Best fit	___ Fast	___ Round robin
___ None		___ Disk drive:

Initialize Switches

Chunk size	Save Configuration	Metadata
___ Automatic (default)	___ No (default)	___ Destroy (default)
___ 64 blocks	___ Yes	___ Retain
___ 128 blocks		
___ 256 blocks		
___ Other:		

Unit Switches

Read Cache		
___ Yes (default)	**Write Cache**	**Maximum Cache Transfer**
___ No	___ Yes (default)	___ 32 blocks (default)
	___ No	___ Other:
Availability	**Write Protection**	**Read Ahead Cache**
___ Run (default)	___ No (default)	___ Yes (default)
___ NoRun	___ Yes	___ No

Enclosure Template

Power Supply							**Power Supply**
Power Supply							**Power Supply**
Power Supply							**Power Supply**
Power Supply							**Power Supply**

APPENDIX B

CLI Commands

This appendix contains the Command Line Interpreter (CLI) commands you can use to interact with your controller. Each command description contains the full syntax and examples of the use of the command. The Overview provides a general description of the CLI and how to use it.

CLI Overview

The Command Line Interpreter (CLI) is one of the user interfaces through which you control your StorageWorks array controller in the StorageWorks subsystem. The CLI commands allow you to manage the subsystem by viewing and modifying the configuration of the controller and the devices attached to them. You can also use the CLI to start controller diagnostic and utility programs.

While the CLI provides the most detailed level of subsystem control, a graphical user interface (GUI) is available for use with the CLI. The GUI, StorageWorks Command Console (SWCC), replicates most of the functions available within the CLI in graphic form and provides a user-friendly method of executing CLI commands.

CLI commands for configuring and viewing the controllers use the relative terms "this controller" and "other controller." See "Typographical Conventions," page xx, for an explanation of these terms.

Using the CLI

You can access the CLI by connecting a maintenance terminal to the port in the front bezel of the controller (local connection) or by using HSZterm software (remote connection). See "Establishing a Local Connection to the Controller," page 2–7 for instructions explaining how to connect a local terminal to the controller. After you have initially configured the controller, making it visible to the host, you can perform all other configuration tasks through a remote connection.

The section entitled "Maintenance Port Precautions," page xix, explains precautions you should observe when operating the CLI through a maintenance port.

Command Overview

The CLI consists of six basic command types:

- Controller Commands—Configure the controller's SCSI ID numbers, maintenance terminal characteristics, CLI prompt, and so forth. Controller commands are also used to shut down and restart the controller.

- Device Commands—Create and configure containers made from physical devices attached to the controller.
- Storageset Commands—Create and configure complex containers made from groups of device containers. There are four basic types of storagesets: stripesets, RAIDsets, striped-mirrorsets, and mirrorsets. Storageset commands group device containers together and allow them to be handled as single units.
- Logical Unit Commands—Create and optimize access to logical units made from any container type.
- Failover Commands—Configure the controllers to operate in transparent failover while also providing support for dual-redundant configurations.
- Diagnostic and Utility Commands—Perform general controller support functions.

Getting Help

Help on using the CLI is at your fingertips. For an overview of the CLI help system, enter help at the prompt. For help on a specific command or to determine what switches are available with a command, enter as much of the command as you know followed by a space and a question mark. For example, to get information on the switches used with the SET THIS_CONTROLLER command, enter:

```
SET THIS_CONTROLLER ?
```

See “HELP,” page B–69 for further information.

Entering CLI Commands

Use the following tips and techniques when entering CLI commands:

- Commands are not case sensitive.
- For most commands, you only need to enter enough of the command to make the command unique. For example, SHO is the same as entering SHOW.
- The controller processes each command in sequence. You can continue entering subsequent commands while the controller is processing prior commands. A controller experiencing heavy data I/O may respond slowly to CLI commands.

Specific keys or a combination of keys allow you to recall and edit the last four commands. This feature can save time and help prevent mistakes when you need to enter similar commands during the configuration process. Table B–1 lists the keys used to recall and edit commands.

Table B–1 Recall and Edit Command Keys

Key	Function
Up Arrow or Ctrl/B, Down Arrow or Ctrl/N	Steps backward and forward through the four most recent CLI commands.
Left arrow or Ctrl/D, Right arrow or Ctrl/F	Moves the cursor left or right in a command line.
Ctrl/E	Moves the cursor to the end of the line.
Ctrl/H or Backspace or F12	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the line.
Ctrl/J or Linefeed or F13	Deletes the word to the left of the cursor.
Ctrl/U	Deletes all characters on the same line as the cursor.
Ctrl/A or F14	Toggles between insert mode and overstrike mode. The default setting is insert mode, which allows you to insert characters at the cursor location, moving the existing characters to the right. Overstrike mode replaces existing characters. The CLI returns to insert mode at the beginning of each line.
Ctrl/R	Recalls the contents of the command line. This is especially helpful if the system issues a message that interrupts your typing.

Changing the CLI Prompt

You can change the CLI prompt that displays. Use the SET THIS_CONTROLLER PROMPT= command. Enter a 1- to 16-character string as the new prompt. For example, you could use the prompt to indicate the array controller's name, such as "HSG>."

Command Syntax

Commands to the controller must use the following command structure:

COMMAND *parameter SWITCHES*

- **Command.** A word or phrase expressed as a verb that is used to instruct the controller what to do. Every CLI command begins with a command. Commands are represented in this manual in capitalized form.
- **Parameter.** When required in the command, one or more words or phrases that supply necessary information to support the action of the command. Not all CLI commands require parameters. The parts of parameters that have to be entered as predefined text are in uppercase italics and the variables are in lower-case italicized text.
- **Switches.** An optional word or phrase that modifies the command. Not all CLI commands require switches. Switches are represented in this manual as capitalized, italicized text.

ADD CONNECTIONS

Adds the specified host connection to the table of known connections. This table is maintained in NVRAM. The maximum table length is 32 connections; if the table contains 32 entries, new connections cannot be added unless some old ones are deleted.

There are two mechanisms for adding a new connection to the table, as follows:

- Physically connecting a host adapter to a controller port. During loop initialization, the controller becomes aware of the connection and adds it to the table. This physical discovery of connections occurs at the point when a host adapter is plugged in to a controller port and after a RESTART command. New connections discovered through physical connection are assigned a default connection name by the controller. The default connection name is of the form !NEWCONnn.

Note Certain host conditions, such as a power cycle, that disturb the state of the loop may cause a connection to reappear in the table. The connection will be assigned a default connection name.

- Adding a connection through the ADD CONNECTIONS command.

Note ADD CONNECTIONS will add an entry to the table whether the connection physically exists or not. The table can be completely filled up with fictitious connections.

Syntax

ADD CONNECTIONS *connection_name* HOST_ID=*n* ADAPTER_ID=*n* CONTROLLER=*controller* PORT=*n*

Parameters

connection_name

The name that will be assigned to the host connection. The connection name can be any character string with one exception: it cannot be in the

form of a default connection name. The form of a default connection name is !NEWCONnn.

Note The default connection name is assigned automatically by the controller when the connection is physically made between a host adapter and a controller port. Default connection names are assigned only by the controller.

HOST_ID=nnnn-nnnn-nnnn-nnnn
Host_ID is the worldwide name of the host. It is a 16-character hexadecimal number. The hyphens aren't necessary, but are recommended to avoid mistakes in entering the number.

ADAPTER_ID=nnnn-nnnn-nnnn-nnnn
Adapter_ID is the worldwide name of the adapter. It is a 16-character hexadecimal number. The hyphens aren't necessary, but are recommended to avoid mistakes in entering the number. Adapter_ID maps to the fibre channel convention port name.

Note The worldwide name of the host and adapter are sometimes the same. This is a characteristic of teh adapter.

CONTROLLER=THIS CONTROLLER
CONTROLLER=OTHER CONTROLLER
The controller parameter specifies whether the connection is to "this controller" or "other controller."

PORT=1
PORT=2
The port parameter specifies which port, 1 or 2, the connection is on.

Switches

UNIT_OFFSET=n
Offset is a decimal value that establishes the beginning of the range of units that a host connection can access. It defines and restricts host connection access to a contiguous group of unit numbers.

In transparent failover mode and normal mode, host connections on controller port 1 have an offset of 0 and host connections on controller port 2 have an offset of 100. These are the default offset values.

The relationship between LUN number, unit number, and offset is as follows:

- LUN number = unit number - offset.
- Logical unit number or LUN number = the logical unit number presented to the host connection.
- Unit number = the number assigned to the unit in the ADD UNIT command. This is the number by which the unit is known internally to the controllers.

Note If the SET *controller* SCSI_VERSION=SCSI-3, the command console LUN (CCL) is presented as LUN 0 to every connection, superceding any unit assignments. See “ADD UNIT,” page B–27, for more information.

OPERATING_SYSTEM=OS_name
Specifies the operating system of the host. The choices are:

- DIGITAL_UNIX
- IBM
- SNI
- SUN
- VMS
- WINNT

Examples

This will add to the table of known connections, an entry for a connection named George with the indicated host and adapter worldwide names, on port 2 of “this controller.”

```
CLI>ADD CONNECTIONS GEORGE HOST_ID=1000-0000-C920-1234
ADAPTER_ID=1000-0000-C920-5678 CONTROLLER=THIS PORT=2
```

See also

ADD UNIT
DELETE *connections*
SET *connection-name*

ADD DISK

Names a disk drive and adds it to the controller's configuration.

Note The controller supports a maximum of 72 storage devices, even though more than 72 target IDs are available. Do not exceed the maximum number of devices in the subsystem.

Syntax

ADD DISK *container-name scsi-port-target-lun*

Parameters

container-name
Assigns a name to the disk device. This is the name used with the ADD UNIT command to create a single-disk unit.

The disk name must start with a letter (A through Z) and may consist of a maximum of nine characters including letters A through Z, numbers 0 through 9, periods (.), dashes (-), or underscores (_).

Tip It is common to name a disk drive DISK*pttll*, where *pttll* is the disk's Port-Target-LUN address. Although other naming conventions are acceptable, this one presents the user with the type of disk drive and its SCSI location.

scsi-port-target-lun
Indicates the SCSI device PTL address. Place one space between the port number, target number, and the two-digit LUN number when entering the PTL address. See the "Device PTL Addressing Convention within the Controller," page 3–33, for an explanation of the PTL addressing naming format.

Note See the *HSG80 Array Controller ACS Version 8.2 Release Notes* to determine whether the disk drive you are planning to use is compatible with the controller.

Switches

NOTRANSPORTABLE (Default)
TRANSPORTABLE
Indicates whether a disk drive can be accessed exclusively by StorageWorks controllers.

If the NOTRANSPORTABLE switch is specified, the controller makes a small portion of the disk inaccessible to the host. This restricted space is used to store information (metadata) that is used to improve data reliability, error detection, and the ability to recover data. Because of this metadata, only StorageWorks controllers can retrieve data from non-transportable devices.

Transportable disk drives do not contain any metadata or restricted areas. Therefore, transportable disks forfeit the advantage metadata provides but can be moved to a non-StorageWorks environment with their data intact. Disks that are to be used in storagesets cannot be set as transportable.

If you specify the NOTRANSPORTABLE switch and there is no metadata on the unit, the unit must be initialized. If you specify TRANSPORTABLE for a disk that was originally initialized as a NOTRANSPORTABLE, you should initialize the disk.

Note DIGITAL recommends you avoid using transportable disks unless there is no other way to move the data.

TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=ASYNCHRONOUS
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=20MHZ (Default)
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=10MHZ
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=5MHZ
Specifies the maximum data transfer rate at which the controller is to communicate with the disk drive. The user might need to limit the transfer rate to accommodate long cables between the controllers and the device.

Examples

To add DISK10000 at port 1, target 0, LUN 0, type:

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
```

To add DISK40200 as a transportable disk drive to port 4, target 2, LUN 0, use:

```
ADD DISK DISK40200 4 2 0 TRANSPORTABLE
```

To add a disk drive named DISK30200 as non-transportable disk to port 3, target 2, LUN 0, and to set the data transfer rate to 10 MHz, enter the following command on one line.

```
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0 NOTRANSPORTABLE
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=10MHZ
```

This example creates a host-addressable unit after the disk is added:

```
INITIALIZE DISK20000

ADD UNIT D199 DISK20000
```

See also

ADD MIRRORSET
ADD UNIT
DELETE *container-name*
LOCATE
SHOW DISKS
SHOW DEVICES
SET *container-name*

ADD MIRRORSET

Names a mirrorset and adds it to the controller configuration.

Syntax

ADD MIRRORSET *mirrorset-name disk-name1 [disk-nameN]*

Parameters

mirrorset-name
Assigns a name to the mirrorset. This is the name used with the ADD UNIT command to identify the mirrorset as a host-addressable unit.

The mirrorset name must start with a letter (A through Z) and may consist of a maximum of nine characters including letters A through Z, numbers 0 through 9, periods (.), dashes (-), or underscores (_).

Tip It is common to name a mirrorset MIRR*n*, where *n* is a sequentially-assigned, unique identifier. Other naming conventions are acceptable, but this naming convention presents both the type of container and its unique identifier.

disk-name1 [disk-nameN]
Identifies the disk drives making up the mirrorset. A mirrorset may contain one to six disk drives.

Switches

COPY=FAST
COPY=NORMAL (Default)
Sets the speed at which the controller copies data to a new member from normal mirrorset members when data is being mirrored to the storageset's disk drives.

Specify COPY=FAST to allow the creation of mirrored data to take precedence over other controller operations. When you specify COPY=FAST, the controller uses more resources to create the mirrored data, and copying takes less time. However, overall controller performance is reduced during copying.

Specify COPY=NORMAL when operations performed by the controller should take priority over the copy operation. If you specify COPY=NORMAL, creating the mirrored data has a minimal impact on performance.

POLICY=BEST_FIT
POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (Default)
NOPOLICY
Sets the selection criteria the controller uses to choose a replacement disk from the spareset when a mirrorset member fails.

Specify POLICY=BEST_FIT to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the mirrorset was initialized). If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset that meets the criteria, the controller selects a disk drive with the best performance.

Specify POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset with the best performance. The controller attempts to select a disk on a different port than existing mirrorset members. If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset matching the best performance criteria, the controller selects a disk drive that equals or exceeds the base member size.

Specify NOPOLICY to prevent the controller from automatically replacing a failed disk device. The mirrorset operates in a reduced state until a POLICY=BEST_FIT or POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE is selected, or a member is manually placed in the mirrorset (see "SET mirrorset-name," page B–121).

READ_SOURCE=disk-name
READ_SOURCE=LEAST_BUSY (Default)
READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN
Selects the mirrorset member used by the controller to satisfy a read request.

Specify the READ_SOURCE=*disk-name* of a specific member to which you want the controller to direct all read requests. If the member fails out of the mirrorset, the controller selects the first normal member it finds to satisfy its read requests.

Specify READ_SOURCE=LEAST_BUSY to direct read requests to the mirrorset disk with the least amount of work in its queue. If multiple members have equally short queues, the controller queries normal disks for each read request as it would when READ_SOURCE= ROUND_ROBIN is specified.

Specify READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN to sequentially direct read requests to each mirrorset disk. The controller equally queries all normal disks for each read request.

Examples

To add DISK10000, DISK20100, and DISK30200 as a mirrorset with the name MIRR1, type:

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD MIRRORSET MIRR1 DISK10000 DISK20100 DISK30200
```

The following example shows how to create a host-addressable unit after the mirrorset MIRR1 has been created:

```
INITIALIZE MIRR1
ADD UNIT D104 MIRR1
```

See also

ADD DISK
ADD UNIT
DELETE *container-name*
INITIALIZE
MIRROR
REDUCE
SHOW *mirrorset-name*
SHOW MIRRORSETS
SHOW STORAGESETS
UNMIRROR

ADD RAIDSET

Names a RAIDset and adds the RAIDset to the controller's configuration. DIGITAL RAIDsets are often referred to as RAID level 3/5 storagesets because they use the best characteristics of RAID level 3 and RAID level 5. The number of members in the storageset is determined by the number of containers specified by the *container-name* parameter in the command. The data capacity of the RAIDset is determined by the storage size of the smallest member.

Syntax

ADD RAIDSET *RAIDset-name container-name1 container-name2 [container-nameN]*

Parameters

RAIDset-name
Assigns a name to the RAIDset. This is the name used with the ADD UNIT command to identify the RAIDset as a host-addressable unit.

The RAIDset name must start with a letter (A through Z) and may consist of a maximum of nine characters including letters A through Z, numbers 0 through 9, periods (.), dashes (-), or underscores (_).

Tip It is common to name a RAIDset RAID*n*, where *n* is a sequentially-assigned, unique identifier. This naming convention presents the user with the type of container and its unique identifier.

container-name1 container-name2 [container-nameN]
Identifies the disks making up the RAIDset. RAIDsets must include at least 3 disk drives and no more than 14.

Switches

POLICY=BEST_FIT
POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (Default)
NOPOLICY
Set the selection criteria the controller uses to choose a replacement member from the spareset when a RAIDset member fails.

Specify POLICY=BEST_FIT to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the RAIDset was initialized) of the remaining members of the RAIDset. If more than one disk drive in the spareset is the correct size, the controller selects a disk drive giving the best performance.

Specify POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset resulting in the best performance of the RAIDset. The controller attempts to select a disk on a different port than existing RAIDset members. If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset matching the best performance criteria, the controller selects the disk drive that equals or exceeds the base member size of the RAIDset.

Specify NOPOLICY to prevent the controller from automatically replacing a failed disk device. This RAIDset operates in a reduced state until you select either POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE or POLICY=BEST_FIT, or manually place a member in the RAIDset. See "SET RAIDset-name," page B–133, for more information regarding this procedure.

RECONSTRUCT=FAST
RECONSTRUCT=NORMAL (Default)
Sets the speed at which the controller reconstructs data to a new RAIDset disk that replaces the failed disk.

Specify FAST to allow the reconstruct process to take precedence over other controller operations. When the RECONSTRUCT=FAST switch is specified, the controller uses more resources to perform the reconstruction. Reconstruction takes less time, but overall controller performance is reduced during reconstruction.

Specify NORMAL to balance other controller operations with the reconstruct operation. The controller uses relatively few resources to perform the reconstruct process; therefore, there is little impact on performance.

REDUCED
NOREDUCED (Default)
Permits the addition of a RAIDset missing a member. Specify the REDUCED switch when you add a reduced RAIDset (a RAIDset that is missing a member).

Specify the NOREDUCED switch when all the disks making up the RAIDset are present—for instance, when creating a new RAIDset.

Verify the RAIDset contains all but one of its disks before specifying the REDUCED switch.

Examples

To create a RAIDset named RAID9 that contains disks DISK10000, DISK20100, and DISK30200, use the following commands:

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID9 DISK10000 DISK20100 DISK30200
```

This example shows how to create a RAIDset named RAID8 that contains disks DISK10000, DISK20100, and DISK30200 and uses the BEST_FIT switch to indicate the replacement policy. Enter the ADD RAIDSET command on one line.

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID8 DISK10000 DISK20100 DISK30200
POLICY=BEST_FIT
```

This example creates RAIDset RAID8 and then creates a host-addressable unit.

```
INITIALIZE RAID8
ADD UNIT D70 RAID8
```

This example shows how you can create a three-member RAIDset from the members of a reduced four-member RAIDset. Do not initialize the RAIDset again.

Caution Data contained on the RAIDset will be erased if you reinitialize the RAIDset.

```
ADD DISK DISK10300 1 3 0
ADD DISK DISK20400 2 4 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID6 DISK10300 DISK20400 DISK30200 REDUCED
```

See also

ADD UNIT
DELETE *container-name*
SET RAIDSET
SHOW RAIDSET
SHOW *RAIDset-name*
SHOW STORAGESETS
INITITALIZE

ADD SPARESET

Adds a disk drive to the spareset.

Syntax

ADD SPARESET *disk-name*

Parameter

disk-name
Indicates the name of the disk drive being added to the spareset. Only one disk drive can be added to the spareset with each ADD SPARESET command.

Example

To add a disk drive named DISK20200 and DISK30300 to a spareset, type:

```
ADD DISK DISK20200 2 2 0
ADD DISK DISK30300 3 3 0
ADD SPARESET DISK20200
ADD SPARESET DISK30300
```

See also

DELETE SPARESET
SET FAILEDSET
SHOW SPARESET
SHOW STORAGESETS

ADD STRIPESET

Names a stripeset and adds it to the controller configuration. Stripesets are sometimes referred to as RAID level 0 storagesets. The number of members in the stripeset is determined by the number of *container-name* parameters specified.

Syntax

ADD STRIPESET *stripeset-name container-name1 container-name2 [container-nameN]*

Parameters

stripeset-name
Assigns a name to the stripeset. This is the name used with the ADD UNIT command to identify the stripeset as a host-addressable unit.

container-name1 container-name2 [container-nameN]
Identifies the members (disk drives or mirrorsets) making up the stripeset. Stripeset can contain between 2 and 14 members.

The container name must start with a letter (A through Z) and may consist of a maximum of nine characters including letters A through Z, numbers 0 through 9, periods (.), dashes (-), or underscores (_).

Tip It's common to name a stripeset STRIPE*n*, where n is a sequentially-assigned, unique identifier. This naming convention presents both the type of container and its unique identifier.

Note There is a 240 character limit for the command line. If you are configuring a stripeset with multiple members (for example, more than 20) you will have to rename the members in order to execute the command.

Examples

To create a stripeset named STRIPE1 with three disks: DISK10000, DISK20100, and DISK30200, enter:

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 DISK10000 DISK20100 DISK30200
```

To create a stripeset named STRIPE1 and then create a logical unit from it, type:

```
INITIALIZE STRIPE1
ADD UNIT D103 STRIPE1
```

This example shows how to create a two-member striped mirrorset (a stripeset whose members are mirrorsets), and how to create a logical unit from it. Because you can initialize the stripeset, you do not need to individually initialize the mirrorsets.

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD DISK DISK40300 4 3 0
ADD MIRRORSET MR1 DISK10000 DISK20100
ADD MIRRORSET MR2 DISK30200 DISK40300
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 MR1 MR2
INITIALIZE STRIPE1
ADD UNIT D104 STRIPE1
```

See also

ADD UNIT
ADD MIRRORSET
DELETE *container-name*
INITIALIZE
SHOW STORAGESET
SHOW STRIPESET
SHOW *stripeset-name*

ADD UNIT

Creates a logical unit from a device, container, or partition. The controller maps all requests from the host to the logical-unit number as requests to the container specified in the ADD UNIT command.

If you add a newly-created storageset or disk to your subsystem, you must initialize it before it can be added as a logical unit. If you are adding a storageset or disk that has data on it that you want to maintain, do not initialize it; it will be added as logical unit.

Syntax

ADD UNIT *unit-number container-name*

Parameters

unit-number
Assigns a number to the unit being created from a device, container, or partition in the subsystem. The host uses this number to indicate the source or target for every I/O request it sends to the controller. The *unit-number* is a host-addressable LUN. The *unit-number* is assigned to one of the host ports.

Unit numbers are 0-99 and are prefixed by one of the following:

D—assigns units to Port 1

D1—assigns units to Port 2

Adding unit D00 creates a logical unit and presents it as D00 to the host on port 1. Adding unit D100 creates a logical unit and presents it as D00 to the host on port 2. Units must be on a single port. Do not split partitioned units across ports.

The LUN number a host connection assigns to a LUN is a function of the UNIT_OFFSET qualifier in the ADD (or SET) connections command: LUN number = unit number - offset

If no value is specified for the UNIT_OFFSET qualifier in the ADD (or SET) CONNECTIONS command, then host connections on controller port 1 have an offset of 0 and host connections on controller port 2 have an offset of 100. These are the default offset values.

container-name
Specifies the name of the container (disk drive, device, storageset, or partition) that is used to create the unit.

A maximum of 48 devices can make up one unit.

Switches

Table B–2 lists all switches for the ADD UNIT command and identifies which switches may be used with each type of device or storageset. Descriptions of each switch follow the table.

Table B–2 ADD UNIT Switches for Storagesets

Container Type / Switch	ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH	PARTITION=partition-number	MAXIMUM_CACHED_ TRANSFER	PREFERRED_PATH NOPREFERRED_PATH	READ_CACHE NOREAD_CACHE	READAHEAD_CACHE NOREADAHEAD_CACHE	WRITE_PROTECT NOWRITE_PROTECT	WRITEBACK_CACHE NOWRITEBACK_CACHE	RUN NORUN
RAIDset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Stripeset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Mirrorset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
NoTransportable Disk	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Transportable Disk	✔		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔		✔

Note Regardless of the storageset type, you cannot specify RUN and NORUN for partitioned units.

ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH=
DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=
Specifies the access path. It can be a single specific host ID, multiple host IDs, or all host IDs (ALL). If you have multiple hosts on the same

bus, you can use this switch to restrict hosts from accessing certain units. This switch limits visibility of specific units from certain hosts. For example, if two hosts are on the same bus, you can restrict each host to access only specific units.

If you enable another host ID(s), previously enabled host(s) are not disabled. The new ID(s) are added. If you wish to enable only certain ID(s), disable all access paths (DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=ALL), then enable the desired ID(s). The system will display the following message:

```
Warning 1000: Access IDs in addition to the one(s) specified
are still enabled. If you wish to enable ONLY the id(s)
listed, disable all access paths (DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=ALL),
then enable the ones previously listed.
```

Note To enable access by more than one host connection, list the connection names separated by commas and enclosed in parenthesis. Enabling access by more than one host connection can also be done by sequential commands.

PARTITION=partition-number
Identifies the unit number for a partition on a container. The *partition-number* identifies the partition associated with the unit number being added. Use the SHOW *container-name* command to find the partition numbers used by a storageset or a single-disk unit.

Note Do not split partitioned units across ports. The subsystem assigns units 0-99 to Port 1; units 100-199 are assigned to Port 2. Partitioned units must be on a single port.

Transportable units cannot be partitioned.

MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER=32 (Default)
MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER=n
Sets the largest number of write blocks to be cached by the controller. The controller will not cache any transfers over the specified size. Accepted write block sizes are 1 through 1024.

The MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER switch affects both read and write-back cache when set on a controller that has read and write-back caching.

PREFERRED_PATH=OTHER_CONTROLLER
PREFERRED_PATH=THIS_CONTROLLER
NOPREFERRED_PATH (Default)
May be set only when dual-redundant controllers are operating in a multiple bus failover configuration. In a multiple bus failover configuration, the host determines which controller the units are accessed through. The host's unit-to-controller settings always take precedence over the preferred path assigned to units with this switch. The target ID numbers assigned with the SET *controller* PORT_1_ALPA= (or PORT_2) command determines which target ID number the controller uses to respond to the host.

Note If your controllers are configured to operate in transparent-failover mode, do not set the PREFERRED_PATH switch with the ADD UNIT or SET *unit-number* command—otherwise, an error message is displayed. The error message indicates the assignment of a preferred controller path at the unit level is valid only when operating in multiple bus failover mode.

When no preferred path is assigned, the unit is targeted through the controller which detects the unit first after the controllers start.

Select PREFERRED_PATH=THIS_CONTROLLER to instruct "this controller" to bring the units online.

Select PREFERRED_PATH=OTHER_CONTROLLER to instruct the "other controller" to bring the units online.

See Chapter 2 for information regarding multiple bus failover.

Tip Subsystem performance is better if target ID numbers are balanced across the dual-redundant pair.

READ_CACHE (Default)
NOREAD_CACHE
Sets the controller's cache read policy function. Read caching improves performance in almost all situations. Therefore, it is recommended you leave its default setting, READ_CACHE enabled. However, under certain conditions, such as when performing a backup, read caching may not be necessary since only a small amount of data is cached. In such instances, it may be beneficial to disable the read cache function and remove the processing overhead associated with caching data.

READAHEAD_CACHE (Default)
NOREADAHEAD_CACHE
Enables the controller to keep track of read I/Os. If the controller detects sequential read I/Os from the host, it will then try to keep ahead of the host by reading the next sequential blocks of data (those the host has not yet requested) and put the data in cache. This process is sometimes referred to as prefetch. The controller can detect multiple sequential I/O requests across multiple units.

Read ahead caching improves host application performance since the data will be read from the controller cache instead of disk. Read ahead caching is the default for units.

If you are adding a unit that is not expected to get sequential I/O requests, select NOREADAHEAD_CACHE for the unit.

RUN (Default)
NORUN
Controls the unit's availability to the host.

Specify RUN to make a unit available to the host.

Specify NORUN to make a unit unavailable to the host and to cause any data in cache to be flushed to one or more drives. NORUN spins down all the disks used in the unit. The drives making up the unit spin down after the data has been completely flushed.

Note Do not specify the RUN and NORUN switches for partitions.

WRITE_PROTECT (Default)
NOWRITE_PROTECT
Tells the controller whether data contained on the unit can be overwritten.

Specify WRITE_PROTECT to prevent the host from writing data to the unit. However, the controller may still write to a write-protected RAIDset to complete a reconstruct operation and metadata, reconstruct data, and copy data may still be written to RAIDsets and mirrorsets.

Specify NOWRITE_PROTECT to allow the host to write data to the unit. This allows the controller to overwrite existing data. NOWRITE_PROTECT is the default for transportable disks.

WRITEBACK_CACHE (Default)
NOWRITEBACK_CACHE
Enable or disable the write-back data caching function of the controller. The controller's write-back caching feature improves write performance. WRITEBACK_CACHE is the default on transportable disks.

Specify WRITEBACK_CACHE for all new RAIDsets, mirrorsets, and units you want to take advantage of the controller's write-back caching feature.

Specify NOWRITEBACK_CACHE for units you want to receive data directly from the host without being cached.

Caution Though there is built-in redundancy to protect data contained in cache, allowing data to be written to write-back cache may result in the loss of data if a catastrophic subsystem failure occurs.

Note The controller may take up to five minutes to flush data contained within the write-back cache when you specify the NOWRITEBACK_CACHE switch.

Examples

This example shows how to create unit D102 from a single-disk drive named DISK10000 and sets the host's access to the unit through "this controller."

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
INITIALIZE DISK10000
ADD UNIT D102 DISK10000 PREFERRED_PATH=THIS_CONTROLLER
```

This example shows how to create unit D107 from a RAIDset named RAID9 and instructs the unit to take advantage of the controller's write-back caching feature.

```
ADD DISK DISK10100 1 1 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30100 3 1 0
ADD DISK DISK40100 4 1 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID9 DISK10100 DISK20100 DISK30100 DISK40100
INITIALIZE RAID9
ADD UNIT D107 RAID9 WRITEBACK_CACHE
```

See also

CREATE_PARTITION
DELETE *unit-number*
SET *unit-number*
SHOW UNITS

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI

Stops the display of current or previous error messages at the CLI prompt. This command does not clear the error conditions, it only stops the display of errors at the CLI prompt.

After the cause of the error condition has been corrected, issue the CLEAR_ERRORS CLI command to clear the error message.

Note There are three message types: info—general information; warning—user may want to examine, but command will be executed; and error—command will not execute.

Syntax

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI

Example

To clear the message “All NVPM components initialized to their default settings” from the CLI prompt, type:

```
ALL NVPM COMPONENTS INITIALIZED TO THEIR DEFAULT SETTINGS
CLEAR_ERRORS CLI
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS INVALID_CACHE
CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA
CLEAR_ERRORS UNKNOWN
CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

CLEAR_ERRORS *controller* INVALID_CACHE

Clears an invalid cache error and allows the controller and cache to resume operation. If the error is due to an incorrectly-mirrored configuration, the controller indicates mirrored mode status after the error is cleared.

Use this command for the following situations:

- When the controller or cache modules have been replaced, resulting in mismatched data between the controllers.
- When the controller or cache module is replaced while data is still in cache and not properly flushed with the SHUTDOWN or SET NOFAILOVER COPY= commands.

Syntax

CLEAR_ERRORS *controller* INVALID_CACHE

Spell out INVALID_CACHE when using this command.

Parameters

controller
Identifies which controller is to receive the CLEAR_ERRORS command. You must specify THIS_CONTROLLER or OTHER_CONTROLLER.

data-retention-policy
DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA (Default)
Instructs the controller on how to handle write-back cached data.

Specify NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA (default) to retain the cached data and discard controller information.

Specify DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA to retain the controller information and discard the cached data.

Specify NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA in the following situations:

- If the controller module has been replaced
- If the controller's nonvolatile memory (NVMEM) has lost its contents.

Specify DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA in the following situations:

- If the cache module has been replaced
- Any other reason not listed above

Caution Specifying the DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA switch destroys data remaining in cache, which can result in data loss.

Examples

This example shows how to clear an invalid cache error on "this controller" after you have replaced a controller module. Enter the command on one line.

```
CLEAR_ERRORS THIS_CONTROLLER INVALID_CACHE
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA
```

This example shows how to clear an invalid cache error on the "other controller" after a cache module has been replaced. Enter this command on the same line. Enter the command on one line.

```
CLEAR_ERRORS OTHER_CONTROLLER INVALID_CACHE
DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI
CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA
CLEAR_ERRORS UNKNOWN
CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

CLEAR_ERRORS *device-name* UNKNOWN

If a device failure causes the controller to label the device as unknown, the controller does not check the device again to see if it has been repaired or if the error condition has been corrected. You must enter this command so the controller can recognize the device after the cause of the error has been corrected.

Use this command to force the controller to recognize a failed device, regardless of the controller's prior evaluation of the device's condition.

Syntax

CLEAR_ERRORS *device-name* UNKNOWN

Spell out UNKNOWN when using this command.

Parameters

device-name
Identifies the device with the unknown error.

Example

To force the controller to recognize a previously unknown device named DISK30000, enter this command:

```
CLEAR_ERRORS DISK30000 UNKNOWN
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI
CLEAR_ERRORS INVALID_CACHE
CLEAR_ERRORS UNKNOWN
CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* LOST_DATA

Clears lost data errors on a unit; all partitions on the unit's container are affected.

The controller reports a lost data error on the unit when you remove a write-back cache module or when the cache module contains unflushed data, possibly due to an interruption in the primary power source with no backup power present. The CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA command clears the lost data error but does not recover the lost data.

Note Clearing lost data errors or lost data block errors on a RAIDset causes a reconstruction of all parity blocks. Clearing lost data errors or lost data block errors on a mirrorset causes members to normalize.

Syntax

CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* LOST_DATA

Spell out LOST_DATA when using this command.

Caution This command may cause data loss.

Parameters

unit-number
Identifies the unit on which the lost data error is to be cleared. The *unit-number* is the same name given to the unit when you added it to the controller's configuration.

Example

The following command will clear the lost data error on disk unit number D103:

```
CLEAR_ERRORS D103 LOST_DATA
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI
CLEAR_ERRORS INVALID_CACHE
CLEAR_ERRORS UNKNOWN
CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* UNWRITEABLE_DATA

Clears an unwriteable data error on a unit.

It affects all partitions on the same container.

If a storageset or disk drive fails before its data has been written to it, the controller reports an unwriteable data error. The CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA command removes the data from the cache and clears the unwriteable data error.

Caution This command causes data loss.

Syntax

CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* UNWRITEABLE_DATA

Spell out UNWRITEABLE_DATA when using this command.

Parameters

unit-number
Identifies the unit having the unwriteable data error. The *unit-number* is the name given to the unit when it was created with the ADD UNIT command.

Example

Use the following command to clear the unwriteable data error on disk unit D103:

```
CLEAR_ERRORS D103 UNWRITEABLE_DATA
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS CLI
CLEAR_ERRORS INVALID_CACHE
CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA
CLEAR_ERRORS UNKNOWN
RETRY_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

CONFIGURATION RESET

Erases the entire configuration on “this controller,” restores the controller’s default configuration, and shuts down the controller.

Note If you plan to use this feature, SAVE_CONFIGURATION must be set when you initialize the container. See “INITIALIZE,” page B–71.

Specify the CONFIGURATION RESET command on “this controller” in nofailover mode only. Enter this command to ensure all of the old configuration information is removed when a controller is moved from one subsystem to another.

This command disables communication between host and controller. Enter new configuration information through the SET THIS_CONTROLLER command or the CONFIGURATION RESTORE command to make the controller operational.

You can also initiate the CONFIGURATION RESET command from the controller’s operator control panel (OCP) by holding in port button 5 and pressing the reset button.

Syntax

CONFIGURATION RESET

See also

CONFIGURATION RESTORE
CONFIGURATION SAVE
INITIALIZE

CONFIGURATION RESTORE

Copies a controller's configuration from the disk configuration file into the controller's non-volatile memory. This command locates the most recent configuration file created on disk and restores it. This command causes a reboot and takes effect immediately.

Use this command for a single controller configuration only. Do not use it for controllers in a dual-redundant configuration.

You can also initiate the CONFIGURATION RESTORE command from the controller's operator control panel (OCP) by holding in port button 6 and pressing the reset button.

Note The controller must not have devices configured prior to issuing this command. Use "CONFIGURATION RESET," page B–45, instead.

---

f the controller you're installing was previously used in another subsystem, it will restart with the configuration that resides in its nonvolatile memory. If this differs from the subsystem's current configuration, you can purge the controller's old configuration with the following command:

CONFIGURATION RESET

This will erase the entire configuration on the controller, restore the controller's default configuration, and shut down the controller. Press its reset button to restart the controller after the controller has been configured (see "Configuring an HSG80 Array Controller," page 2–3).

Note The INITIALIZE *container-name* SAVE_CONFIGURATION must be used to save the controller's configuration to a disk (see "SAVE_CONFIGURATION," page B–73), in order to reset the configuration (see "CONFIGURATION RESET," page B–45) or to restore the configuration (see "CONFIGURATION RESTORE," page B–47).

Syntax

CONFIGURATION RESTORE

See also

CONFIGURATION RESET
CONFIGURATION SAVE
INITIALIZE

CONFIGURATION SAVE

Forces a current copy of configuration information in a controller's non-volatile memory into a configuration file on a disk. This allows the user to determine when a copy of the configuration is saved. Use this command to explicitly save a single controller's configuration. The command takes effect immediately. In a dual-redundant configuration, issue this command to both controllers.

Use the INITIALIZE *container-name* SAVE_CONFIGURATION command to set up the location of the configuration file on disk.

Syntax

CONFIGURATION SAVE

See also

CONFIGURATION RESET
CONFIGURATION RESTORE
INITIALIZE

CREATE_PARTITION

Divides a non-transportable disk drive storageset into several, separately-addressable storage units. The command marks a specified percentage of a disk drive or storageset to be used as a separately addressable unit. You can divide any nontransportable disk or storageset into a maximum of eight partitions. Each partition can be separately presented to the host. Partitions are not supported in multiple bus failover mode. Initialize disks and storagesets before creating partitions.

Note Partitioned units cannot function in multiple bus failover dual-redundant configurations. Because they are not supported, you must delete your partitions before configuring the controllers for multiple bus failover.

After you partition a container, you must initialize it in order to destroy the partitions.

Syntax

CREATE_PARTITION *container-name SIZE=percent*

Parameters

container-name
Identifies the disk or storageset to partition. This is the same name given to the disk or storageset when it was created with the ADD command (for example, ADD DISK, ADD STRIPESET, and so forth). Any disk, stripeset, mirrorset, striped mirrorset, or RAIDset can be partitioned. A transportable disk cannot be partitioned. You must initialize the container before creating the first partition.

SIZE=percent
SIZE=LARGEST
Specifies the size of the partition to be created as a percentage of the total container's storageset size.

To create a partition, specify a percentage of the container's total capacity. The entire container is then divided into segments equal to the percentage specified. For example, if SIZE=20, the container is divided into five (1.0/0.2=5) equal segments. The resulting partition is slightly

smaller than the size specified because metadata also occupies some of the partition's allocated space.

Specify LARGEST in the following situations:

- To have the controller create the largest partition possible from unused space on the disk or storageset.
- To create the last partition on a container. Because the remaining space is not equal to an exact percentage value, specifying LARGEST allows you to optimize use of the remaining space.

CAPACITY=
CYLINDERS=
HEADS=
SECTORS_PER_TRACK=
CAPACITY may be specified 1 to the maximum container size (in blocks); CYLINDERS may be specified 1 to16,777,215; HEADS may be specified 1 to 255; and SECTORS_PER_TRACK may be specified 1 to 255.

Note These are used to set the SCSI parameters reported to the host. They should not be used unless there is a compatibility problem with the existing defaults.

The geometry parameter switches for the INITIALIZE command are ignored when you create partitions. The parameters supplied with the CREATE_PARTITION command are used by the unit.

Example

This example shows how to create a RAIDset named RAID9 and divide it into four equal parts. It also creates host-addressable units for each partition.

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID9 DISK10000 DISK20100 DISK30200
INITIALIZE RAID9
CREATE_PARTITION RAID9 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITION RAID9 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITION RAID9 SIZE=25
CREATE_PARTITOIN RAID9 SIZE=LARGEST
ADD UNIT D101 RAID9 PARTITION=1
ADD UNIT D102 RAID9 PARTITION=2
ADD UNIT D103 RAID9 PARTITION=3
ADD UNIT D104 RAID9 PARTITION=4
```

See also

ADD UNIT
DELETE *unit-number*
DESTROY PARTITION
SHOW

DELETE *connections*

Deletes a host connection entry from the table of known connections.

This command deletes a specified connection from the table of known connections maintained by the controller.

The table of known host connections is maintained in the controllers NVRAM. Once a connection is added to the table, it stays there, even if the physical connection between host adapter and controller port is severed. The only way to remove a connection from the table is through the DELETE *connections* command.

DELETE *connections* removes the connection from the table whether or not the host adapter is still physically connected to a controlled port.

Note A connection that has access path explicity enabled on a unit cannot be deleted. Access path is enabled through the ADD UNIT or SET UNIT commands. If access path is generically enabled for all connections (ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH= ALL), then any or all connections can be deleted.

Syntax

DELETE *connection name*

Parameters

connection name
The name given to the host connection. The connection name is one of the following:

- The default name assigned to the host connection when it was physically connected to the controller port. Default names are of the form !NEWCONnn.
- The name given through the RENAME command.
- The name given through the ADD CONNECTIONS command.

Examples

Deletes the host connection Server1 from the table of known connections (unless the access path to Server1 is specifically enabled for one or more unit.)

```
CLI> DELETE SERVER1
```

See also

ADD CONNECTIONS
ADD UNIT
SET *connection-name*
SET *unit-number*

DELETE *container-name*

Deletes a container belonging to the controller's configuration. You cannot delete a container in use by a higher-level container. For example, you cannot delete a disk belonging to a RAIDset, or a RAIDset belonging to a unit; you must first delete the higher-level container or containers.

Note This command does not delete sparesets or failedsets. You cannot delete spareset and failedset containers. See the DELETE FAILEDSET and DELETE SPARESET commands for details.

When a storageset is deleted, the individual disks are free to be used by another container. If you create the container again with the exact same disk configuration, and none of the disks have been used for anything, or initialized, then the container can be reassembled using its original disks.

Syntax

DELETE *container-name*

Parameters

container-name
Identifies the container to be deleted. This is the name given to the container when it was created using the ADD command (for example, ADD DISK, ADD STRIPESET, and so forth).

Examples

To delete a disk drive named DISK10000, type:

```
DELETE DISK10000
```

To delete a stripeset named STRIPE1, enter:

```
DELETE STRIPE1
```

To delete a RAIDset named RAID9, use:

```
DELETE RAID9
```

See also

DELETE FAILEDSET
DELETE SPARESET
UNMIRROR

DELETE FAILEDSET

Removes a disk drive from the failedset. The failedset contains disk drives removed by the controller from RAIDsets and mirrorsets because they failed or were manually removed using the SET command. Enter the DELETE FAILEDSET command before physically removing failed disks from the storage shelf for testing, repair, or replacement.

You should consider all disk drives in the failedset defective. Repair or replace disks found in the failedset.

Syntax

DELETE FAILEDSET *disk-name*

Parameter

disk-name
Identifies the disk you want to delete from the failedset. Only one disk at a time can be removed from a failedset.

Example

To delete DISK20200 from the failedset, use the following command:

```
DELETE FAILEDSET DISK20200
```

See also

DELETE *container-name*
DELETE SPARESET
SET FAILEDSET
SHOW FAILEDSET

DELETE SPARESET

Removes a disk drive from the spareset.

Syntax

DELETE SPARESET *disk-name*

Parameter

disk-name
Identifies the disk drive being deleted from the spareset. Remove only one disk at a time from a spareset.

Example

This command will remove DISK20300 from the spareset:

```
DELETE SPARESET DISK20300
```

See also

DELETE *container-name*
DELETE FAILEDSET
ADD SPARESET
SHOW SPARESET

DELETE *unit-number*

Deletes a logical unit from the controller configuration. The host cannot address deleted units. If the unit's write-back caching feature is enabled, the controller flushes the cached data to the unit's devices before deleting the unit.

Before using the DELETE *unit-number* command, clear any errors with the CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA or CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA commands.

Syntax

DELETE *unit-number*

Parameter

unit-number
Identifies the unit number to be deleted. The *unit-number* is the same name given to the unit when it was created using the ADD UNIT command.

Example

To delete disk unit number D103, enter:

```
DELETE D103
```

See also

ADD UNIT
CLEAR_ERRORS LOST_DATA
CLEAR_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA
DESTROY_PARTITION

DESTROY_PARTITION

Marks the area reserved for a partition as available. The freed area is then consolidated with any adjacent free areas.

Caution Data contained on a partition is lost when you enter the DESTROY_PARTITION command.

You cannot destroy a partition that has been assigned a unit number. First enter the DELETE *unit-number* command to delete the unit using the partition.

After you partition a container, you must initialize it in order to destroy the partitions.

Syntax

DESTROY_PARTITION *container-name* PARTITION=*partition-number*

Parameters

container-name
Identifies the disk or storageset containing the partition to be destroyed. This is the name given to the container when it was created using the ADD command (for example, ADD DISK, ADD STRIPESET, and so forth).

partition-number
Identifies the partition to be destroyed. Use the SHOW *container-name* command to identify the correct partition before carrying out the DESTROY_PARTITION command.

Example

The following example shows how to delete the unit for partition 2 on RAIDset RAID9 and destroy the partition:

```
DELETE D102
DESTROY_PARTITION RAID9 PARTITION=2
```

See also

ADD DISK
ADD STORAGESET
ADD STRIPESET
CREATE_PARTITION
DELETE *unit-number*
SHOW

DIRECTORY

Lists the diagnostics and utilities available on “this controller.”

Syntax

DIRECTORY

Example

The example below shows how to display a directory listing:

```
DIRECTORY

HSUTIL  V82G   D
CHVSN   V82G   D
CLCP    V82G   D
CLONE   V82G   D
CONFIG  V82G   D
DILX    V82G   D
DIRECT  V82G   D
DSTAT   V82G   D
FRUTIL  V82G   D
FMU     V82G   D
VTDPY   V82G   D
```

Note CHVSN and DSTAT are not user utilities. They should be used by DIGITAL authorized service personnel only.

See also

RUN

HELP

Displays a brief explanation of how to use the question mark (?) to obtain help on any command or CLI function. You must precede the question mark with a space.

Syntax

HELP

Example

To display information regarding the HELP command, type:

```
HELP

Help may be requested by typing a question mark (?) at the CLI prompt. This
will print a list of all available commands For further information you may enter
a partial command and type a space followed by a (?) to print a list of all
available options at that point in the command. For example:

SET THIS_CONTROLLER ?

Prints a list of all legal SET THIS_CONTROLLER commands
```

The following example shows how to get help on the SET command using the question mark (?):

```
SET ?

Your options are:

EMU
FAILEDSET
FAILOVER
NOFAILOVER
OTHER_CONTROLLER
THIS_CONTROLLER
Unit number or mirrorset or raidset or device name
```

INITIALIZE

Initializes or destroys metadata on a container. During initialization, a small amount of disk space is reserved for controller metadata and is made inaccessible to the host. Disks made transportable do not contain controller metadata.

Syntax

INITIALIZE *container-name*

Caution The INITIALIZE command destroys all user data on the container unless you enter the NODESTROY switch. The NODESTROY switch is only valid on mirrorsets and striped mirrorsets.

If you initialize a transportable disk, any metadata contained on the disk is destroyed, and the entire disk drive is accessible by the host. The drive does not have the error detection and data security provided by the metadata that is on notransportable disks.

Use the INITIALIZE command when:

- Creating a unit from a newly-installed disk
- Creating a unit from a newly-created RAIDset, stripeset, or mirrorset
- Initializing the data structure of a previously partitioned container

Do not use the INITIALIZE command when:

- Creating a unit from the same disks previously initialized, such as when a RAIDset is moved
- Creating a storageset from existing members
- Adding a RAIDset with the REDUCED switch

Parameters

container-name
Specifies the container to initialize. This is the same name given to the disk or storageset when it was created using the ADD command (for example, ADD DISK, ADD STRIPESET, and so forth).

Switches

CAPACITY=
CYLINDERS=
HEADS=
SECTORS_PER_TRACK=
CAPACITY may be specified 1 to the maximum container size (in blocks); CYLINDERS may be specified 1 to16,777,215; HEADS may be specified 1 to 255; and SECTORS_PER_TRACK may be specified 1 to 255.

Note These are used to set the SCSI parameters reported to the host. They should not be used unless there is a compatibility problem with the existing defaults.

The geometry parameter switches for the INITIALIZE command are ignored when you create partitions. The parameters supplied with the CREATE_PARTITION command are used by the unit.

CHUNKSIZE=DEFAULT (Default)
CHUNKSIZE=n
Specifies the block chunk size to be used for RAIDsets and stripesets. You can specify the chunk block size by entering CHUNKSIZE=*n* or allow the controller to determine the optimal chunk block size by entering CHUNKSIZE=DEFAULT.

Note The CHUNKSIZE switch is only valid with stripesets and raidsets.

The default chunk size for storagesets with less than nine members is 256 blocks, or 128 kilobytes (K). The default chunk size for storagesets with more than nine members is 128 blocks, or 64K. The default values provide optimal storageset performance for a wide variety of applications. A chunk size less than 128 blocks (64K) is not recommended.

Tip Accept the default chunk size setting for most applications. Do not change the default setting unless you are fully aware of the impact to the storageset's performance.

See “Chunk Size,” page 3–47 for information regarding recommended chunk size settings for your application.

DESTROY (Default)
NODESTROY
Controls how the metadata on the initialized container is to be handled.

Note The DESTROY and NODESTROY switches are only valid with mirrorsets and striped mirrorsets.

Specify NODESTROY to preserve forced error metadata during the initialization process. Use the NODESTROY switch only when a unit is to be created from disk drives REDUCED from mirrorsets. This allows the data on the container to be accessed by a mirrorset or striped mirrorset unit. The NODESTROY switch is not valid for RAIDsets and single-disk configurations.

Specify DESTROY to overwrite user data and forced error flags during the initialization.

SAVE_CONFIGURATION
NOSAVE_CONFIGURATION (Default)
Instructs the controller whether to save the controller’s configuration to the container being initialized. See also INITIAL_CONFIGURATION parameter of “SET controller,” page B–103.

The SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch requires only one disk to be initialized with this option. However, more disks may be used, if desired, for redundancy.

Specify SAVE_CONFIGURATION to store a copy of the controller configuration on the container being initialized. A new controller can receive information from a container containing configuration information saved with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch. If you specify SAVE_CONFIGURATION for a multi-device storageset, such as a stripeset, the complete controller configuration information is stored on each disk drive in the storageset.

A disk drive initialized with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch specified has slightly less storage space available for user data.

Specify NOSAVE_CONFIGURATION if you do not want to store a copy of the controller configuration on a container.

See "Backing Up Your Subsystem Configuration," page 3–23, for more information regarding SAVE_CONFIGURATION.

Examples

To initialize container DISK10000 and save a copy of the controller configuration on it, enter the following commands:

```
ADD DISK DISK10000 1 0 0
INITIALIZE DISK10000 SAVE_CONFIGURATION
```

The following example shows sample devices with the SAVE_CONFIGURATION switch enabled:

```
SHOW DEVICES FULL
```

```
Name          Type                      Port Targ  Lun        Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DISK10000     disk                         1    0    0        S2
          DEC      RZ28M    (C) DEC 1003
        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = 20MHZ (synchronous 10.00 MHZ negotiated)
        Size: 4108970 blocks
        Configuration being backed up on this container
DISK30300     disk                         3    3    0        S2
          DEC      RZ28M    (C) DEC 1003
        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = 20MHZ (synchronous 10.00 MHZ negotiated)
        Size: 4108970 blocks
        Configuration being backed up on this container
```

This example shows how to initialize stripeset STRIPE1 with the default chunk size. The chunk size is not specified, so the controller initializes the unit with the default chunk size.

```
ADD DISK DISK10100 1 1 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30100 3 1 0
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 DISK10100 DISK20100 DISK30100
INITIALIZE STRIPE1
```

This example shows how to initialize RAIDset RAID9 with a chunk size of 20:

```
ADD DISK DISK10200 1 2 0
ADD DISK DISK20200 2 2 0
ADD DISK DISK30200 3 2 0
ADD RAIDSET RAID9 DISK10200 DISK20200 DISK30200
INITIALIZE RAID9 CHUNKSIZE=20
```

This example shows how to initialize DISK40400 and preserve the data after it is removed (reduced) from a mirrorset:

```
REDUCE DISK40400
INITIALIZE DISK40400 NODESTROY
```

LOCATE

Indicates the physical location of configured units, storagesets, and devices by flashing the green device fault LED on the front of the storage building block (SBB). The device fault LED flashes once per second until turned off with the LOCATE CANCEL command. The LOCATE command can also be used to test the LED itself.

The device fault LED on a failed device stays on continuously. When located, the device fault LED on a good device flashes. The flashing LED helps to distinguish between located devices and failed devices. The device fault LED on failed devices stays on after the LOCATE CANCEL command is entered.

Syntax

LOCATE *parameter*

Parameters

Only one of the following parameters may be entered with each LOCATE command.

ALL
Causes the green device fault LEDs of all configured devices to flash. You can also specify ALL to test all of the LEDs at once. Enter LOCATE CANCEL to turn off the LEDs.

CANCEL
Turns off all green device fault LEDs turned on with the LOCATE command.

DISKS
Causes the green device fault LEDs of all configured disks to flash. Enter LOCATE CANCEL to turn off the LEDs.

PTL (SCSI-location)
Causes the green device fault LED on the device at the given SCSI location to flash. See “Device PTL Addressing Convention within the Controller,” page 3–33 for an explanation of the PTL addressing naming format.

Not all devices have a device fault LED. Therefore, they do not appear to respond to the LOCATE command.

UNITS
Causes the green device fault LEDs of all devices used by the units to flash. This command is useful to determine which devices are not currently configured into logical units. Enter LOCATE CANCEL to turn off the device fault LEDs.

container-name
Causes the green device fault LEDs on the devices within the *container-name* to flash. If a device name is given, the device's fault LED is turned on. If a storageset name is given, the fault LED on all of the devices assigned to the storageset turns on. Use LOCATE CANCEL to turn off the LEDs.

unit-number
Causes the green device fault LEDs on the devices making up the *unit-number* to flash. Use LOCATE CANCEL to turn off the LEDs.

Examples

This example shows how to cause the green device fault LED on device DISK10000 to flash:

```
LOCATE DISK10000
LOCATE CANCEL
```

This example shows how to cause the device fault LEDs on all of the devices assigned to disk unit number D102 to flash:

```
LOCATE D102
```

This example shows how to cause the device fault LEDs on all configured disk devices to flash:

```
LOCATE DISKS
```

This example shows how to turn off the flashing device fault LEDs on all devices:

```
LOCATE CANCEL
```

MIRROR

Creates a one-member mirrorset from a single disk. This command is used only on disks configured as units or members of a stripeset, then enter the ADD MIRRORSET command to create a mirrorset from disk drives not already members of higher level containers.

After the disk drive is converted to a mirrorset, increase the nominal number of members by entering the SET *mirrorset-name* MEMBERSHIP=*number-of-members* command, then enter the SET *mirrorset-name* REPLACE=*disk-name* command to add more members to the mirrorset.

Syntax

MIRROR *disk-name mirrorset-name*

Parameters

disk-name
Specifies the name of the disk to convert to a one-member mirrorset. The disk must be part of a unit.

mirrorset-name
Assigns a name for the mirrorset.

Tip It is common to name a mirrorset MIRR*n*, where n is a sequentially assigned, unique identifier. Other naming conventions are acceptable, but this naming convention presents to the user both the type of container and its unique identifier.

Switches

COPY=FAST
COPY=NORMAL (Default)
Sets the speed at which the controller copies data to a new member from normal mirrorset members when data is being mirrored to the storageset's disk drives.

Specify COPY=FAST to allow the creation of mirrored data to take precedence over other controller operations. When you specify COPY=FAST, the controller uses more resources to create the mirrored

data, and copying takes less time. However, overall controller performance is reduced during copying.

Specify COPY=NORMAL when operations performed by the controller should take priority over the copy operation. If you specify COPY=NORMAL creating the mirrored data has a minimal impact on performance.

POLICY=BEST_FIT
POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE
NOPOLICY (Default)
Sets the selection criteria the controller uses to choose a replacement member from the spareset when a mirrorset member fails.

Specify POLICY=BEST_FIT to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the mirrorset was initialized). If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset that meets the criteria, the controller selects the disk drive that has the best performance.

Specify POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset resulting in the best performance. The controller attempts to select a disk on a different port than existing members. If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset matching the best performance criteria, the controller selects a disk drive that equals or exceeds the base member size.

Specify NOPOLICY to prevent the controller from automatically replacing a failed disk device. This causes the mirrorset to operate in a reduced state until either POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE or POLICY=BEST_FIT is selected, or a member is manually replaced in the mirrorset. See “SET mirrorset-name,” page B–121.

Example

This example shows how to create a one-member mirrorset from each member of a stripeset. These commands set the nominal number of members in each mirrorset to two and add a second disk to each mirrorset. It is not necessary to initialize the mirrorsets or add them as units; the higher-level structure of the stripeset is carried down to the mirrorsets.

```
ADD DISK DISK10100 1 1 0
ADD DISK DISK20100 2 1 0
ADD DISK DISK30100 3 1 0
ADD STRIPESET STRIPE1 DISK10100 DISK20100 DISK30100
INITIALIZE STRIPE1
ADD UNIT D102 STRIPE1
MIRROR DISK10100 MIRROR1
SET MIRROR1 MEMBERSHIP=2
SET MIRROR1 REPLACE=DISK20200
MIRROR DISK20100 MIRROR2
SET MIRROR2 MEMBERSHIP=2
SET MIRROR2 REPLACE=DISK30200
MIRROR DISK30100 MIRROR3
SET MIRROR3 MEMBERSHIP=2
SET MIRROR3 REPLACE=DISK10200
```

See also

ADD MIRRORSET
REDUCE
SHOW MIRRORSETS
UNMIRROR

POWEROFF

Powers off all disk units in a cabinet and turns off the cabinet power.

Syntax

POWEROFF

Switches

BATTERY _ON
BATTERY_OFF (Default)
Instructs the external cache battery (ECB) charger to turn off or remain on.

Specify BATTERY_ON to keep the ECB charger on after the POWEROFF command is issued.

Specify BATTERY_OFF to turn off the ECB charger after the POWEROFF command is issued.

Note The ECB LEDs will continue to flash in both cases, but the cache module LEDs cease flashing when BATTERY_OFF is chosen.

OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH
NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH (Default)
Instructs the controller to either poweroff the cabinet or remain on depending on the cache flush results.

Specify OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH to override a failed cache flush and poweroff the cabinet.

Specify NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH to prevent a poweroff when the cache flush fails.

SECONDS=nn
As soon as the POWEROFF command is entered, all disk units in the cabinet are set to write-through. When the time interval, as represented by nn seconds, has elapsed, an orderly rundown of all units is started. When all units in the cabinet are successfully rundown, the cabinet power is turned off.

Table B–3 shows what action will be taken depending on the switch settings and the results of the attempted flush:

Table B–3 POWEROFF Switch Settings

Battery Switch	Override Switch	Flush Results	Action
BATTERY_ON	OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Success	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger remains on.
BATTERY_ON	OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Failure	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger remains on.
BATTERY_ON	NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Success	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger remains on.
BATTERY_ON	NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Failure	Nothing is shutdown, ECB charger remains on, user is notified of a bad flush.
BATTERY_OFF	OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Success	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger turned off.
BATTERY_OFF	OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Failure	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger turned off.
BATTERY_OFF	NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Success	Controller and units in cabinet shutdown, ECB charger turned off.
BATTERY_OFF	NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH	Failure	Nothing is shutdown, ECB charger remains on, user is notified of a bad flush.

In dual-redundant mode, if both controllers can't be shutdown, then both controllers and their batteries' chargers remain on.

Example

This example shows how to power off the disk units and the cabinet in 10 seconds (BATTERY_OFF and NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH are the defaults):

```
POWEROFF SECONDS=10
```

REDUCE

Removes member disk drives from mirrorsets and decreases the nominal number of members in the mirrorsets.

Unlike the SET *mirrorset-name* REMOVE=*disk-name* command, the controller does not put reduced members into the failedset. When using the REDUCE command to take a snapshot of a striped mirrorset, you must reduce all mirrorsets with one command. The CLONE utility does this automatically.

The nominal number of members in a mirrorset is determined by the number of members assigned to the mirrorset with the SET *mirrorset-name* MEMBERSHIP=*number-of-members* command or the ADD MIRRORSET *mirrorset-name disk-name1 [disk-nameN]* command—in other words, the number of disks that the mirrorset originally contained before it was reduced. The actual number of members contained in the mirrorset may be less than the nominal number of members if:

- A disk drive is not added back to the mirrorset
- A member remains removed from the mirrorset
- The mirrorset replacement policy switch NOPOLICY is specified with the SET *mirrorset-name* command
- No spare disks exist

The actual number of members in the mirrorset can never be greater than the nominal number of members. The disks to be removed do not need to be members of the same mirrorset. However, the disks must all be part of the same unit (for example, the same striped mirrorset). When a disk is reduced from a mirrorset, the controller:

- Pauses I/O to the unit
- Flushes all of the unit's data from write-back data cache
- Removes the specified disk(s)
- Decreases the nominal number of members of the mirrorset(s) by the number of disk(s) removed from the mirroset(s).

For each reduced mirrorset, there must be at least one remaining normal member after the reduction. If this is not true for all of the *disk-names* specified, the mirrorset is not reduced.

Only normal members can be reduced. A normal member is a mirrorset member whose entire contents are the same as all other normal members within the mirrorset.

Note An error is displayed if you attempt to reduce a mirrorset so that there would not be any normal member remaining.

Syntax

REDUCE *disk-name1 disk-name2 disk-name3...*

Parameters

disk-name1 disk-name2 disk-name3...
Specifies the names of the disk or disks to be removed from the mirrorset or mirrorsets. Multiple members can be removed with the REDUCE command.

Example

This example shows how to remove DISK20100, DISK20200, and DISK40200 from their respective mirrorsets:

SHOW STRIPE1

```
Name    Storageset                          Uses             Used by
------------------------------------------------------------------------
STRIPE1  stripeset                          MIRR1            D104
                                            MIRR2
                                            MIRR3
```

SHOW MIRRORSETS

```
Name          Storageset                    Uses             Used by
------------------------------------------------------------------------
MIRR1         mirrorset                     DISK10100        STRIPE1
                                            DISK20100
MIRR2         mirrorset                     DISK10200        STRIPE1
                                            DISK20200
MIRR3         mirrorset                     DISK30300        STRIPE1
                                            DISK40200
```

REDUCE DISK20100 DISK20500 DISK40200

SHOW MIRRORSETS

```
Name          Storageset                    Uses              Used by
------------------------------------------------------------------------
MIRR1         mirrorset                   DISK10100           STRIPE1
MIRR2         mirrorset                   DISK10200           STRIPE1
MIRR3         mirrorset                   DISK30300           STRIPE1
```

See also

ADD MIRRORSET
MIRROR
RUN CLONE
SHOW MIRRORSET
SET *mirrorset-name*

RENAME

Renames a specified container or a specified host connection.

Syntax

RENAME *old-name new-name*

Parameters

old-name
Specifies the existing name of the container or host connection.

new-name
Assigns the new name for the container or the host connection.

See “Command Syntax,” page B–5, for information regarding container naming rules.

A name of a host connection can be any combination of letters and numbers, with the one restriction that it cannot take the form of the default assigned by the controller (!NEWCONnn).

Note Units may not be renamed.

Example

This example shows how to rename DISK10000 to MYDISK:

```
SHOW DISKS
Name            Type          Port Targ Lun         Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------
DISK10000       disk             1    0    0           D100
DISK10100       disk             1    1    0           D101

RENAME DISK10000 MYDISK
SHOW DISKS
Name            Type           Port Targ Lun         Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------
MYDISK           disk            1    0    0           D100
DISK10100        disk            1    1    0           D101
```

RESTART *controller*

Flushes all user data from the specified controller's write-back cache and restarts the controller.

Syntax

RESTART *controller*

Parameters

controller
The *controller* parameter indicates which controller is to be restarted. Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER or THIS_CONTROLLER.

Switches

IGNORE_ERRORS
NOIGNORE_ERRORS (Default)
Controls the reaction of the controller based on the status of write-back cache.

Caution The IGNORE_ERRORS switch might cause the controller to keep unflushed data in the write-back cache until it restarts and is able to write the data to devices. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Specify IGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller to restart even if the data within write-back cache cannot be written to the devices.

Specify NOIGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller to not restart if the data within write-back cache cannot be written to the devices.

IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN (Default)
Instructs the controller whether to flush the write-back cache or not.

Caution The IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN switch instructs the controller to immediately shutdown, without regard to any data contained within write-back cache. See "Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching," page 1–21 for considerations when implementing write-back cache. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Specify IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to instruct the controller to restart immediately without flushing data from the write-back cache to devices.

Specify NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to instruct the controller not to restart without checking for online devices or before all data has been flushed from write-back cache to the devices.

Examples

This example shows how to restart "this controller":

```
RESTART THIS_CONTROLLER
```

This example shows how to restart the "other controller":

```
RESTART OTHER_CONTROLLER
```

See also

SELFTEST *controller*
SHUTDOWN *controller*

RETRY_ERRORS UNWRITEABLE_DATA

Causes the controller to attempt to write previously unwriteable data from the write-back cache to the devices. If a container fails, preventing the data in write-back cache to be written to the container, an unwriteable data error is reported. If possible, correct the condition that caused the unwriteable data and try the write operation again. No data is lost if the retry fails.

Syntax

RETRY_ERRORS *unit-number* UNWRITEABLE_DATA

Parameter

unit-number
Identifies the unit number to which the data contained in write-back cache tries to write. The unit-number is the same name given to the unit when it was created using the ADD UNIT command.

Example

This example shows how to retry writing the cached data previously marked unwriteable to disk unit D103:

```
RETRY_ERRORS D103 UNWRITEABLE_DATA
```

See also

CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* UNWRITEABLE_DATA

RUN

Runs a diagnostic or utility program on “this controller.” Diagnostic and utility programs only run on “this controller.”

Syntax

RUN *program-name*

Parameter

program-name

The *program-name* parameter specifies the name of the diagnostic or utility program to be run. The following programs can currently be run:

- CHVSN—This is not a user utility. This utility may be used by DIGITAL authorized service personnel only.
- CLCP—A utility used to load updated software code or patches. See “Using CLCP to Install, Delete, and List Software Patches,” page 6–6 for more information regarding this utility.
- CLONE—A utility used to automate the process of mirroring units to create a snapshot copy of host unit data. See “Cloning Data for Backup,” page 3–19, for more information regarding this utility.
- CONFIG—A utility used to locate and add devices to the controller configuration. CONFIG may be run anytime new devices are added to the subsystem. See “Adding Several Disk Drives at a Time,” page 3–55 for more information regarding this utility.
- DILX—A utility used to test and verify the controller’s operation with attached storage devices under a high or low I/O load. Run DILX (disk inline exerciser) only when there is no activity on the controller. The total I/O load is handled by the controller, bypassing the host.

  The DILX utility has two modes, an autoconfigure mode, and a standard mode.

Caution Run the DILX utility in the autoconfigure mode only at initial installations. When write operations are enabled, the DILX utility may overwrite existing data.

The autoconfigure mode is the most thorough mode and allows you to:

- Automatically test all of the disk units configured
- Automatically perform thorough tests on all units with writes enabled

The standard mode is more flexible and allows you to:

- Test disks you select
- Perform tests in read-only mode or write-only mode
- Provide run time and performance summary options
- Can be run in read-only mode

- DIRECT—A command used to display a list of all executable diagnostic or utility programs.
- DSTAT—This is not a user utility. This utility may be used by DIGITAL authorized service personnel only.
- FMU—A fault management utility used to control several spontaneous errors. FMU also displays information regarding the most recent controller and memory system failure.
- FRUTIL—A utility used when replacing a failed controller, external cache battery, or cache module.
- HSUTIL—A utility used to format a disk device or to download new firmware to a disk device.
- VTDPY—A utility used to display the current controller state, performance data, processor utilization, host post activity and status, device state, logical unit state, cache performance, and I/O performance.

See Chapter 4, "Troubleshooting," for more information regarding the above utilities.

Example

This example shows how to start the DILX diagnostic program:

```
RUN DILX
.
.
.
```

See also

DIRECTORY

SELFTEST *controller*

Flushes the data from the specified controller's write-back cache (if present) and shuts down the controller. It then restarts the controller in self-test mode. Press the controller reset (//) button to take the controller out of self-test mode.

Syntax

SELFTEST *controller*

Parameters

controller
The *controller* parameter indicates which controller is to perform the self-test program. Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER or THIS_CONTROLLER.

Switches

IGNORE_ERRORS
NOIGNORE_ERRORS (Default)
Instruct the controller how to respond to write-back cache errors.

Caution The IGNORE_ERRORS switch might cause data to remain in write-back cache. See "Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching," page 1–21 for considerations when implementing write-back cache. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Specify IGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller to ignore any write-back cache errors. Such errors can result from data contained within write-back cache unable to be written to the devices or lost data errors.

Specify NOIGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller not to run the self-test program if the write-back cache errors are detected.

IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN (Default)
Instructs the controller whether to flush the write-back cache or not.

Caution The IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN switch instructs the controller to immediately shut down, without regard to any data contained within write-back cache. See "Fault-Tolerance for Write-Back Caching," page 1–21 for considerations when implementing write-back cache. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Select IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to instruct the controller to run the self-test program immediately without checking for online devices or without flushing user data from write-back cache to devices.

Select NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to instruct the controller to flush data from write-back cache before running the self-test program.

Examples

This example shows how to start the self-test program on "this controller:"

```
SELFTEST THIS_CONTROLLER
```

This example shows how to run the self-test program on the "other controller," even if the "other controller" cannot flush all data from the write-back cache:

```
SELFTEST OTHER_CONTROLLER IGNORE_ERRORS
```

See also

RESTART *controller*
SHUTDOWN *controller*

SET *connection-name*

Changes the operating characteristics of a host connection.

The SET *connection-name* command changes the operating parameters of the specified host connection. A host connection is a specific instance of one host connected to one port of one controller through one host adapter

Syntax

SET *connection-name*

Parameters

connection-name
This is the name of the host connection. When a new host-adapter-port-controller connection is made, the new connection is given a default connection name. The default connection name is !NEWCONnn, where nn is an decimal number. The connection name can be changed through the RENAME command.

Switches

UNIT_OFFSET=n
Offset is a decimal value that establishes the beginning of the range of units that a host connection can access. It defines and restricts host connection access to a contiguous group of unit numbers.

If no value is specified for the UNIT_OFFSET switch, then host connections on controller port 1 have an offset of 0 and host connections on controller port 2 have an offset of 100. These are the default offset values.

The relationship between LUN number, unit number, and offset is as follows:

- LUN number = unit number - offset.
- Logical unit number or LUN number = the logical unit number presented to the host connection.

- Unit number = the number assigned to the unit in the ADD UNIT command. This is the number by which the unit is known internally to the controllers.

OPERATING_SYSTEM=OS_name
Specifies the operating system of the host. The choices are:

- DIGITAL_UNIX
- IBM
- SNI
- SUN
- VMS
- WINNT

See also

ADD CONNECTIONS
ADD UNIT
DELETE *connections*
RENAME

SET *controller*

Changes parameters on the specified controller.

Syntax

SET *controller*

Parameter

controller
Indicates which controller is to be set. Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER or THIS_CONTROLLER.

Switches

Table B–4 lists the switches available with this command. Descriptions of the switches follow the table.

Table B–4 SET *controller* Switches

Switch	Values
ALLOCATION_CLASS	decimal number
CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER	1–65535 sec, 10 (default)
CACHE_UPS NOCACHE_UPS	None
COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN	None
IDENTIFIER NOIDENTIFIER	decimal number
MIRRORED_CACHE NOMIRRORED_CACHE	None
NODE_ID	assigned during manufacturing
PORT_1_ALPA PORT_2_ALPA	0-EF (hexadecimal value)
PORT_1_TOPOLOGY PORT_2_TOPOLOGY	LOOP_HARD LOOP_SOFT OFFLINE
PROMPT	1–16 characters
SCSI_VERSION	SCSI-2 (default) SCSI-3
TERMINAL_PARITY NOTERMINAL_PARITY	odd, even
TERMINAL_SPEED	4800, 9600, 19200
TIME	dd–mmm–yyy:hh:mm:ss

ALLOCATION_CLASS
Allocation class is a unique identification number assigned to the controller pair under certain operating systems. In Digital open VMS, this is a 2-byte number; for Digital UNIX, it is a 4-byte number. It is reported in response to the SCSI inquiry command and is the same for all units connected to one or both controllers. It allows the user to place a unique number in the allocation class value (n). The allocation class value allows the host to identify the controllers that are a matched dual-redundant pair. This number should be unique for every pair of dual-redundant controllers in the cluster.

Note This value must not be zero (default) in dual-redundant configurations in host systems that implement allocation class. A zero value in this configuration causes the operating system to disable failover between the controller pair. Some operating systems do not implement allocation class, in which case the default of zero has no meaning.

CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER=n
CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER=10 (Default)
Specifies how many seconds (1–65535) of idle time may elapse before the write-back cache flushes its entire contents to a given device or RAIDset. The default setting is 10 seconds. When changed, the new value entered for this switch takes effect immediately.

CACHE_UPS
NOCACHE_UPS (Default)
Specifies whether the controller should perform regular battery condition checks. When changed, you must restart both controllers in order for the new setting to take effect.

Specify CACHE_UPS if your storage subsystem power is supported by an uninterruptable power supply (UPS). The controller does not check the condition of the cache batteries and ignores the battery's state. This causes RAIDsets and mirrorsets to always be available, regardless of the condition of the cache batteries.

Caution Setting CACHE_UPS without having a UPS or similar backup system in place may result in data loss if power is interrupted.

Specify NOCACHE_UPS to instruct the controller to perform regular cache battery checks and evaluate the condition of the cache batteries.

Setting the CACHE_UPS switch for either controller sets the CACHE_UPS switch for both controllers.

COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN
NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN (Default)
Enable or disables the virtual LUN used with the StorageWorks Command Console. When changed, the new setting for this switch takes effect immediately.

Note This switch enables (COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN) and disables (NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN) the CCL in SCSI-2 mode only. This switch has no effect in SCSI-3 mode.

Select COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN to enable the virtual LUN. Select NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN to disable the virtual LUN.

IDENTIFIER
NOIDENTIFIER
Identifier is an alternative way (other than worldwide name) for some operating systems to identify the CCL. It is a decimal number.

MIRRORED_CACHE
NOMIRRORED_CACHE (Default)
Enables the mirrored-write-back-data cache feature on dual-redundant controllers. When changed, both controllers restart for the new switch setting to take effect.

The following tasks are performed when the NOMIRRORED_CACHE switch is specified: Both controllers must be operational before this command is accepted.

- Data in write-back cache is flushed when cache is configured in non-mirrored mode.
- Enables mirrored write-back cache on both controllers.
- If an invalid cache configuration exists within the cache modules, an error is generated.

Issue this switch through only one controller. The controller must contain a valid cache configuration before specifying this switch. See Chapter 2 for rules regarding valid cache configurations. The controllers automatically restart when this switch is specified.

Note All unwritten write-cached data is automatically flushed from cache before restart when the MIRRORED_CACHE switch is specified. Depending on the amount of data to be flushed, this command may take several minutes to complete before the controller is restarted.

The NOMIRRORED_CACHE switch disables mirror mode. Data in write-back cache is flushed when this switch is entered from mirrored mode. This switch disables mirrored write-back cache on both controllers. Therefore, this switch is only to be issued through one controller. The controller must contain a valid cache configuration before this switch is assigned. Unlike going from nonmirrored mode to mirrored mode, going from mirrored mode to nonmirrored mode is permitted with a failed cache module. The controller automatically restarts when this switch is specified.

NODE_ID=nnnn-nnnn-nnnn-nnnn checksum
Sets the subsystem worldwide name (node ID). If a situation occurs that requires you to reset the subsystem worldwide ID (node ID), use the name and checksum that appear on the sticker on the frame into which your controller is inserted.

Caution Each subsystem has its own unique worldwide name (node ID). If you attempt to set the subsystem worldwide name to a name other than the one that came with the subsystem, the data on the subsystem will not be accessible. Never set two subsystems to the same worldwide name; data corruption will occur.

PORT_1_ALPA=
PORT_2_ALPA=
Specifies the hexadecimal arbitrated loop physical address (ALPA) for the host ports. Use this switch only when LOOP_HARD is specified for PORT_1_TOPOLOGY or PORT_2_TOPOLOGY. The range of addresses allowed is 0-EF (hexadecimal). The default value is 69.

PORT_1_TOPOLOGY=LOOP_HARD
PORT_1_TOPOLOGY=LOOP_SOFT
PORT_1_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE
PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=LOOP_HARD
PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=LOOP_SOFT
PORT_2_TOPOLOGY=OFFLINE
Indicates whether the user or controller selects the ALPA for a host port, or whether the port is to be set offline. LOOP_HARD allows you to pick the ALPA. LOOP_SOFT requests the controller to pick the ALPA. OFFLINE sets the host port offline. Specify OFFLINE for a port when it will not be used.

PROMPT="new prompt"
Specifies a 1- to 16-character prompt displayed when the controller's CLI prompts for input. Only printable ASCII characters and spaces are valid. The new prompt name must be enclosed within quotes. When changed, the new text entered for this switch takes effect immediately.

SCSI_VERSION=SCSI-2 (Default)
SCSI_VERSION=SCSI-3
Specifies the host protocol to use; requires operating system support. SCSI-3 is limited SCSI-3. It also specifies how the command console LUN is handled. The command console LUN (CCL) presents to the GUI a virtual LUN through which it communicates with the controller.

SCSI-2 specifies that the CCL is not fixed at a particular location, but floats depending on the configuration.

SCSI-3 specifies that the LLC is fixed at LUN 0. The SCSI device-type returned to the host is array controller.

Changes to this switch take place at the next controller restart.

TERMINAL_PARITY=ODD
TERMINAL_PARITY=EVEN
NOTERMINAL_PARITY (Default)
Specifies the parity with which data is transmitted and received. When changed, the new setting for this switch takes effect immediately.

TERMINAL_SPEED=baud_rate
TERMINAL_SPEED=9600 (Default)
Sets the terminal transmission and reception speed (**baud** rate) to 4800, 9600 (default), or 19200 baud. When changed, the new value entered for this switch takes effect immediately.

TIME=dd–mmm–yyyy:hh:mm:ss
Sets the date and time. The time is set on both controllers in a dual-redundant configuration.When changed, the new value entered for this switch takes effect immediately.

Examples

This example shows how to change the other controller's CLI prompt:

```
SET OTHER_CONTROLLER PROMPT=CONTROLLER "B"
```

See also

SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER
SHOW OTHER_CONTROLLER

SET *device-name*

Changes the transportable characteristics and the maximum data transfer rate between the controller and the specified device.

Syntax

SET *device-name*

Parameter

device-name
Specifies the name of the device to change. This can be a previously named device, disk, passthrough device, or container.

Switches

TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=ASYNCHRONOUS
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=20MHZ (Default)
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=10MHZ
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=5MHZ
Specifies the maximum data transfer rate for the controller to use in communicating with the device. You may need to limit the transfer rate to accommodate long cables between the controllers and the device.

TRANSPORTABLE
NOTRANSPORTABLE (Default)
Indicates whether a disk can be accessed exclusively by StorageWorks controllers.

Set the TRANSPORTABLE switch for disks only.

Storagesets cannot be made transportable. Specify NOTRANSPORTABLE for all disks used in RAIDsets, stripesets, mirrorsets, and sparesets. Transportable disks do not contain any metadata or restricted areas on the disk. Therefore, transportable disks forfeit the advantage metadata provides. Transportable disks can be moved to a non-StorageWorks environment with their data intact.

If you specify the NOTRANSPORTABLE switch and there is no metadata on the unit, the unit must be initialized. If you specify TRANSPORTABLE for a disk that was originally initialized as a NOTRANSPORTABLE, you should initialize the disk.

Note DIGITAL recommends you avoid specifying TRANSPORTABLE unless transportability of the device or media is imperative and there is no other way to accomplish moving the data.

Examples

This example shows how to set the data transfer rate of DISK20000 to 5MHz:

```
SET DISK20000 TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED=5MHZ
```

This example shows how to set DISK10300 to transportable:

```
SET DISK10300 TRANSPORTABLE
```

See also

ADD DISK
SHOW DISKS

SET EMU

Sets operating parameters for the environmental monitoring unit (EMU).

Syntax

SET EMU

Switches

The SENSOR and FANSPEED switches control both the master and slave EMU settings. The EMU within the primary cabinet (master) instructs the EMUs within the other cabinets to operate at the same SENSOR and FANSPEED settings to which the master EMU is set.

SENSOR_1_SETPOINT=nn
SENSOR_2_SETPOINT=nn
SENSOR_3_SETPOINT=nn
SENSOR_x_SETPOINT=35 (Default)
Sets the acceptable temperatures (in Celsius) at which the subsystem operates. Sensor 1 and Sensor 2 set the maximum operating temperature for the primary subsystem cabinet. Sensor 3 sets the maximum operating temperature for the EMU unit. The allowable range for the setpoint is 0°C (32°F) to 49°C (120°F). The EMU determines the default setpoint for all three sensors.

Table B–5 lists the valid EMU set-point temperatures in both Fahrenheit and Celsius.

Table B–5 EMU Set Point Temperatures

ºC	ºF	ºC	ºF	ºC	ºF	ºC	ºF	ºC	ºF
0	32	10	50	20	68	30	86	40	104
1	34	11	52	21	70	31	88	41	106
2	46	12	54	22	72	32	90	42	108
3	37	13	55	23	73	33	91	43	109
4	39	14	57	24	75	34	93	44	111
5	41	15	59	25	77	35	95	45	113
6	43	16	61	26	79	36	97	46	115
7	45	17	63	27	81	37	99	47	117
8	46	18	64	28	82	38	100	48	118
9	48	19	66	29	84	39	102	49	120

If any of the setpoints assigned to a slave EMU do not match the corresponding setpoints assigned to the master EMU, the slave EMU settings change to match the corresponding master EMU settings.

Refer to the enclosure documentation for detailed information about setting the EMU temperature set points.

FANSPEED=HIGH
FANSPEED=AUTOMATIC (Default)
Sets the speed at which the fan operates.

Select FANSPEED=HIGH to force the fans in all connected cabinets to operate at high speed continuously.

Select FANSPEED=AUTOMATIC to allow the EMU to control the fan speed for the fans in all connected cabinets.

The EMU instructs the fans to operate at high speed when any of the temperature setpoints are exceeded or when one or more fans are not functioning.

Examples

This example shows how to set EMU sensor number 2 to 34°C:

```
SET EMU SENSOR_2_SETPOINT=34
```

This example shows how to set the EMU fan to operate at high speed:

```
SET EMU FANSPEED=HIGH
```

See also

SHOW

SET FAILEDSET

Changes the automatic replacement policy for the failedset.

Syntax

SET FAILEDSET

Switches

AUTOSPARE
NOAUTOSPARE
Specifies the policy to be used by the controller when a disk drive is physically replaced in the failedset.

Specify AUTOSPARE to instruct the controller to automatically move devices physically replaced in the failedset into the spareset.

Specify NOAUTOSPARE to instruct the controller to leave devices physically replaced in the failedset. The device, though replaced, remains in the failedset until it is manually removed with the DELETE FAILEDSET command.

In most circumstances, a disk physically replaced into the failedset is functional and contains no metadata—that is, a new, initialized device. If you specify the AUTOSPARE switch when a disk is physically replaced in the failedset, the controller checks to see if any metadata is present. If the controller detects metadata, the disk remains in the failedset. If the controller does not detect metadata, the controller automatically moves the disk from the failedset to the spareset. Now a member of the spareset, the disk is available for any mirrorset or RAIDset requiring a replacement member. If the automatic initialization fails, the disk remains in the failedset.

Disks that you plan to use for AUTOSPARE must not have valid metadata on them. If you suspect a disk does have metadata on it (it was used in a stripeset or was initialized as NOTRANSPORTABLE) you must use the following steps to make the disk available as a spareset replacement disk:

These steps use DISK10000 as an example.

1. Delete all containers to which the disk belongs.
2. Make the disk transportable.

   SET DISK10000 TRANSPORTABLE.
3. Initialize the disk.

   INIT DISK10000
4. Delete the disk.

   DELETE DISK10000
5. Move DISK10000 to the failedset's vacant slot.

Example

This example shows how to enable the automatic spare feature:

SET FAILEDSET AUTOSPARE

This example shows how to disable the automatic spare feature:

SET FAILEDSET NOAUTOSPARE

See also

SHOW FAILEDSET

SET FAILOVER

Configures both controllers to operate in a dual-redundant, transparent failover, configuration. This allows both controllers to access the storage devices, providing controller fault-tolerant data processing. If one of the two controllers fails, the devices and any cache attached to the failed controller become available to and accessible through the other controller.

Note The controllers must be present and placed in non-failover mode by entering the SET NOFAILOVER command before they can be set to failover mode.

Syntax

SET FAILOVER COPY=*controller*

Parameters

THIS_CONTROLLER
OTHER_CONTROLLER
Specifies which controller contains the source configuration for the copy. The companion controller receiving the configuration information restarts after the command is carried out.

Caution Make sure you know which controller has the good configuration information before entering this command.The device configuration information from the controller specified by the *controller* parameter overwrites the information on the companion controller.

Specify THIS_CONTROLLER to copy the device configuration information from “this controller” to “other controller.”

Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER to copy the device configuration information from “other controller” to “this controller.”

Due to the amount of information being passed from one controller to the other, this command may take up to one minute to complete.

Example

This example shows how to set the controllers in a dual-redundant configuration and copy the configuration information from "this controller" to "other controller:"

```
SET FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER
```

See also

SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER
SET NOFAILOVER
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER

SET *mirrorset-name*

Changes the characteristics of a mirrorset, including the addition and removal of members.

Syntax

SET *mirrorset-name*

Parameter

mirrorset-name
Specifies the name of the mirrorset to modify. This is the same name given to the mirrorset when it was created with the ADD MIRRORSET command.

Switches

COPY=FAST
COPY=NORMAL (Default)
Sets the speed at which the controller copies data to a new member from normal mirrorset members when data is being mirrored to the storageset's disk drives.

Specify COPY=FAST to allow the creation of mirrored data to take precedence over other controller operations. When you specify COPY=FAST, the controller uses more resources to create the mirrored data, and copying takes less time. However, overall controller performance is reduced during copying.

Specify COPY=NORMAL when operations performed by the controller should take priority over the copy operation. If you specify COPY=NORMAL creating the mirrored data has a minimal impact on performance.

MEMBERSHIP=*number-of-members*
Sets the nominal number of mirrorset members to the number you specify for the *number-of-members* value. A maximum of six members can be specified.

Note No other switches can be set when you specify the MEMBERSHIP switch.

If you increase the number of members and specify a replacement policy with the POLICY= switch, the controller automatically adds disk drives from the spareset to the mirrorset until the new number of members is reached, or there are no more suitable disk drives in the spareset.

If you increase the number of members and the NOPOLICY switch is specified, the REPLACE=*disk-name* switch must be specified to bring the mirrorset up to the new nominal number of members.

You cannot set the nominal number of members lower than the actual number of members. Specify the REMOVE switch to reduce the number of disk drives from the mirrorset.

REMOVE=disk-name
Instructs the controller to remove a member from an existing mirrorset. The disk drive specified by *disk-name* is removed from the mirrorset specified by *mirrorset-name*. The removed disk drive is added to the failedset.

Note No other switches can be set when the REMOVE= switch is specified.

If the mirrorset won't have a normal or normalizing member remaining after you remove the disk drive, the controller reports an error and no action is taken. A normal or normalizing member is a mirrorset member whose contents are the same as all other normal members.

For each reduced mirrorset, there must be at least one remaining normal member after the reduction.

Unlike the REDUCE command, the REMOVE switch does not change the nominal number of members in the mirrorset. If the mirrorset has a replacement policy and there are acceptable disk drives in the spareset, the controller adds disk drives from the spareset to the mirrorset to make the actual number of members equal to the nominal number of members.

Note Normalizing members exist only when you first create a mirrorset or when you clear lost data on a mirrored unit. The controller recognizes the member as normal, and all other original mirrorset members as "normalizing." New data that is written to the mirrorset is written to all members. The controller copies the data existing before the mirrorset was created on the normal member to the normalizing members. The controller recognizes the normalizing members as normal when the mirrorset member's blocks are all the same.

REPLACE=disk-name
Instructs the controller to add a disk member to an existing mirrorset if the following conditions are met:

- The replacement policy is set to NOPOLICY
- The mirrorset is missing at least one member

If these conditions are met, the disk drive specified by *disk-name* is added to the mirrorset specified by *mirrorset-name*. The nominal number of members does not change.

The disk name used is the name given to a disk when it was added to the configuration with the ADD DISK command.

Note Do not specify any other switches when the REPLACE= switch is specified.

POLICY=BEST_FIT
POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (Default)
NOPOLICY
Sets the selection criteria the controller uses to choose a replacement disk from the spareset when a mirrorset member fails.

Specify POLICY=BEST_FIT to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the mirrorset was initialized). If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset that meet the criteria, the controller selects a disk drive with the best performance.

Specify POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset with the best performance. The controller

attempts to select a disk on a different port than existing mirrorset members. If there is more than one disk drive in the spareset matching the best performance criteria, the controller selects the disk drive that equals or exceeds the base member size of the mirrorset.

Specify NOPOLICY to prevent the controller from automatically replacing a failed disk device. The mirrorset operates in a reduced state until a POLICY=BEST_FIT or POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE is selected, or a member is manually placed in the mirrorset.

READ_SOURCE=disk-name
READ_SOURCE=LEAST_BUSY (Default)
READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN
Selects the mirrorset member used by the controller to satisfy a read request.

Specify the READ_SOURCE=*disk-name* of a specific member to which you want the controller to direct all read requests. If the member fails out of the mirrorset, the controller selects the first normal member it finds to satisfy its read requests.

Specify READ_SOURCE=LEAST_BUSY to direct read requests to the mirrorset member with the least amount of work in its queue. If multiple members have equally short queues, the controller queries these members for each read request as it would when READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN is specified.

Specify READ_SOURCE=ROUND_ROBIN to sequentially direct read requests to each mirrorset member. The controller equally queries all normal members for each read request.

Examples

This example shows how to change the replacement policy of mirrorset MIRR1 to BEST_FIT:

```
SET MIRR1 POLICY=BEST_FIT
```

This example shows how to remove member DISK30000 from mirrorset MIRR1 created above. If the mirrorset has a replacement policy and an acceptable disk drive is in the spareset, the controller automatically adds the spare disk drive to the mirrorset.

```
SET MIRR1 REMOVE=DISK30000
```

This example shows how to add disk DISK30200 to the mirrorset MIRR1:

```
SET MIRR1 REPLACE=DISK30200
```

A copy operation begins immediately on DISK30200.

See also

ADD MIRRORSET
MIRROR
REDUCE
SHOW MIRRORSET
UNMIRROR

SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER

Places “this controller” and the “other controller” into a dual-redundant (failover) configuration within a multiple-bus environment. This allows both controllers to access the storage devices and provide greater throughput. If one controller fails, the devices and cache attached to the failed controller become available to and accessible through the remaining controller. Both controllers must be configured for nofailover before you enter the SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER command.

Note Partitioned storagesets and partitioned single-disk units cannot function in multiple bus failover dual-redundant configurations. Because they are not supported, you must delete your partitions before configuring the controllers for multiple bus failover.

Syntax

SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER COPY=*controller*

Parameters

controller

Specifies which controller (“this controller” or “other controller”) contains the source configuration for the copy. The companion controller receiving the configuration information restarts after the command is carried out.

Caution Make sure you know which controller has the good configuration information before entering this command. The device configuration information from the controller specified by the *controller* parameter overwrites the information on the companion controller.

Specify THIS_CONTROLLER to copy the device configuration information from the “this controller” to “other controller.”

Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER to copy the device configuration information from the “other controller” to “this controller.”

Due to the amount of information being passed from one controller to the other, this command may take up to one minute to complete.

Example

This example shows how to configure two controllers to operate in dual-redundant mode within a multiple bus environment:

```
SET THIS_CONTROLLER ID=(0,1,2,3)
RESTART THIS_CONTROLLER
SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER COPY=THIS_CONTROLLER
```

The configuration on "this controller" is automatically copied to the "other controller" when you issue the SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER COPY command. If you want to prefer specific units to specific controllers, use the following command after setting multiple bus failover:

```
SET D100 PREFERRED=THIS_CONTROLLER
SET D101 PREFERRED=OTHER_CONTROLLER
```

See also

SET FAILOVER
SET NOFAILOVER
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER

SET NOFAILOVER

Reconfigures both controllers to operate in a non-dual-redundant (non-failover) configuration. Immediately after entering this command, remove one controller from the shelf because the sharing of devices is not supported by nonredundant controllers.

Note SET NOFAILOVER and SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER have the same effect. Either command exits from transparent or multiple bus failover mode.

It is recommended that both controllers be present when this command is carried out. Otherwise, the controllers become misconfigured with each other, requiring additional steps later to allow the "other controller" to be configured for failover.

This command affects both controllers, regardless of the controller on which the command is carried out. All units accessed through the "other controller" failover to "this controller" and the "other controller" is shut down. No configuration information is lost when the SET NOFAILOVER command is carried out.

Syntax

SET NOFAILOVER

Switches

DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA (Default)
Instructs the controller how to handle data contained within write-back cache. These switches have no effect if both controllers are operational. Select one of these switches to indicate how the controller is to handle data contained in cache if one of the controllers fails before it can properly shut down with the SET NOFAILOVER or SHUTDOWN commands.

Under some circumstances, the data in a failed controller's write-back cache may not fail over to the operating controller's write-back cache. For example, cache data will not failover if the operating controller has a failed cache battery because of the risk of data loss if the power is interrupted.

Specify NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA to leave the unwritten data intact in the failed controller's write-back cache. When the failed controller is replaced and placed into service, the write-back cache data is flushed to the appropriate devices.

Specify DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA to reconfigure the operational controller before replacing the failed controller. The unwritten data of the failed controller may reference devices not present in the new configuration. If you do not destroy the old configuration data, it may conflict with the new configuration and cause the subsystem to behave unpredictably.

Caution Unflushed data cannot be recovered after it is destroyed.

Example

This example shows how to terminate failover mode between two controllers in a dual-redundant configuration:

```
SET NOFAILOVER
```

See also

SET FAILOVER

SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER

Reconfigures both controllers to operate in a non-dual-redundant (non-failover) configuration. Immediately after entering this command, remove one controller from the shelf because the sharing of devices is not supported by nonredundant controllers.

Note SET NOFAILOVER and SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER have the same effect. Either command exits from transparent or multiple bus failover mode.

It is recommended that both controllers be present when this command is carried out. Otherwise, the controllers become misconfigured with each other, requiring additional steps later to allow the "other controller" to be configured for failover.

This command affects both controllers, regardless of the controller on which the command is carried out. All units accessed through the "other controller" failover to "this controller" and the "other controller" is shut down. No configuration information is lost when the SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER command is carried out.

Syntax

SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER

Switches

DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA (Default)
Instructs the controller how to handle data contained within write-back cache. These switches have no effect if both controllers are operational. Select one of these switches to indicate how the controller is to handle data contained in cache if one of the controllers fails before it can properly shut down with the SET NOFAILOVER, SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER, or SHUTDOWN commands.

Under some circumstances, the data in a failed controller's write-back cache may not fail over to the operating controller's write-back cache. For example, cache data will not failover if the operating controller has a failed cache battery because of the risk of data loss if the power is interrupted.

Specify NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA to leave the unwritten data intact in the failed controller's write-back cache. When the failed controller is replaced and placed into service, the write-back cache data is flushed to the appropriate devices.

Specify DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA to reconfigure the operational controller before replacing the failed controller. The unwritten data of the failed controller may reference devices not present in the new configuration. If you do not destroy the old configuration data, it may conflict with the new configuration and cause the subsystem to behave unpredictably.

Caution Unflushed data cannot be recovered after it is destroyed.

Example

This example shows how to terminate failover mode between two controllers in a dual-redundant configuration and destroy any cache data that remains in either controller's cache:

```
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA
```

See also

SET FAILOVER
SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER
SET NOFAILOVER

SET *RAIDset-name*

Changes the characteristics of a RAIDset.

Syntax

SET *RAIDset-name*

Parameters

RAIDset-name
Specifies the name of the RAIDset to modify. This is the name used with the ADD UNIT command to identify the RAIDset as a host-addressable unit.

Switches

POLICY=BEST_FIT
POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE (Default)
NOPOLICY
Specifies the replacement policy to use when a member within the RAIDset fails.

Specify BEST_FIT to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset that equals or exceeds the base member size (smallest disk drive at the time the RAIDset was initialized). If more than one disk drive in the spareset is the correct size, the controller selects a disk drive having the best performance.

Specify POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE to choose a replacement disk drive from the spareset resulting in the best performance of the RAIDset. The controller attempts to select a disk on a different port than existing members. If more than one disk drive in the spareset matches the best performance criteria, the controller selects a disk drive that equals or exceeds the base member size of the RAIDset.

Specify NOPOLICY to prevent the controller from automatically replacing a failed disk device. This causes the RAIDset to operate in a reduced state until either POLICY=BEST_PERFORMANCE or POLICY=BEST_FIT is selected, or a member is manually replaced in the mirrorset.

RECONSTRUCT=FAST
RECONSTRUCT=NORMAL (Default)
Sets the speed at which the controller reconstructs the data on the new RAIDset member replacing a failed member.

Specify NORMAL to balance other controller operations against the reconstruct operation. The controller uses relatively few resources to perform the reconstruct, and there is little impact on performance.

Specify FAST when the reconstruct operation must take precedence over other controller operations. The controller uses more resources to perform the reconstruction. Reconstruction takes less time, but overall controller performance is reduced during the reconstruction.

REMOVE=disk-name
Instructs the controller to remove a member from an existing RAIDset. The disk drive specified by *disk-name* is removed from the RAIDset specified by *RAIDset-name*. The removed disk drive is added to the failedset.

If a RAIDset is already in a reduced state, an error is displayed and the command is rejected. If a replacement policy is specified, the replacement is taken from the spareset to replace the removed member using the policy specified.

If the NOPOLICY switch is specified with the SET RAIDset command, the RAIDset continues to operate in a reduced state until a replacement policy is specified or the REPLACE switch is specified. See the REPLACE=*disk-name* switch for information on manually replacing a RAIDset member. See the POLICY and NOPOLICY switches for information regarding setting a policy for automatic member replacement.

Note Do not specify other switches when you use the REMOVE= switch.

REPLACE=disk-name
Instructs the controller to add a disk member to an existing RAIDset if the following conditions are met:

- The replacement policy is set to NOPOLICY.
- The disk member is not in any configuration, including a spareset.

An error is displayed and the command is rejected if the RAIDset is not in a reduced state, if a replacement policy is already specified, or if the disk specified is already being used by a configuration (including a spareset).

Note Do not specify other switches when you use the REPLACE= switch.

Examples

This example shows how to change the replacement policy for RAIDset RAID9 to BEST_FIT:

```
SET RAID9 POLICY=BEST_FIT
```

This example shows how to remove member DISK10000 from the RAID9 RAIDset:

```
SET RAID9 REMOVE=DISK10000
```

If there is a replacement policy, the controller moves a disk from the spareset to the RAIDset automatically.

This example shows how to add disk DISK20100 to the reduced RAIDset, RAID9:

```
SET RAID9 REPLACE=DISK20100
```

Reconstruction immediately begins on DISK20100.

See also

ADD RAIDSET
SHOW RAIDSETS

SET *unit-number*

Changes the characteristics of a unit.

Syntax

SET *unit-number*

Parameter

unit-number
Specifies the logical unit number to modify. The *unit-number* is the name given to the unit when it was created using the ADD UNIT command.

Switches

Table B–6 lists all switches for the SET *unit-number* command and shows which switches can be used with each type of device and storageset. Descriptions of the switches follow the table.

Table B–6 SET *unit-number* Switches for Existing Containers

Container Type	Switch: ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH	MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER	IDENTIFIER NOIDENTIFIER	PREFERRED_PATH NOPREFERRED_PATH	READ_CACHE NOREAD_CACHE	READAHEAD_CACHE NOREADAHEAD_CACHE	WRITE_PROTECT NOWRITE_PROTECT	WRITEBACK_CACHE NOWRITEBACK_CACHE	RUN NORUN
RAIDset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Stripeset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Mirrorset	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
NoTransportable Disk	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Transportable Disk	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔		✔

Note Regardless of storageset type, the RUN and NORUN switches cannot be specified for partitioned units.

ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH=
DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=
Specifies the access path. It can be a single specific host ID, multiple host IDs, or all host IDs (ALL). If you have multiple hosts on the same bus, you can use this switch to restrict hosts from accessing certain units. This switch limits visibility of specific units from certain hosts. For example, if two hosts are on the same bus, you can restrict each host to access only specific units.

If you enable another host ID(s), previously enabled host(s) are not disabled. The new ID(s) are added. If you wish to enable only certain ID(s), disable all access paths (DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=ALL), then enable the desired ID(s). The system will display the following message:

```
Warning 1000: Access IDs in addition to the one(s) specified
are still enabled. If you wish to enable ONLY the id(s)
listed, disable all access paths (DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH=ALL),
then enable the ones previously listed.
```

MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER=n
MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER=32 (Default)
Sets the largest number of write blocks to be cached by the controller. The controller does not cache any transfers over the set size. Accepted values are 1 through 1024.

The MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER switch affects both read and write-back cache when set on a controller that has read and write-back caching.

IDENTIFIER
NOIDENTIFIER
Identifier is an alternative way (other than worldwide name) for some operating systems to identify the unit.

PREFERRED_PATH=OTHER_CONTROLLER
PREFERRED_PATH=THIS_CONTROLLER
NOPREFERRED_PATH (Default)
May be set only when dual-redundant controllers are operating in a multiple bus failover configuration. In a multiple bus failover configuration, the host determines which controller the units are accessed through. The host's unit-to-controller settings always take precedence over the preferred path assigned to units with this switch. The target ID numbers assigned with the SET *controller* PORT_1_ALPA= (or PORT_2) command determines which target ID number the controller uses to respond to the host.

Note When the controllers are configured to operate in transparent-failover mode, if you set the PREFERRED_PATH switch with the ADD UNIT or SET *unit-number* command, an error message displays because you can only assign a preferred controller path at the unit level only when in multiple bus failover mode.

When no preferred path is assigned, the unit is targeted through the controller which detects the unit first after the controllers start.

Select PREFERRED_PATH=THIS_CONTROLLER to instruct "this controller" to bring the unit online.

Select PREFERRED_PATH=OTHER_CONTROLLER to instruct the "other controller" to bring the unit online.

See Chapter 2 for information regarding multiple bus failover.

READ_CACHE (Default)
NOREAD_CACHE
Switches enable or disable the read-cache function for the unit.

Read caching improves performance in almost all situations, so it is generally recommended to leave it enabled. However, under certain types of conditions, such as when performing a backup, read-caching may not be necessary since only a small amount of data is cached. In such instances, it may be beneficial to disable read cache and remove the processing overhead associated with caching.

READAHEAD_CACHE (Default)
NOREADAHEAD_CACHE
Enables the controller to keep track of read I/Os. If the controller detects sequential read I/Os from the host, it will then try to keep ahead of the host by reading the next sequential blocks of data (those the host has not yet requested) and put the data in cache. This process is sometimes referred to as prefetch. The controller can detect multiple sequential I/O requests across multiple units.

Read ahead caching improves host application performance since the data will be read from the controller cache instead of disk. Read ahead caching is the default for units.

If you do not expect this unit to get sequential I/O requests, select NOREADAHEAD_CACHE for the unit.

RUN (Default)
NORUN
Controls the disk drive's operation and availability to the host. Specify RUN to make a unit available to the host. Specify NORUN to make a unit unavailable to the host and to cause any data in cache to be flushed to one or more drives. NORUN spins down the devices making up a

unit. The drives making up the unit spin down after the data has been completely flushed.

Note Do not specify the RUN and NORUN switches for partitioned units.

WRITE_PROTECT
NOWRITE_PROTECT (Default)
Assigns to the unit's a write-protect policy.

Specify WRITE_PROTECT to prevent host write operations to the unit. However, the controller may still write to a write-protected RAIDset to satisfy a reconstruct pass or to reconstruct a newly replaced member. However, metadata, reconstruct, and copy writes are still allowed to RAIDsets and mirrorsets.

Specify NOWRITE_PROTECT to allow the host to write data to the unit. This allows the controller to overwrite existing data. NOWRITE_PROTECT is the default for transportable disks.

WRITEBACK_CACHE (Default)
NOWRITEBACK_CACHE
Enable or disable the write-back data caching function of the controller. The controller's write-back caching feature improves write performance. NOWRITEBACK_CACHE is the default on transportable disks.

Specify WRITEBACK_CACHE for all new RAIDsets, mirrorsets, and units you want to take advantage of write-back caching.

Specify NOWRITEBACK_CACHE for units you want to receive data directly from the host without being cached.

Caution Though there is built-in redundancy to protect data contained in cache, allowing data to be written to write-back cache may result in the loss of data if the controller fails.

Note The controller may take up to five minutes to flush data contained within the write-back cache when you specify the NOWRITEBACK_CACHE switch.

Example

This example shows how to enable write protect and turn off the read cache on unit D102:

```
SET D102 WRITE_PROTECT NOREAD_CACHE
```

See also

SHOW UNITS
SHOW *unit-number*

SHOW

Displays information about controllers, storagesets, devices, partitions, and units.

The SHOW command may not display some information for devices accessed through the companion controller in a dual-redundant configuration. When information regarding a device or parameter does not appear, enter the same SHOW command from a terminal on the other controller.

Syntax

SHOW *connection*
SHOW *controller*
SHOW *device-name*
SHOW *device-type*
SHOW EMU
SHOW *storageset-name*
SHOW *storageset-type*
SHOW *unit-number*
SHOW UNITS

Parameters

connection
Shows the following connection information: connection name, operating system, controller, controller port, adapter ID address, online or offline status, and unit offset.

controller
Specifies the controller to be displayed.
THIS_CONTROLLER
OTHER_CONTROLLER

device-name
Specifies the name of a particular device to be displayed. For example, SHOW DISK20100 displays information about the device named DISK20100.

device-type
Specifies the type of devices you want to be displayed. Valid choices are:

- DEVICES—Shows all devices attached to the controller
- DISKS—Shows all disks attached to the controller

EMU
Displays information regarding the status of the environmental monitoring unit (EMU).

storageset-name
Specifies the name of a particular storageset to be displayed. For example, SHOW STRIPE1 displays information about the stripeset named STRIPE1.

storageset-type
Specifies the type of storageset to be displayed. Valid types are:

- FAILEDSET—Shows the failedset configured to the controller.
- MIRRORSETS—Shows all mirrorsets configured to the controller.
- RAIDSETS—Shows all RAIDsets configured to the controller.
- SPARESET—Show the spareset configured to the controller.
- STORAGESETS—Shows all storagesets configured with the controller.
- STRIPESETS—Shows all stripesets configured to the controller.

unit-number
Specifies the name of a particular unit to be displayed. For example, SHOW D102 displays information about the unit named D102.

UNITS
Displays information for all units configured to the controller.

In addition to the unit name you defined for the unit, the information includes the unique 128-bit subsystem unit ID. This ID consists of the controller node ID plus a 64-bit unit ID generated by the subsystem. You name the units, however, the subsystem identifies them internally using this identifier.

A unit on controller 1234 5678 9ABC EF00 would have an ID like the following:

1234 5678 9ABC EF00 0001 0001 3056 00D2

Each single disk unit or storage device in your subsystem is assigned a unique unit ID number. The controller constructs a unit ID number for each device you add to the subsystem. The ID number consists of the controller's worldwide node ID and a unique, internally generated serial stamp. You cannot set or change unit ID numbers.

Unit ID numbers stay with the unit when you move the unit from one slot to another in the enclosure.

Switches

FULL
Displays additional information about each device, storageset, or controller.

Examples

This example shows how to display a listing of disks:

SHOW DISKS

```
Name          Type       Port Targ Lun       Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------
DISK20300     disk           100 D100
DISK10100     disk           1 1 0             D101
```

This example shows a full listing of devices attached to the controller:

SHOW DEVICES FULL

```
Name          Type                      Port Targ  Lun        Used by
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DISK10300 disk                         1   3 0        R0

        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = ASYNCHRONOUS (ASYNCHRONOUS negotiated)
        Size: 8378028 blocks
DISK20100     disk                         2   01 0        S0

        Switches:
          NOTRANSPORTABLE
          TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED = ASYNCHRONOUS (ASYNCHRONOUS negotiated)
        Size: 8377528 blocks
        Configuration being backed up on this container
```

This example shows how to display a complete listing of the mirrorset named MIRR1:

SHOW MIRR1

```
Name          Storageset                    Uses             Used by
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
MIRR1         mirrorset                     DISK50300        S0
                                            DISK60300
        Switches:
          POLICY (for replacement) = BEST_PERFORMANCE
          COPY (priority) = NORMAL
          READ_SOURCE = LEAST_BUSY
          MEMBERSHIP = 2, 2 members present
        State:
          NORMAL
          DISK60300 (member  0) is NORMAL
          DISK50300 (member  1) is NORMAL
        Size: 17769177 blocks
```

This example shows the full information for a controller:

SHOW THIS_CONTROLLER FULL

```
Controller:

HSG80 (C) DEC ZG74100120 Software R052G-0, Hardware 0000
NODE_ID = 5000-1FE1-FF00-00B0
ALLOCATION_CLASS = 0SCSI_VERSION = SCSI-2
Not configured for dual-redundancy
Device Port SCSI address 7
TIME: NOT SET
Host PORT_1:
Reported PORT_ID = 5000-1FE1-FF00-00B1
PORT_1_PROFILE = PLDA
PORT_1_TOPOLOGY = LOOP_SOFT (loop up)
PORT_1_AL_PA = 01 (negotiated)

Host PORT_2:
Reported PORT_ID = 5000-1FE1-FF00-00B2
PORT_2_PROFILE = PLDA
PORT_2_TOPOLOGY = LOOP_SOFT (loop up)
PORT_2_AL_PA = 02 (negotiated)
Cache:
256 megabyte write cache, version 0012
Cache is GOOD
No unflushed data in cache
CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER = DEFAULT (10 seconds)
NOCACHE_UPS
Mirrored Cache:
Not enabled
Battery:
MORE THAN 50% CHARGED
Standby capacity: Less than one hour
Time to full charge: 31 hours
Expires: 23-AUG-1957
WARNING: BATTERY AT END OF LIFE WITHIN ONE WEEK, REPLACE BATTERY SOON!
```

```
Extended information:
Terminal speed 19200 baud, eight bit, no parity, 1 stop bit
Operation control: 00000001 Security state code: 33506
Configuration backup disabled
Other controller not responding - RESET signal NOT asserted - NINDY ON Temperature
within optimum limit.
```

This example shows how to display the current settings for the EMU:

SHOW EMU

```
EMU CABINET SETTINGS
    SENSOR_1_SETPOINT   35  DEGREES C
    SENSOR_2_SETPOINT   35  DEGREES C
    SENSOR_3_SETPOINT   35  DEGREES C
    FANSPEED AUTOMATIC
```

SHUTDOWN *controller*

Flushes all user data from the specified controller's write-back cache (if present) and shuts down the controller. The controller does not automatically restart. All units accessed through the failed controller failover to the surviving controller.

Syntax

SHUTDOWN *controller*

Parameter

controller
Indicates which controller is to shut down. Specify OTHER_CONTROLLER or THIS_CONTROLLER.

Switches

IGNORE_ERRORS
NOIGNORE_ERRORS (Default)
Controls the reaction of the controller based on the status of write-back cache.

Caution The IGNORE_ERRORS switch causes the controller to keep unflushed data in the write-back cache until it restarts and is able to write the data to devices. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Specify IGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller to shutdown even if the data within write-back cache cannot be written to the devices.

Specify NOIGNORE_ERRORS to instruct the controller to stop operation if the data within write-back cache cannot be written to the devices.

IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN (Default)
Instructs the controller when to shutdown.

Caution The IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN switch causes the controller to keep unflushed data in the write-back cache until it restarts and is able to write the data to devices. Do not perform any hardware changes until the controller flushes the cache.

Specify IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to cause the controller to shutdown immediately without checking for online devices or before flushing data from the write-back cache to devices.

Specify NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN to cause the controller not to shutdown without checking for online devices or before all data has been flushed from the write-back cache to devices.

Examples

This example shows how to shut down "this controller:"

```
SHUTDOWN THIS_CONTROLLER
```

This example shows how to shut down the other controller, even if it cannot write all of the write-back cached data to the units:

```
SHUTDOWN OTHER_CONTROLLER IGNORE_ERRORS
```

See also

RESTART *controller*
SELFTEST *controller*

UNMIRROR

Converts a one-member mirrorset back to a non-mirrored disk drive and deletes its mirrorset from the list of known mirrorsets. This command can be used on mirrorsets already members of higher-level containers (stripesets or units).

The UNMIRROR command is not valid for disk drives having a capacity greater than the capacity of the existing mirrorset. If a mirrorset is comprised of disk drives with different capacities, the mirrorset capacity is limited to the size of the smallest member; larger members contain unused capacity. If a member with unused capacity is the last remaining member of a mirrorset, the UNMIRROR command cannot be used to change the disk drive back to a single-disk unit. This change would cause a change in the reported disk capacity, possibly corrupting user data.

Syntax

UNMIRROR *disk-name*

Parameter

disk-name
Specifies the name of the normal mirrorset member to be removed from a mirror storageset.

Example

This example shows how to convert DISK10300 back to a single device:

```
UNMIRROR DISK10300
```

See also

ADD MIRRORSET
MIRROR
REDUCE
RUN CLONE
SET *mirrorset-name*

APPENDIX C

LED Codes

This appendix shows and describes the LED codes that you may encounter while servicing the controller, cache module, and external cache battery.

Operator Control Panel LED Codes

Use Table C–1 to interpret solid OCP patterns and Table C–2 to identify flashing OCP patterns. Note that in the ERROR column of Table C-1, there are two separate descriptions. The first denotes the actual error message that appears on your terminal, and the second provides a more detailed explanation of the designated error. Use this legend for both tables:

- ■ = reset button on
- ❑ = reset button off
- ● = LED on
- ❍ = LED off

Note If the reset button is flashing and an LED is lit continuously, either the devices on that LED's bus don't match the controller's configuration, or an error has occurred in one of the devices on that bus. Also, a single LED that is lit indicates a failure of the drive on that port.

Solid OCP Patterns

Table C–1 Solid OCP Patterns

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●●●●●●	3F	DAEMON diagnostic failed hard in non-fault tolerant mode DAEMON diagnostic detected critical hardware component failure; controller can no longer operate	Verify that cache module is present. If the error persists, replace controller.
■●●●●❍●	3D	NVPM structure revision greater than image's NVPM structure revision number is greater than the one that can be handled by the software version attempting to be executed	Replace program card with one that contains the latest software version
■●●●●❍❍	3C	NVPM write loop hang Attempt to write data to NVPM failed	Replace controller
■●●●❍●●	3B	NVPM read loop hang Attempt to read data from NVPM failed	Replace controller
■●●●❍●❍	3A	An unexpected NMI occurred during Last Failure processing Last Failure processing interrupted by a Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI)	Reset controller
■●●●❍❍●	39	NVPM configuration inconsistent Device configuration within the NVPM is inconsistent	Reset controller

Table C–1 Solid OCP Patterns (Continued)

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●●●❍❍❍	38	Controller operation terminated Last Failure event required termination of controller operation (e.g. SHUT DOWN VIA CLI)	Reset controller
■●●❍●●●	37	Software-induced controller reset expected Software-induced reset failed	Replace controller
■●●❍●●❍	36	Hardware-induced controller reset expected Automatic hardware reset failed	Replace controller
■●●❍●❍●	35	An unexpected bugcheck occurred during Last Failure processing Last Failure Processing interrupted by another Last Failure event	Reset controller
■●●❍❍●●	33	NVPM structure revision too low NVPM structure revision number is less than the one that can be handled by the software version attempting to be executed	Verify that the program card contains the latest software version. If the error persists, replace controller.
■●●❍❍●❍	32	Code load program card write failure Attempt to update program card failed	Replace card
■●●❍❍❍●	31	ILF$INIT unable to allocate memory Attempt to allocate memory by ILF$INIT failed	Replace controller

Table C–1 Solid OCP Patterns (Continued)

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●●❍❍❍❍	30	An unexpected bugcheck occurred before subsystem initialization completed An unexpected Last Failure occurred during initialization	Reinsert controller. If that does not correct the problem, reset the controller. If the error persists, try resetting the controller again, and replace it if no change occurs.
■●❍●●●●	2F	Memory module has illegal DIMM configuration	Verify that DIMMs are installed as shown in Figure 1-3 on page 1-7.
■●❍●●●❍	2E	Multiple cabinets have the same SCSI ID More than one cabinet have the same SCSI ID	Reconfigure PVA ID to uniquely-identify each cabinet in the subsystem. The cabinet with the controllers must be set to PVA ID 0; additional cabinets must use PVA IDs 2 and 3. If error continues after PVA settings are unique, replace each PVA module one at a time. Check cabinet if problem remains.
■●❍●●❍●	2D	All master cabinet SCSI buses are not set to ID 0	Set PVA ID to 0 for the cabinet with the controllers. If problem persists, try the following repair actions: 1. Replace the PVA module 2. Replace the EMU 3. Remove all devices 4. Replace the cabinet
■●❍●●❍❍	2C	Cabinet IO termination power out of range Faulty or missing IO module causes cabinet IO termination power to be out of range	Ensure that all of the cabinet's device SCSI buses have an I/O module. If problem persists, replace the failed I/O module.
■●❍●❍●●	2B	Jumpers not terminators found on backplane One or more SCSI bus terminators are either missing from the backplane or broken	Ensure that cabinet's SCSI bus terminators are installed and that there are no jumpers. Replace the failed terminator if the problem continues.

Table C–1 Solid OCP Patterns (Continued)

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●❍●❍●❍	2A	All cabinet IO modules are not of the same type Cabinet I/O modules are a combination of single-sided and differential	Ensure that the I/O modules in an extended subsystem are either all single-ended or all differential, not both.
■●❍●❍❍●	29	EMU protocol version incompatible The microcode in the EMU and the software in the controller are not compatible	Upgrade either the EMU microcode or the software (refer to the Release Notes that accompanied the controller's software).
■●❍●❍❍❍	28	An unexpected Machine Fault/ NMI occurred during Last Failure processing A machine fault was detected while a Non-Maskable Interrupt was processing	Reset the controller
■●❍❍●●●	27	Memory module has insufficient usable memory	Replace indicated DIMM(s) (this indication is only provided when Fault LED logging is enabled).
■●❍❍●●❍	26	Indicated memory module is missing Controller is unable to detect a particular memory module	Insert memory module (cache board)

Table C–1 Solid OCP Patterns (Continued)

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●❍❍●❍●	25	Recursive Bugcheck detected The same bugcheck has occurred three times within ten minutes, and controller operation has terminated.	Reset the controller. If this fault pattern is displayed repeatedly, follow the repair action(s) associated with the Last Failure code that is repeatedly terminating controller execution.
■❍❍❍❍❍❍	0	No program card detected or kill asserted by other controller Controller unable to read program card	Ensure that program card is properly seated while resetting the controller. If the error persists, try the card with another controller; or replace the card. Otherwise, replace the controller that reported the error.
❑❍❍❍❍❍❍	0	Catastrophic controller or power failure	Check power. If good, reset controller. If problem persists, reseat controller module and reset controller. If problem is still evident, replace controller module.

Flashing OCP Patterns

Table C–2 Flashing OCP Patterns

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■❍❍❍❍❍●	1	Program card EDC error	Replace program card
■❍❍❍●❍❍	4	Timer zero on the processor is bad	Replace controller
■❍❍❍●❍●	5	Timer one on the processor is bad	Replace controller
■❍❍❍●●❍	6	Processor Guarded Memory Unit (GMU) is bad	Replace controller
■❍❍●❍●●	B	Nonvolatile Journal Memory (JSRAM) structure is bad because of a memory error or an incorrect upgrade procedure	First, verify correct upgrade (see Release Notes). If error continues, replace controller
■❍❍●●❍●	D	One or more bits in the diagnostic registers did not match the expected reset value	Press the reset button to restart the controller. If this does not correct the error, replace the controller
■❍❍●●●❍	E	Memory error in the JSRAM	Replace controller
■❍❍●●●●	F	Wrong image found on program card	Replace program card or replace controller if needed
■❍●❍❍❍❍	10	Controller Module memory is bad	Replace controller
■❍●❍❍●❍	12	Controller Module memory addressing is malfunctioning	Replace controller
■❍●❍❍●●	13	Controller Module memory parity is not working	Replace controller
■❍●❍●❍❍	14	Controller Module memory controller timer has failed	Replace controller
■❍●●❍❍●	15	The Controller Module memory controller interrupt handler has failed	Replace controller
■❍●●●●❍	1E	During the diagnostic memory test, the Controller Module memory controller caused an unexpected Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI)	Replace controller
■●❍❍●❍❍	24	The card's code image changed when the contents were copied to memory	Replace controller

Table C–2 Flashing OCP Patterns (Continued)

Pattern	OCP Code	Error	Repair Action
■●●❍❍❍❍	30	The JSRAM battery is bad	Replace controller
■●●❍❍●❍	32	First-half diagnostics of the Time of Year Clock failed	Replace controller
■●●❍❍●●	33	Second-half diagnostics of the Time of Year Clock failed	Replace controller
■●●❍●❍●	35	The processor bus-to-device bus bridge chip is bad	Replace controller
■●●●❍●●	3B	There is an unnecessary interrupt pending	Replace controller
■●●●●❍❍	3C	There was an unexpected fault during initialization	Replace controller
■●●●●❍●	3D	There was an unexpected maskable interrupt during initialization	Replace controller
■●●●●●❍	3E	There was an unexpected NMI during initialization	Replace controller
■●●●●●●	3F	An invalid process ran during initialization	Replace controller

APPENDIX D

Event Reporting: Templates and Codes

This appendix describes the event codes that the fault-management software generates for spontaneous events and last-failure events.

The HSG80 controller uses various codes to report different types of events, and these codes are presented in template displays. Instance Codes are unique codes that identify events, ASC and ASCQ codes explain the cause of the events, and Last Failure codes describe unrecoverable conditions that may occur with the controller.

Passthrough Device Reset Event Sense Data Response

Events reported by passthrough devices during host/device operations are conveyed directly to the host system without intervention or interpretation by the HSG80controller, with the exception of device sense data that is truncated to 160 bytes when it exceeds 160 bytes.

Events related to pass-through device recognition, initialization, and SCSI bus communication events that result in a reset of a pass-through device by the HSG80 controller are reported using standard SCSI Sense Data, as shown in Figure D–1. For all other events, refer to the templates to follow.

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.

Figure D–1 Pass-through Device Reset Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Valid	Error Code						
1	Segment							
2	FM	EOM	ILI	Rsvd	Sense Key			
3-6	Information							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Instance Code							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Field Replaceable Unit Code							
15	SKSV	Sense Key Specific						
16								
17								

CXO-5093A-MC

Last Failure Event Sense Data Response

Unrecoverable conditions detected by either software or hardware and certain operator-initiated conditions result in the termination of HSG80 controller operation. In most cases, following such a termination, the controller will attempt to restart (that is, reboot) with hardware components and software data structures initialized to the states necessary to perform normal operations (see Figure D–2).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, “Instance Codes” on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, “ASC and ASCQ Codes” on page D–85.
- Last Failure Codes (byte offset 104-107) are described in Table D–3, “Last Failure Codes” on page D–38.

Figure D–2 Template 01 - Last Failure Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32-35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74–75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77–103	Reserved							
104-107	Last Failure Code							
108–111	Last Failure Parameter[0]							
112–115	Last Failure Parameter[1]							
116–119	Last Failure Parameter[2]							
120–123	Last Failure Parameter[3]							
124–127	Last Failure Parameter[4]							
128–131	Last Failure Parameter[5]							
132–135	Last Failure Parameter[6]							
136–139	Last Failure Parameter[7]							
140-159	Reserved							

CXO6175A

Multiple-Bus Failover Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 SCSI Host Interconnect Services software component reports Multiple Bus Failover events via the Multiple Bus Failover Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–3).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, “Instance Codes” on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, “ASC and ASCQ Codes” on page D–85.

Figure D–3 Template 04 - Multiple-Bus Failover Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–26	Reserved							
27	Failed Controller Target Number							
28–31	Affected LUNs							
32–35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Other Controller Board Serial Number							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Firmware Revision Level							
74-75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77–103	Reserved							
104-131	Affected LUNs Extension (TM0)							
132-159	Reserved							

CXO5314B

Failover Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Failover Control software component reports errors and other conditions encountered during redundant controller communications and failover operation via the Failover Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–4).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.
- Last Failure Codes (byte offset 104-107) are described in Table D–3, "Last Failure Codes" on page D–38.

Figure D–4 Template 05 - Failover Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3–6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8–11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32–35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74–75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77-103	Reserved							
104–107	Last Failure Code							
108–111	Last Failure Parameter[0]							
112–115	Last Failure Parameter[1]							
116–119	Last Failure Parameter[2]							
120–123	Last Failure Parameter[3]							
124–127	Last Failure Parameter[4]							
128–131	Last Failure Parameter[5]							
132–135	Last Failure Parameter[6]							
136–139	Last Failure Parameter[7]							
140–159	Reserved							

CXO6177A

Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Executive software component reports errors detected while accessing a Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component via the Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–5).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.

Figure D–5 Template 11 - Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Component Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32-35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74–75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77-103	Reserved							
104–107	Memory Address							
108–111	Byte Count							
112–114	Number of Times Written							
115	Undefined							
116–159	Reserved							

CXO6178A

Backup Battery Failure Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Value Added Services software component reports backup battery failure conditions for the various hardware components that use a battery to maintain state during power failures via the Backup Battery Failure Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–6).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, “Instance Codes” on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, “ASC and ASCQ Codes” on page D–85.

Figure D–6 Template 12 - Backup Battery Failure Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32-35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74-75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77–103	Reserved							
104–107	Memory Address							
108–159	Reserved							

CXO6179A

- For more information on Instance Codes, see page D–16.
- For a table of ASC and ASCQ codes, see page D–85.

Subsystem Built-In Self Test Failure Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Subsystem Built-In Self Tests software component reports errors detected during test execution via the Subsystem Built-In Self Test Failure Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–7).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.

Figure D–7 Template 13 - Subsystem Built-In Self Test Failure Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32-35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74–75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77-103	Reserved							
104–105	Undefined							
106	Header Type							
107	Header Flags							
108	TE							
109	Test Number							
110	Test Command							
111	Test Flags							
112–113	Error Code							
114–115	Return Code							
116–119	Address of Error							
120–123	Expected Error Data							
124–127	Actual Error Data							
128–131	Extra Status 1							
132–135	Extra Status 2							
136–139	Extra Status 3							
140-159	Reserved							

CXO6180A

Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Memory Controller Event Analyzer software component and the Cache Manager, part of the Value Added software component, report the occurrence of memory errors via the Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–8).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.

Figure D–8 Template 14 - Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15-17	Unused							
18-19	Reserved							
20-23	Reserved or RDR2 (TM1)							
24-27	Reserved or RDEAR (TM1)							
28-31	Reserved							
32–35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38-39	Reserved							
40-43	Reserved or FXPSCR (TM1)							
44-47	Reserved or FXCSR (TM1)							
48-51	Reserved or FXCCSR (TM1)							
52-53	Reserved							
54-69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70-73	Controller Software Revision Level							

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
74-75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77-79	Reserved							
80-83	Reserved or FXPAEC(TM1)							
84-87	Reserved or FXCAEC(TM1)							
88-91	Reserved or FXPAEP(TM1)							
92-95	Reserved or CHC (TM0) or FXCAEP(TM1)							
96-99	Reserved or CMC (TM0) or CFW(TM1)							
100-103	Reserved or DSR2 (TM0) or RRR(TM1)							
104-107	Memory Address							
108-111	Byte Count							
112-115	DSR or PSR(TM1)							
116-119	CSR or CSR(TM1)							
120-123	DCSR or EAR(TM1)							
124-127	DER or EDR1(TM1)							
128-131	EAR or EDR0(TM1)							
132-135	EDR or ICR TM1)							
136-139	ERR or IMR(TM1)							
140-143	RSR or DIO(TM1)							
144-147	RDR0							
148-151	RDR1							
152-155	WDR0							
156-159	WDR1							

CXO6181A

Device Services Non-Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Device Services software component reports errors detected while performing non-transfer work related to disk (including CD-ROM and optical memory) device operations via the Device Services Non-Transfer Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–9).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, “Instance Codes” on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, “ASC and ASCQ Codes” on page D–85.

Figure D–9 Template 41 - Device Services Non-Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unusd	Error Code						
1	Unused							
2	Unused				Sense Key			
3-6	Unused							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8-11	Unused							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Unused							
15–17	Unused							
18–31	Reserved							
32-35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70-73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74-75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77–103	Reserved							
104	Associated Port							
105	Associated Target							
106	Associated Additional Sense Code							
107	Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
108–159	Reserved							

CXO6182A

Disk Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response

The HSG80 controller Device Services and Value Added Services software components report errors detected while performing work related to disk (including CD-ROM and optical memory) device transfer operations via the Disk Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response (see Figure D–10).

- Instance Codes (byte offset 32-35) are described in Table D–1, "Instance Codes" on page D–18.
- ASC and ASCQ codes (byte offsets 12 and 13) are described in Table D–7, "ASC and ASCQ Codes" on page D–85.

Figure D–10 Template 51 - Disk Transfer Error Event Sense Data Response Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0–17	Standard Sense Data							
18–19	Reserved							
20	Total Number of Errors							
21	Total Retry Count							
22–25	ASC/ASCQ Stack							
26–28	Device Locator							
29–31	Reserved							
32–35	Instance Code							
36	Template							
37	Template Flags							
38	Reserved							
39	Command Opcode							
40	Sense Data Qualifier							
41–50	Original CDB							
51	Host ID							
52–53	Reserved							
54–69	Controller Board Serial Number							
70–73	Controller Software Revision Level							
74–75	Reserved							
76	LUN Status							
77–78	Reserved							
79-82	Device Firmware Revision Level							
83–98	Device Product ID							
99–100	Reserved							
101	Device Type							
102–103	Reserved							
104	Valid	Error Code						
105	Segment							
106	FM	EOM	ILI	Rsvd	Sense Key			
107–110	Information							
111	Additional Sense Length							
112–115	Command Specific Information							
116	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
117	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
118	Field Replaceable Unit Code							
119	SKSV	Sense Key Specific						
120	Sense Key Specific							
121	Sense Key Specific							
122–159	Reserved							

CXO6183B

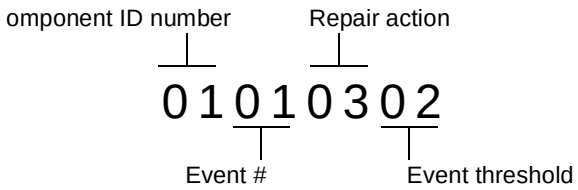
Instance Codes

An Instance Code is a number that uniquely identifies an event being reported.

Instance Code Structure

Figure D–11 shows the structure of an instance code. If you understand its structure, you will be able to translate it, bypassing the fault management utility (FMU).

Figure D–11 Structure of an Instance Code



Instance Codes and FMU

The format of an Instance Code as it appears in Sense Data Responses is shown in Figure D–12.

Figure D–12 Instance Code Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
(8)32	NR Threshold							
(9)33	Repair Action							
(10)34	Error Number							
(11)35	Component ID							

CXO6470A

Note The offset values enclosed in braces ({}) apply only to the passthrough device reset event sense data response format (see Figure D–1, "Pass-through Device Reset Event Sense Data Response Format" on page D–2). The nonbraced offset values apply only to the logical device event sense data response formats shown in the templates that begin on page D–85.

NR Threshold

Located at byte offset {8}32, the NR Threshold is the notification/ recovery threshold assigned to the event. This value is used during Symptom-Directed Diagnosis procedures to determine when notification/recovery action should be taken.

Repair Action

The Repair Action found at byte offset {9}33 indicates the recommended repair action code assigned to the event. This value is used during Symptom-Directed Diagnosis procedures to determine what notification/recovery action should be taken when the NR Threshold is reached. For more details about recommended repair actions, see “Recommended Repair Action Codes,” page D–77.

Event Number

Located at byte offset {10}34, the Event Number, when combined with the value contained in the Component ID field, uniquely-identifies the reported event.

Component ID

A component ID is a number that uniquely-identifies the software component that detected the event and is found at byte offset {11}35 (see “Component Identifier Codes,” page D–82).

Table D–1 contains the instance codes that can be issued by the controller's fault-management software.

Table D–1 Instance Codes

Instance Code	Description	Template
01010302	An unrecoverable hardware detected fault occurred.	01
0102030A	An unrecoverable software inconsistency was detected or an intentional restart or shutdown of controller operation was requested.	01
01032002	Nonvolatile parameter memory component EDC check failed; content of the component reset to default settings.	11
02020064	Disk Bad Block Replacement attempt completed for a write within the user data area of the disk. Note that due to the way Bad Block Replacement is performed on SCSI disk drives, information on the actual replacement blocks is not available to the controller and is therefore not included in the event report.	51
02032001	Journal SRAM backup battery failure; detected during system restart. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the Journal SRAM.	12
02042001	Journal SRAM backup battery failure; detected during periodic check. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the Journal SRAM.	12
02052301	A processor interrupt was generated by the CACHEA0 Memory Controller with an indication that the CACHE backup battery has failed or is low (needs charging). The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	12
02072201	The CACHEAO Memory Controller failed testing performed by the Cache Diagnostics. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	14
02082201	The CACHEA1 Memory Controller failed testing performed by the Cache Diagnostics. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA1 memory.	14
02090064	A data compare error was detected during the execution of a compare modified READ or WRITE command.	51
020B2201	Failed read test of a write-back metadata page residing in cache. Dirty write-back cached data exists and cannot be flushed to media. The dirty data is lost. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	14
020C2201	Cache Diagnostics have declared the cache bad during testing. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	14

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
020D2401	The wrong write cache module is configured. The serial numbers do not match. Either the existing or the expected cache contains dirty write-back cached data. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip Register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
020E2401	The write cache module is missing. A cache is expected to be configured and contains dirty write-back cached data. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip Register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
02102401	The write cache modules are not configured properly for a dual-redundant configuration. One of the cache modules is not the same size to perform cache failover of dirty write-back cached data. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip Register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
02110064	Disk Bad Block Replacement attempt completed for a read within the user data area of the disk. Note that due to the way Bad Block Replacement is performed on SCSI disk drives, information on the actual replacement blocks is not available to the controller and is therefore not included in the event report.	51
021A0064	Disk Bad Block Replacement attempt completed for a write of controller metadata to a location outside the user data area of the disk. Note that due to the way Bad Block Replacement is performed on SCSI disk drives, information on the actual replacement blocks is not available to the controller and is therefore not included in the event report.	41
021B0064	Disk Bad Block Replacement attempt completed for a read of controller metadata from a location outside the user data area of the disk. Note that due to the way Bad Block Replacement is performed on SCSI disk drives, information on the actual replacement blocks is not available to the controller and is therefore not included in the event report.	41
021D0064	Unable to lock the other controller’s cache in a write-cache failover attempt. Either a latent error could not be cleared on the cache or the other controller did not release its cache. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
021E0064	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been added to the RAIDset associated with the logical unit.The RAIDset is now in Reconstructing state.	51
02280064	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been added to the Mirrorset associated with the logical unit. The new Mirrorset member is now in Copying state.	51

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
022C0064	The device specified in the Device Locator has transitioned from Copying or Normalizing state to Normal state.	51
022E0064	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been converted to a Mirrorset associated with the logical unit.	51
022F0064	The mirrored device specified in the Device Locator field has been converted to a single device associated with the logical unit.	51
02383A01	The CACHEB0 Memory Controller, which resides on the other cache module failed testing performed by the Cache Diagnostics. This is the mirrored cache Memory Controller. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB0 memory.	14
02392201	Both the CACHEB0 Memory Controller and CACHEB1 Memory Controller, which resides on the other cache module, failed testing performed by the Cache Diagnostics. Data cannot be accessed in the primary cache or the mirror cache. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	14
023E2401	Metadata residing in the controller and on the two cache modules disagree as to the mirror node. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
023F2301	The cache backup battery covering the mirror cache is insufficiently charged. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	12
02402301	The cache backup battery covering the mirror cache has been declared bad. Either it failed testing performed by the Cache Diagnostics during system startup or it was low (insufficiently charged) for longer than the expected duration. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	12
02412401	Mirrored cache writes have been disabled. Either the primary or the mirror cache has been declared bad or data invalid and will not be used. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
02422464	Cache failover attempt failed because the other cache was illegally configured with DIMMs. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
02492401	The write cache module which is the mirror for the primary cache is unexpectedly not present (missing). A cache is expected to be configured and it may contain dirty write cached data. Note that in this instance, the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
024A2401	Mirroring is enabled and the primary write cache module is expectedly not present (missing). A cache is expected to be configured and it may contain dirty write cached data. Note that in this instance, the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
024B2401	Write-back caching has been disabled either due to a cache or battery-related problem. The exact nature of the problem is reported by other instance codes. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
024F2401	This cache module is populated with DIMMs incorrectly. Cache metadata resident in the cache module indicates that unflushed write cache data exists for a cache size different than what is found present. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
0251000A	This command failed because the target unit is not online to the controller. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0252000A	The last block of data returned contains a forced error. A forced error occurs when a disk block is successfully reassigned, but the data in that block is lost. Re-writing the disk block will clear the forced error condition. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0253000A	The data supplied from the host for a data compare operation differs from the data on the disk in the specified block. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0254000A	The command failed due to a host data transfer failure. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0255000A	The controller was unable to successfully transfer data to target unit. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
0256000A	The write operation failed because the unit is Data Safety Write Protected. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0257000A	An attempt to reassign a bad disk block failed. The contents of the disk block is lost. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0258000A	This command was aborted prior to completion. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
0259000A	The write operation failed because the unit is hardware write protected. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
025A000A	The command failed because the unit became inoperative prior to command completion. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
025B000A	The command failed because the unit became unknown to the controller prior to command completion. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
025C000A	The command failed because of a unit media format error. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
025D000A	The command failed for an unknown reason. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error	51
025F2201	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected an excessive number (512 pages or more) of memory errors detected on the primary cache memory. Diagnostics have not declared the cache failed, due to the isolated bad memory regions, but this is a warning to replace the cache as soon as possible in case of further degradation. The software performed the necessary error recovery as appropriate. Note that in this instance the Memory Address and Byte Count fields are undefined.	14
02603A01	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected an excessive number (512 pages or more) of memory errors detected on mirrored cache memory. Diagnostics has not declared the cache failed, due to the isolated bad memory regions, but this is a warning to replace the cache as soon as possible in case of further degradation. The software performed the necessary error recovery as appropriate. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count fields are undefined.	14

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
02613801	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 1 failed on the cache module. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field in undefined.	14
02623801	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 2 failed on the cache module. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field in undefined.	14
02633801	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 3 failed on the cache module. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field in undefined.	14
02643801	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 4 failed on the cache module. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field in undefined.	14
02653C01	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 3 on the other controller's cache module (on mirrored cache) failed. Mirroring has been disabled. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field is undefined.	14
02663C01	Memory diagnostics performed during controller initialization detected that the DIMM in location 4 on the other controller's cache module (on mirrored cache) failed. Mirroring has been disabled. Note that in this instance the Byte Count field is undefined.	14
02675201	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been removed from the RAIDset associated with the logical unit. The removed device is now in the Failedset. The RAIDset is now in Reduced state.	51
0268530A	The device specified in the Device Locator field failed to be added to the RAIDset associated with the logical unit. The device will remain in the Spareset.	51
02695401	The device specified in the Device Locator field failed to be added to the RAIDset associated with the logical unit. The failed device has been moved to the Failedset.	51
026A5001	The RAIDset associated with the logical unit has gone inoperative.	51
026B0064	The RAIDset associated with the logical unit has transitioned from Normal state to Reconstructing state.	51
026C0064	The RAIDset associated with the logical unit has transitioned from Reconstructing state to Normal state.	51
026D5201	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been removed from the Mirrorset associated with the logical unit. The removed device is now in the Failedset.	51

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
026E0001	The device specified in the Device Locator field has been reduced from the Mirrorset associated with the logical unit. The nominal number of members in the mirrorset has been decreased by one. The reduced device is now available for use.	51
026F530A	The device specified in the Device Locator field failed to be added to the mirrorset associated with the logical unit. The device will remain in the Spareset.	51
02705401	The device specified in the Device Locator field failed to be added to the mirrorset associated with the logical unit. The failed device has been moved to the Failedset.	51
02710064	The mirrorset associated with the logical unit has had its nominal membership changed. The new nominal number of members for the mirrorset is specified in the Device Sense Data Information field.	51
02725101	The Mirrorset associated with the logical unit has gone inoperative.	51
02730001	The device specified in the Device Locator field had a read error which has been repaired with data from another mirrorset member.	51
02745A0A	The device specified in the Device Locator field had a read error. Attempts to repair the error with data from another mirrorset member failed due to lack of alternate error-free data source.	51
02755601	The device specified in the Device Locator field had a read error. Attempts to repair the error with data from another mirrorset member failed due to a write error on the original device. The original device will be removed from the mirrorset.	51
02773D01	The mirrored cache is not being used because the data in the mirrored cache is inconsistent with the data in the primary cache. The primary cache contains valid data, so the controller is caching solely from the primary cache. The mirrored cache is declared “failed”, but this is not due to a hardware fault, only inconsistent data. Mirrored writes have been disabled until this condition is cleared. Note that in this instance the Memory Address, Byte Count, FX Chip register, Memory Controller register, and Diagnostic register fields are undefined.	14
02782301	The cache backup battery is not present. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	12
02792301	The cache backup battery covering the mirror cache is not present. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	12

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
027A2201	The CACHEB0 Memory Controller failed Cache Diagnostics testing performed on the other cache during a cache failover attempt. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB0 memory.	14
027B2201	The CACHEB1 Memory Controller failed Cache Diagnostics testing performed on the other cache during a cache failover attempt. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	14
027C2201	The CACHEB0 and CACHEB1 Memory Controllers failed Cache Diagnostics testing performed on the other cache during a cache failover attempt. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB0 memory.	14
027D5B01	The Mirrorset associated with the logical unit has gone inoperative due to a disaster tolerance failsafe locked condition.	51
027E5B01	The command failed because the disaster tolerance mirrorset went failsafe locked prior to command completion. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
027F2301	The CACHE backup battery has been declared bad. The battery did not become fully charged within the expected duration. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	12
02805B01	The command failed because the disaster tolerance mirrorset is failsafe locked. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
02815B01	The command failed because the disaster tolerance mirrorset is failsafe locked. The Information field of the Device Sense Data contains the block number of the first block in error.	51
02825C64	The Mirrorset associated with the logical unit has just had a membership change such that disaster tolerance failsafe error mode can now be enabled if desired.	51
02872301	The CACHE backup battery has exceeded the maximum number of deep discharges. Battery capacity may be below specified values. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	12
02882301	The CACHE backup battery covering the mirror cache has exceeded the maximum number of deep discharges. Battery capacity may be below specified values. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	12

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
02892301	The CACHE backup battery is near its end of life. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEA0 memory.	12
028A2301	The CACHE backup battery covering the mirror cache is near its end of life. The Memory Address field contains the starting physical address of the CACHEB1 memory.	12
03010101	No command control structures available for disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03022002	SCSI interface chip command timeout during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03034002	Byte transfer timeout during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03044402	SCSI bus errors during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03052002	Device port SCSI chip reported gross error during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03062002	Non-SCSI bus parity error during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03070101	Source driver programming error encountered during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03080101	Miscellaneous SCSI Port Driver coding error detected during disk operation. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03094002	An unrecoverable disk drive error was encountered while performing work related to disk unit operations.	51
030C4002	A Drive failed because a Test Unit Ready command or a Read Capacity command failed.	51
030D000A	Drive was failed by a Mode Select command received from the host.	51
030E4002	Drive failed due to a deferred error reported by drive.	51
030F4002	Unrecovered Read or Write error.	51
03104002	No response from one or more drives.	51

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
0311430A	Nonvolatile memory and drive metadata indicate conflicting drive configurations.	51
0312430A	The Synchronous Transfer Value differs between drives in the same storageset.	51
03134002	Maximum number of errors for this data transfer operation exceeded.	51
03144002	Drive reported recovered error without transferring all data.	51
03154002	Data returned from drive is invalid.	51
03164002	Request Sense command to drive failed.	51
03170064	Illegal command for pass through mode.	51
03180064	Data transfer request error.	51
03194002	Premature completion of a drive command.	51
031A4002	Command timeout.	51
031B0101	Watchdog timer timeout.	51
031C4002	Disconnect timeout.	51
031D4002	Unexpected bus phase.	51
031E4002	Disconnect expected.	51
031F4002	ID Message not sent by drive.	51
03204002	Synchronous negotiation error.	51
03214002	The drive unexpectedly disconnected from the SCSI bus.	51
03224002	Unexpected message.	51
03234002	Unexpected Tag message.	51
03244002	Channel busy.	51
03254002	Message Reject received on a valid message.	51
0326450A	The disk device reported Vendor Unique SCSI Sense Data.	51
03270101	A disk related error code was reported which was unknown to the Fault Management firmware. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
0328450A	The disk device reported standard SCSI Sense Data.	51
03324002	SCSI bus selection timeout.	Pass-through
03330002	Device power on reset.	Pass-through
03344002	Target assertion of REQ after WAIT DISCONNECT.	Pass-through
03354002	During device initialization a Test Unit Ready command or a Read Capacity command to the device failed.	Pass-through
03364002	During device initialization the device reported a deferred error.	Pass-through

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03374002	During device initialization the maximum number of errors for a data transfer operation was exceeded.	Pass-through
03384002	Request Sense command to the device failed.	Pass-through
03394002	Command timeout.	Pass-through
033A4002	Disconnect timeout.	Pass-through
033B4002	Unexpected bus phase.	Pass-through
033C4002	The device unexpectedly disconnected from the SCSI bus.	Pass-through
033D4002	Unexpected message.	Pass-through
033E4002	Message Reject received on a valid message.	Pass-through
033F0101	No command control structures available for passthrough device operation.	Pass-through
03402002	Device port SCSI chip reported gross error.	Pass-through
03410101	Miscellaneous SCSI Port Driver coding error.	Pass-through
03420101	A passthrough device related internal error code was reported which is not recognized by the Fault Management firmware.	Pass-through
03434002	During device initialization the device reported unexpected standard SCSI Sense Data.	Pass-through
03C80101	No command control structures available for operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03C92002	SCSI interface chip command timeout during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03CA4002	Byte transfer timeout during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03CB0101	Miscellaneous SCSI Port Driver coding error detected during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03CC0101	An error code was reported which was unknown to the Fault Management software. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03CD2002	Device port SCSI chip reported gross error during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03CE2002	Non-SCSI bus parity error during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03CF0101	Source driver programming error encountered during operation to a device which is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03D04002	A failure occurred while attempting a SCSI Test Unit Ready or Read Capacity command to a device. The device type is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03D14002	The identification of a device does not match the configuration information. The actual device type is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03D24402	SCSI bus errors during device operation. The device type is unknown to the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Additional Sense Code and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03D3450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key NO SENSE. This indicates that there is no specific sense key information to be reported for the designated logical unit. This would be the case for a successful command or a command that received CHECK CONDITION or COMMAND TERMINATED status because one of the FM, EOM, or ILI bits is set to one in the sense data flags field.	41
03D4450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key RECOVERED ERROR. This indicates the last command completed successfully with some recovery action performed by the target.	41
03D5450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key NOT READY. This indicates that the logical unit addressed cannot be accessed. Operator intervention may be required to correct this condition.	41

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03D6450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key MEDIUM ERROR. This indicates that the command terminated with a non-recovered error condition that was probably caused by a flaw in the medium or an error in the recorded data. This sense key may also be returned if the target is unable to distinguish between a flaw in the medium and a specific hardware failure (HARDWARE ERROR sense key).	41
03D7450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key HARDWARE ERROR. This indicates that the target detected a non-recoverable hardware failure (for example, controller failure, device failure, parity error, etc.) while performing the command or during a self test.	41
03D8450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key ILLEGAL REQUEST. Indicates that there was an illegal parameter in the command descriptor block or in the additional parameters supplied as data for some commands (FORMAT UNIT, SEARCH DATA, etc.). If the target detects an invalid parameter in the command descriptor block, then it shall terminate the command without altering the medium. If the target detects an invalid parameter in the additional parameters supplied as data, then the target may have already altered the medium. This sense key may also indicate that an invalid IDENTIFY message was received.	41
03D9450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key UNIT ATTENTION. This indicates that the removable medium may have been changed or the target has been reset.	41
03DA450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key DATA PROTECT. This indicates that a command that reads or writes the medium was attempted on a block that is protected from this operation. The read or write operation is not performed.	41
03DB450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key BLANK CHECK. This indicates that a write-once device encountered blank medium or format-defined end-of-data indication while reading or a write-once device encountered a non-blank medium while writing.	41
03DC450A	During device initialization, the device reported a SCSI Vendor Specific Sense Key. This sense key is available for reporting vendor specific conditions.	41
03DD450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key COPY ABORTED. This indicates a COPY, COMPARE, or COPY AND VERIFY command was aborted due to an error condition on the source device, the destination device, or both.	41

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03DE450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key ABORTED COMMAND. This indicates the target aborted the command. The initiator may be able to recover by trying the command again.	41
03DF450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key EQUAL. This indicates a SEARCH DATA command has satisfied an equal comparison.	41
03E0450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key VOLUME OVERFLOW. This indicates a buffered peripheral device has reached the end-of-partition and data may remain in the buffer that has not been written to the medium. A RECOVER BUFFERED DATA command(s) may be issued to read the unwritten data from the buffer.	41
03E1450A	During device initialization, the device reported the SCSI Sense Key MISCOMPARE. This indicates the source data did not match the data read from the medium.	41
03E2450A	During device initialization, the device reported a reserved SCSI Sense Key.	41
03E40F64	The EMU has indicated that Termination Power is good on all ports. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03E58002	The EMU has detected bad Termination Power on the indicated port. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03EE0064	The EMU for the cabinet indicated by the Associated Port field has become available. Note that the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and the Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03EF8301	The EMU for the cabinet indicated by the Associated Port field has become unavailable. Note that the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and the Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F10502	The SWAP interrupt from the device port indicated by the Associated Port field can not be cleared. All SWAP interrupts from all ports will be disabled until corrective action is taken. When SWAP interrupts are disabled, both controller front panel button presses and removal/ insertion of devices are not detected by the controller. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03F20064	The SWAP interrupts have been cleared and re-enabled for all device ports. Note that in this instance the Associated Port, Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F30064	An asynchronous SWAP interrupt was detected by the controller for the device port indicated by the Associated Port field. Possible reasons for this occurrence include: ■ device insertion or removal ■ shelf power failure ■ SWAP interrupts reenabled Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F40064	Device services had to reset the port to clear a bad condition. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F60402	The controller shelf is reporting a problem. This could mean one or both of the following: ■ If the shelf is using dual power supplies, one power supply has failed. ■ One of the shelf cooling fans has failed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F70401	The shelf indicated by the Associated Port field is reporting a problem. This could mean one or both of the following: ■ If the shelf is using dual power supplies, one power supply has failed. ■ One of the shelf cooling fans has failed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F80701	The EMU has detected one or more bad power supplies. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03F90601	The EMU has detected one or more bad fans. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
03FA0D01	The EMU has detected an elevated temperature condition. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03FB0E01	The EMU has detected an external air sense fault. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03FC0F01	The EMU-detected power supply fault is now fixed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03FD0F01	The EMU-detected bad-fan fault is now fixed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03FE0F01	The EMU-detected elevated temperature fault is now fixed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
03FF0F01	The EMU-detected external air sense fault is now fixed. Note that in this instance the Associated Target, Associated Additional Sense Code, and Associated Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are undefined.	41
07030B0A	Failover Control detected a receive packet sequence number mismatch. The controllers are out of synchronization with each other and are unable to communicate. Note that in this instance the Last Failure Code and Last Failure Parameters fields are undefined.	05
07040B0A	Failover Control detected a transmit packet sequence number mismatch. The controllers are out of synchronization with each other and are unable to communicate. Note that in this instance the Last Failure Code and Last Failure Parameters fields are undefined.	05
07050064	Failover Control received a Last Gasp message from the other controller. The other controller is expected to restart itself within a given time period. If it does not, it will be held reset with the “Kill” line.	05
07060C01	Failover Control detected that both controllers are acting as SCSI ID 6. Since ids are determined by hardware, it is unknown which controller is the real SCSI ID 6. Note that in this instance the Last Failure Code and Last Failure Parameters fields are undefined.	05
07070C01	Failover Control detected that both controllers are acting as SCSI ID 7. Since ids are determined by hardware, it is unknown which controller is the real SCSI ID 7. Note that in this instance the Last Failure Code and Last Failure Parameters fields are undefined.	05

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
07080B0A	Failover Control was unable to send keepalive communication to the other controller. It is assumed that the other controller is hung or not started. Note that in this instance the Last Failure Code and Last Failure Parameters fields are undefined.	05
0C00370A	Memory System Error Analysis is indicated in the information preserved during a previous last failure but no error conditions are indicated in the available Memory Controller registers. The Quadrant 0 Memory Controller (CACHEA0) registers content is supplied.	14
0C103E02	The Quadrant 0 Memory Controller (CACHEA0) detected an Address Parity error.	14
0C113E02	The Quadrant 1 Memory Controller (CACHEA1) detected an Address Parity error.	14
0C123E02	The Quadrant 2 Memory Controller (CACHEB0) detected an Address Parity error.	14
0C133E02	The Quadrant 3 Memory Controller (CACHEB1) detected an Address Parity error.	14
0C203E02	The Quadrant 0 Memory Controller (CACHEA0) detected a Data Parity error.	14
0C213E02	The Quadrant 1 Memory Controller (CACHEA1) detected a Data Parity error.	14
0C223E02	The Quadrant 2 Memory Controller (CACHEB0) detected a Data Parity error.	14
0C233E02	The Quadrant 3 Memory Controller (CACHEB1) detected a Data Parity error.	14
0C303F02	The Quadrant 0 Memory Controller (CACHEA0) detected a Multibit ECC error.	14
0C313F02	The Quadrant 1 Memory Controller (CACHEA1) detected a Multibit ECC error.	14
0C323F02	The Quadrant 2 Memory Controller (CACHEB0) detected a Multibit ECC error.	14
0C333F02	The Quadrant 3 Memory Controller (CACHEB1) detected a Multibit ECC error.	14
0C403E02	The Quadrant 0 Memory Controller (CACHEA0) detected a Firewall error.	14
0C413E02	The Quadrant 1 Memory Controller (CACHEA1) detected a Firewall error.	14
0C423E02	The Quadrant 2 Memory Controller (CACHEB0) detected a Firewall error.	14

Table D–1 Instance Codes (Continued)

Instance Code	Description	Template
0C433E02	The Quadrant 3 Memory Controller (CACHEB1) detected a Firewall error.	14
43010064	Host Port Protocol component has detected that the other controller has failed and that this controller has taken over the units specified in the extended sense data.	05
43020064	Host Port Protocol component has detected that this controller has taken over (failed back) the units specified in the extended sense data.	05
82042002	A spurious interrupt was detected during the execution of a Subsystem Built-In Self Test.	13
82052002	An unrecoverable error was detected during execution of the HOST PORT Subsystem Test. The system will not be able to communicate with the host.	13
82062002	An unrecoverable error was detected during execution of the UART/ DUART Subsystem Test. This will cause the console to be unusable. This will cause failover communications to fail.	13
82072002	An unrecoverable error was detected during execution of the FX Subsystem Test.	13
820A2002	An unrecoverable error was detected during execution of the PCI9060ES Test.	13
820B2002	An unrecoverable error was detected during execution of the Device Port Subsystem Built-In Self Test. One or more of the device ports on the controller module has failed; some/all of the attached storage is no longer accessible via this controller.	13

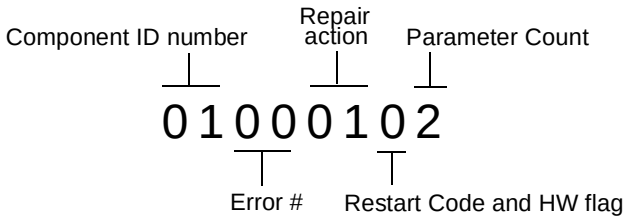
Last Failure Codes

A Last Failure Code is a number that uniquely-describes an unrecoverable condition. It is found at byte offset 104 to 107 and will only appear in Figure D–2, "Template 01 - Last Failure Event Sense Data Response Format" on page D–4, and Figure D–4, "Template 05 - Failover Event Sense Data Response Format" on page D–7.

Last Failure Code Structure

Figure D–13 shows the structure of a Last Failure Code. If you understand its structure, you will be able to translate it, bypassing the FMU.

Figure D–13 Structure of a Last Failure Code



Last Failure Codes and FMU

The format of an Last Failure Code is shown in Figure D–14.

Figure D–14 Last Failure Code Format

off \ bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
104	HW	Restart Code			Parameter Code			
105	Repair Action							
106	Error Number							
107	Component ID							

CXO6469A

Note Do not confuse the Last Failure Code with the Instance Code (see page D–16). They appear at different byte offsets and convey different information.

HW

This hardware/software flag is located at byte offset 104, bit 7. If this flag is equal to 1, the unrecoverable condition is due to a hardware-detected fault. If this flag is equal to 0, the unrecoverable condition is due to an inconsistency with the software, or an intentional restart or shutdown of the controller was requested.

Restart Code

Located at byte offset 104, bits 4-6, the Restart Code describes the actions taken to restart the controller after the unrecoverable condition was detected. Table D–2 gives a description of restart codes and their descriptions.

Table D–2 Controller Restart Codes

Restart Code	Description
0	Full software restart
1	No restart
2	Automatic hardware restart

Parameter Count

The Parameter Count, located at byte offset 104, bits 0-3, indicates the number of Last Failure Parameters containing supplemental information supplied.

Repair Action

The Repair Action found at byte offset 105 indicates the recommended repair action code assigned to the event. This value is used during Symptom-Directed Diagnosis procedures to determine what notification/recovery action should be taken. For more details, see “Recommended Repair Action Codes,” page D–77.

Error Numbers

Located at byte offset 106, the Error Number, when combined with the value contained in the Component ID field, uniquely-identifies the condition detected.

Component IDs

A component ID uniquely identifies the software component that detected the event and is found at byte offset {11}35 (see "Component Identifier Codes," page D–82).

Table D–3 contains the last failure codes that can be issued by the controller's fault-management software.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes

Code	Description
01000100	Memory allocation failure during executive initialization.
01010100	An interrupt without any handler was triggered.
01020100	Entry on timer queue was not of type AQ or BQ.
01030100	Memory allocation for a facility lock failed.
01040100	Memory initialization called with invalid memory type.
01082004	The core diagnostics reported a fault. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the error code value (same as blinking OCP LEDs error code). ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the address of the fault. ■ Last Failure Parameter[2] contains the actual data value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[3] contains the expected data value.
01090105	■ An NMI occurred during EXEC$BUGCHECK processing. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the executive flags value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the RIP from the NMI stack. ■ Last Failure Parameter[2] contains the read diagnostic register 0 value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[3] contains the FX Chip CSR value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[4] contains the SIP last failure code value
010D0110	The System Information structure within the System Information Page has been reset to default settings. The only known cause for this event is an I960 processor hang caused by a reference to a memory region that is not implemented. When such a hang occurs, controller modules equipped with inactivity watchdog timer circuitry will spontaneously reboot after the watchdog timer expires (within seconds of the hang). Controller modules not so equipped will just hang as indicated by the green LED on the OCP remaining in a steady state.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
010E0110	All structures contained in the System Information Page (SIP) and the Last Failure entries have been reset to their default settings. This is a normal occurrence for the first boot following manufacture of the controller module and during the transition from one software version to another if and only if the format of the SIP is different between the two versions. If this event is reported at any other time, follow the recommended repair action associated with this Last Failure code.
010F0110	All structures contained in the System Information Page and the Last Failure entries have been reset to their default settings as the result of certain controller manufacturing configuration activities. If this event is reported at any other time, follow the recommended repair action associated with this Last Failure code.
01100100	Non-maskable interrupt entered but no Non-maskable interrupt pending. This is typically caused by an indirect call to address 0.
01110106	A bugcheck occurred during EXEC$BUGCHECK processing. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the executive flags value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the RIP from the bugcheck call stack. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the first SIP last failure parameter value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the second SIP last failure parameter value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the SIP last failure code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the EXEC$BUGCHECK call last failure code value.
01150106	A bugcheck occurred before subsystem initialization completed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the executive flags value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the RIP from the bugcheck call stack. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the first SIP last failure parameter value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the second SIP last failure parameter value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the SIP last failure code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the EXEC$BUGCHECK call last failure code value.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
01160108	The I960 reported a machine fault (parity error). ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the RESERVED value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the access type value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the access address value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the number of faults value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the AC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the fault type and subtype values. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the RIP value.
01170108	The I960 reported a machine fault (parity error) while an NMI was being processed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the RESERVED value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the access type value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the access address value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the number of faults value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the AC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the fault type and subtype values. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the RIP value.
01180105	A machine fault (parity error) occurred during EXEC$BUGCHECK processing. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the executive flags value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the RIP from the machine fault stack. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the read diagnostic register 0 value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the FX Chip CSR value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the SIP last failure code value.
011B0108	The I960 reported a machine fault (nonparity error). ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the Fault Data (2) value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the Fault Data (1) value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the Fault Data (0) value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the Number of Faults value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the AC value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the Fault Flags, Type and Subtype values. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the RIP value (actual).

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
011C0011	Controller execution terminated via display of solid fault code in OCP LEDs. Note that upon receipt of this Last Failure in a last gasp message the other controller in a dual controller configuration will inhibit assertion of the KILL line. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the OCP LED solid fault code value.
018000A0	A powerfail interrupt occurred.
018600A0	A processor interrupt was generated with an indication that the other controller in a dual controller configuration asserted the KILL line to disable this controller.
018700A0	A processor interrupt was generated with an indication that the (//) RESET button on the controller module was depressed.
018800A0	A processor interrupt was generated with an indication that the program card was removed.
018900A0	A processor interrupt was generated with an indication that the controller inactivity watch dog timer expired.
018E2582	A NMI interrupt was generated with an indication that a memory system problem occurred. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the memory controller register address which encountered the error. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the memory controller's Command Status Register value.
018F2087	A NMI interrupt was generated with an indication that a controller system problem occurred. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains PCI status. Bits 31::24 hold PCFX PSCR status and bits 15::08 hold PLX PSCR status. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCFX PDAL control/status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the previous PDAL address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the current PDAL address of error register.
01902080	The PCI bus on the controller will not allow a master to initiate a transfer. Unable to provide further diagnosis of the problem.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
01910084	A Cache Module was inserted or removed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of actual Cache Module A exists state. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of actual Cache Module B exists state. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of expected Cache Module A exists state. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of expected Cache Module B exists state.
01920186	Unable to read the FX because a Device Port or a Host Port locked the PDAL bus. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of read diagnostic register 2. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the IBUS address of error register.
01932588	An error has occurred on the CDAL. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCFX CDAL control / status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the previous CDAL address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the current CDAL address of error register.
01942088	An error has occurred on the PDAL. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCFX PDAL control / status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the previous PDAL address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the current PDAL address of error register.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
01950188	An error has occurred that caused the FX to be rest, when not permissible. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCFX PDAL control / status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCFX CDAL control / status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the current PDAL address of error register.
01960186	The Ibus is inaccessible. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of read diagnostic register 2. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the IBUS address of error register.
01970188	Software indicates all NMI causes cleared, but some remain. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of read diagnostic register 2. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCFX PDAL control / status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCFX CDAL control / status register.
01982087	The Ibus encountered a parity error. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of read diagnostic register 2. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the RIP.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
01992088	An error was detected by the PLX. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of read diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the value of read diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value of write diagnostic register 0. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the value of write diagnostic register 1. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the IBUS address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PLX status register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the previous PDAL address of error register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the RIP.
02010100	Initialization code was unable to allocate enough memory to set up the send data descriptors.
02040100	Unable to allocate memory necessary for data buffers.
02050100	Unable to allocate memory for the Free Buffer Array.
02080100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when populating the disk read DWD stack.
02090100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when populating the disk write DWD stack.
020C0100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when populating the miscellaneous DWD stack.
02100100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when creating the device services state table.
02170100	Unable to allocate memory for the Free Node Array.
021D0100	Unable to allocate memory for the Free Buffer Array.
021F0100	Unable to allocate memory for WARPs and RMDs.
02210100	Invalid parameters in CACHE$OFFER_META call.
02220100	No buffer found for CACHE$MARK_META_DIRTY call.
02270104	A callback from DS on a transfer request has returned a bad or illegal DWD status. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD Status. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the DWD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PUB address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the Device Port.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
022C0100	A READ_LONG operation was requested for a Local Buffer Transfer. READ_LONG is not supported for Local Buffer Transfers.
022D0100	A WRITE_LONG operation was requested for a Local Buffer Transfer. WRTE_LONG is not supported for Local Buffer Transfers.
023A2084	A processor interrupt was generated by the controller's XOR engine (FX), indicating an unrecoverable error condition. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the FX Control and Status Register (CSR). ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the FX DMA Indirect List Pointer register (DILP). ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the FX DMA Page Address register (DADDR). ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the FX DMA Command and control register (DCMD).
02440100	The logical unit mapping type was detected invalid in va_set_disk_geometry()
02530102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$LOOKUP_LOCK(). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02560102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$LOOKUP_LOCK(). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02570102	An invalid status was returned from VA$XFER() during an operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
025A0102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$LOOKUP_LOCK(). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02620102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$LOOKUP_LOCK(). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02690102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$OFFER_WRITE_DATA(). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
027B0102	An invalid status was returned from VA$XFER() in a complex ACCESS operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
027D0100	Unable to allocate memory for a Failover Control Block.
027E0100	Unable to allocate memory for a Failover Control Block.
027F0100	Unable to allocate memory for a Failover Control Block.
02800100	Unable to allocate memory for a Failover Control Block.
02840100	Unable to allocate memory for the XNode Array.
02860100	Unable to allocate memory for the Fault Management Event Information Packet used by the Cache Manager in generating error logs to the host.
02880100	Invalid FOC Message in cmfoc_snd_cmd.
028A0100	Invalid return status from DIAG$CACHE_MEMORY_TEST.
028B0100	Invalid return status from DIAG$CACHE_MEMORY_TEST.
028C0100	Invalid error status given to cache_fail.
028E0100	Invalid DCA state detected in init_crashover.
02910100	Invalid metadata combination detected in build_raid_node.
02920100	Unable to handle that many bad dirty pages (exceeded MAX_BAD_DIRTY). Cache memory is bad.
02930100	There was no free or freeable buffer to convert bad metadata or to borrow a buffer during failover of bad dirty.
02940100	A free Device Correlation Array entry could not be found during write-back cache failover.
02950100	Invalid DCA state detected in start_crashover.
02960100	Invalid DCA state detected in start_failover.
02970100	Invalid DCA state detected in init_failover.
02990100	A free RAID Correlation Array entry could not be found during write-back cache failover.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
029A0100	Invalid cache buffer metadata detected while scanning the Buffer Metadata Array. Found a page containing dirty data but the corresponding Device Correlation Array entry does exist.
029D0100	Invalid metadata combination detected in build_bad_raid_node.
029F0100	The Cache Manager software has insufficient resources to handle a buffer request pending.
02A00100	VA change state is trying to change device affinity and the cache has data for this device.
02A10100	Pubs not one when transportable
02A20100	Pubs not one when transportable
02A30100	No available data buffers. If the cache module exists then this is true after testing the whole cache. Otherwise there were no buffers allocated from BUFFER memory on the controller module.
02A40100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating VAXDs.
02A50100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating DILPs.
02A60100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating Change State Work Items.
02A70100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating VA Request Items.
02A90100	Too many pending FOC$SEND requests by the Cache Manager. Code is not designed to handle more than one FOC$SEND to be pending because there’s no reason to expect more than one pending.
02AA0100	An invalid call was made to CACHE$DEALLOCATE_CLD. Either that device had dirty data or it was bound to a RAIDset.
02AB0100	An invalid call was made to CACHE$DEALLOCATE_SLD. A RAIDset member either had dirty data or write-back already turned on.
02AC0100	An invalid call was made to CACHE$DEALLOCATE_SLD. The RAIDset still has data (strip nodes).

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02AD0180	The FX detected a compare error for data that was identical. This error has always previously occurred due to a hardware problem.
02AE0100	The mirrorset member count and individual member states are inconsistent. Discovered during a mirrorset write or erase.
02AF0102	An invalid status was returned from VA$XFER() in a write operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02B00102	An invalid status was returned from VA$XFER () in an erase operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the invalid status.
02B10100	A mirrorset read operation was received and the round robin selection algorithm found no normal members in the mirrorset. Internal inconsistency.
02B20102	An invalid status was returned from CACHE$LOCK_READ during a mirror copy operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the DD address. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the invalid status.
02B30100	CACHE$CHANGE_MIRROR_MODE invoked illegally (cache bad, dirty data still resident in the cache.)
02B90100	Invalid code loop count attempting to find the Cache ID Blocks.
02BD0100	A mirrorset metadata online operation found no normal members in the mirrorset. Internal inconsistency.
02BE0100	No free pages in the other cache. In performing mirror cache failover, a bad page was found, and an attempt was made to recover the data from the good copy (primary/ mirror), but no free good page was found on the other cache to copy the data to.
02BF0100	Report_error routine encountered an unexpected failure status returned from DIAG$LOCK_AND_TEST_CACHE_B.
02C00100	Copy_buff_on_this routine expected the given page to be marked bad and it wasn't.
02C10100	Copy_buff_on_other routine expected the given page to be marked bad and it wasn't.
02C30100	CACHE$CREATE_MIRROR was invoked by C_SWAP under unexpected conditions (e.g., other controller not dead, bad lock state).
02C60100	Mirroring transfer found CLD with writeback state OFF.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02C70100	Bad BBR offsets for active shadowset, detected on write.
02C80100	Bad BBR offsets for active shadowset, detected on read.
02C90100	Illegal call made to CACHE$PURGE_META when the storageset was not quiesced.
02CA0100	Illegal call made to VA$RAID5_META_READ when another read (of metadata) is already in progress on the same strip.
02CB0000	A restore of the configuration has been done. This cleans up and restarts with the new configuration.
02CC0100	On an attempt, which is not allowed to fail, to allocate a cache node, no freeable cache node was found.
02D00100	Not all alter_device requests from VA_SAVE_CONFIG completed within the timeout interval.
02D30100	The controller has insufficient memory to allocate enough data structures used to manage metadata operations.
02D60100	An invalid storage set type was specified for metadata initialization.
02D90100	Bad CLD pointer passed setwb routine.
02DA0100	A fatal logic error occurred while trying to restart a stalled data transfer stream.
02DB0100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when populating the disk read PCX DWD stack.
02DC0100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when populating the disk write PCX DWD stack.
02DD0101	The VA state change deadman timer expired, and at least one VSI was still interlocked. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the nv_index.
02DE0100	An attempt to allocate memory for a null pub failed to get the memory.
02DF0101	License identified in Last Failure Parameter [0] was not forced valid.
02E00180	Mirror functionality is broken.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02E11016	While attempting to restore saved configuration information, data for two unrelated controllers was found. The restore code is unable to determine which disk contains the correct information. The Port/Target/LUN information for the two disks is contained in the parameter list. Remove the disk containing the incorrect information, reboot the controller, and issue the SET THIS_CONTROLLER INITIAL_CONFIGURATION command. When the controller reboots, the proper configuration will be loaded. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the first disk port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first disk target. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the first disk LUN. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the second disk port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the second disk target. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the second disk LUN.
02E20100	An attempt to allocate a va_cs_work item from the S_va_free_cs_work_queue failed.
02E30100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02E40100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
O2E50100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02E60100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02E70100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02E80100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02E90100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02EA0100	An attempt to allocate a free VAR failed.
02EB0100	An attempt to allocate a free metadata WARP failed.
02EC0101	An online request was received for a unit when both controllers had dirty data for the unit. The crash is to allow the surviving controller to copy over all of the dirty data. Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the nv_index of the unit.
02ED0100	On an attempt, which is not allowed to fail, to allocate a BDB, no freeable BDB was found.
02EE0102	A CLD is already allocated when it should be free. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the requesting entity. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the CLD index.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02EF0102	A CLD is free when it should be allocated. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the requesting entity. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the CLD index.
02F00100	The controller has insufficient free resources for the configuration restore process to obtain a facility lock.
02F10102	The configuration restore process encountered an unexpected non-volatile parameter store format. The process cannot restore from this version. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the version found. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the expected version.
02F20100	The controller has insufficient free resources for the configuration restore process to release a facility lock.
02F34083	A device read operation failed during the configuration restore operation. The controller is crashed to prevent possible loss of saved configuration information on other functioning devices. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the disk port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the disk target. ■ Last failure Parameter [2] contains the disk LUN.
02F44083	The calculated error detection code on the saved configuration information is bad. The controller is crashed to prevent destruction of other copies of the saved configuration information. Remove the device with the bad information and retry the operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the disk port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the disk target. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the disk LUN.
02F54083	The device saved configuration information selected for the restore process is from an unsupported controller type. Remove the device with the unsupported information and retry the operation. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the disk port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the disk target. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the disk LUN.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02F60103	An invalid modification to the no_interlock VSI flag was attempted. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the nv_index of the config on which the problem was found. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains modification flag. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the current value of the no_interlock flag. If the modification flag is 1, then an attempt was being made to set the no_interlock flag, and the no_interlock flag was not clear at the time. If the modification flag is 0, then an attempt was being made to clear the no_interlock flag, and the no_interlock flag was not set (== 1) at the time.
02F70100	During boot testing, one or more device ports (SCSI) were found to be bad. Due to a problem in the SYMBIOS 770 chip, the diagnostic may occasionally fail the port even though the hardware is OKAY. A reboot should clear up the problem. If the port is actually broken, logic to detect a loop that repeatedly causes the same bugcheck will cause a halt.
02F80103	An attempt was made to bring a unit online when the cache manager says that a member CLD was not in the appropriate state. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the nv_index of the config on which the problem was found. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the map type of that config. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the value from CACHE$CHECK_CID that was not acceptable.
02F90100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating structures for read ahead caching.
02FA0100	A read ahead caching data structure (RADD) is inconsistent.
02FB2084	A processor interrupt was generated by the controller's XOR engine (FX), indicating an unrecoverable error condition. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the FX Control and Status Register (CSR). ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the FX DMA Indirect List Pointer register (DILP). ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the FX DMA Page Address register (DADDR). ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the FX DMA Command and control register (DCMD).

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
02FC0180	The FX detected a compare error for data that was identical. This error has always previously occurred due to a hardware problem.
02FD0100	The controller has insufficient free memory to restore saved configuration information from disk.
02FE0105	A field in the VSI was not cleared when an attempt was made to clear the interlock. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the NV index of the VSI on which the problem was found. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the contents of the enable_change field of the VSI, which should be zero. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the contents of the desired_state field of the VSI, which should be zero. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the contents of the completion_routine field of the VSI, which should be zero. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the contents of the open_requests field of the VSI, which should be zero.
03010100	Failed request for port-specific scripts memory allocation.
03020101	Invalid SCSI direct-access device opcode in misc command DWD. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the SCSI command opcode.
03040101	Invalid SCSI CDROM device opcode in misc command DWD. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the SCSI command opcode.
03060101	Invalid SCSI device type in PUB. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the SCSI device type.
03070101	Invalid CDB Group Code detected during create of misc cmd DWD ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the SCSI command opcode.
03080101	Invalid SCSI OPTICAL MEMORY device opcode in misc command DWD. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the SCSI command opcode.
03090101	Failed request for allocation of pci miscellaneous block Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the failed dwd command class.
030A0100	Error DWD not found in port in_proc_q.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
030B0188	A dip error was detected when pcb_busy was set. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the new info NULL-SSTAT0-DSTAT-ISTAT. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.
031E0100	Can't find in_error dwd on in-process queue.
031F0100	Either DWD_ptr is null or bad value in dsps.
03280100	SCSI CDB contains an invalid group code for a transfer command.
03290100	The required Event Information Packet (EIP) or Device Work Descriptor (DWD) were not supplied to the Device Services error logging code.
032B0100	A Device Work Descriptor (DWD) was supplied with a NULL Physical Unit Block (PUB) pointer.
03320101	An invalid code was passed to the error recovery thread in the error_stat field of the PCB. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the PCB error_stat code.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
03330188	A parity error was detected by a device port while sending data out onto the SCSI bus. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.
03350188	The TEA (bus fault) signal was asserted into a device port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
03370108	A device port detected an illegal script instruction. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.
03380188	A device port's DSTAT register contains multiple asserted bits, or an invalidily asserted bit, or both. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
03390108	An unknown interrupt code was found in a device port's DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.
033C0101	An invalid code was seen by the error recovery thread in the er_funct_step field of the PCB. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB er_funct_step code.
033E0108	An attempt was made to restart a device port at the SDP DBD. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
033F0108	An EDC error was detected on a read of a soft-sectored device path not yet implemented. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copy of the device port TEMP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DBC register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port SSTAT2/ SSTAT1/SSTAT0/DSTAT registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port LCRC/ RESERVED/ISTAT/DFIFO registers.
03410101	Invalid SCSI device type in PUB. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PUB SCSI device type.
03450188	A Master Data Parity Error was detected by a port. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the PCB port_ptr value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the PCB copies of the device port DCMD/ DBC registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the PCB copy of the device port DNAD register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSP register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the PCB copy of the device port DSPS register. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the PCB copies of the device port DSTAT/ SSTAT0/SSTAT1/SSTAT2 registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [6] contains the PCB copies of the device port DFIFO/ ISTAT/SBCL/RESERVED registers. ■ Last Failure Parameter [7] contains the PCB copies of the device port SIST0/ SIST1/SXFER/SCNTL3 registers.
03470100	Insufficient memory available for target block allocation.
03480100	Insufficient memory available for device port info block allocation.
03490100	Insufficient memory available for autoconfig buffer allocation.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
034A0100	Insufficient memory available for PUB allocation.
034B0100	Insufficient memory available for DS init buffer allocation.
034C0100	Insufficient memory available for static structure allocation.
034D0100	DS init DWDs exhausted.
034E2080	Diagnostics report all device ports are broken.
034F0100	Insufficient memory available for reselect target block allocation.
03500100	Insufficient memory available for command disk allocation.
03520100	A failure resulted when an attempt was made to allocate a DWD for use by DS CDI.
035A0100	Invalid SCSI message byte passed to DS.
035B0100	Insufficient DWD resources available for SCSI message passthrough.
03640100	Processing run_switch disabled for LOGDISK associated with the other controller.
03650100	Processing pub unblock for LOGDISK associated with the other controller.
03660100	No memory available to allocate pub to tell the other controller of reset to one if its LUNs
03670100	No memory available to allocate pub to tell the other controller of a BDR to one if its LUNs
036F0101	Either send_sdtr or send_wdtr flag set in a non-miscellaneous DWD. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the invalid command class type.
03780181	In ds_get_resume_addr, the buffer address is non-longword aligned for FX access. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the re-entry dbd address value.
03820100	Failed request for mapping table memory allocation.
03830100	Failed request pci 875 block memory allocation.
03850101	ds_alloc_mem called with invalid memory type Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the invalid memory type.
03860100	ds_alloc_mem was unable to get requested memory allocated: NULL pointer returned.
038C0100	Insufficient memory available for completion dwd array allocation.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
03980100	Failed to allocate expandable EMU static work structures.
03990100	Failed to allocate expandable EMU work entry.
039A0100	Failed to allocate expandable EMU FOC work entry.
039B0100	EMU request work queue corrupted.
039C0100	EMU response work queue corrupted.
039D0100	EMU work queue corrupted.
039E0100	EMU foc request work queue corrupted.
039F0100	EMU foc response work queue corrupted.
03A08093	A configuration or hardware error was reported by the EMU. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the solid OCP pattern which identifies the type of problem encountered. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the cabinet ID reporting the problem. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the SCSI Port number where the problem exists (if port-specific).
03A28193	The EMU reported Terminator Power out of range. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains a bit mask indicating which SCSI Port number(s) where the problem exists for cab 0. Bit 0 set indicates SCSI Port 1, Bit 1 set indicates SCSI port 2, etc. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains a bit mask indicating which SCSI Port number(s) where the problem exists for cab 2. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains a bit mask indicating which SCSI Port number(s) where the problem exists for cab 3.
04010101	The requester id component of the instance code passed to FM$REPORT_EVENT is larger than the maximum allowed for this environment. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the instance code value.
04020102	The requester's error table index passed to FM$REPORT_EVENT is larger than the maximum allowed for this requester. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the instance code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the requester error table index value.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
04030102	The USB index supplied in the Event Information Packet (EIP) is larger than the maximum number of USBs. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the instance code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the USB index value.
04040103	The event log format found in V_fm_template_table is not supported by the Fault Manager. The bad format was discovered while trying to fill in a supplied Event Information Packet (EIP). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the instance code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the format code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[2] contains the requester error table index value.
04050100	The Fault Manager could not allocate memory for its Event Information Packet (EIP) buffers.
040A0100	The caller of FM$CANCEL_SCSI_DE_NOTIFICATION passed an address of a deferred error notification routine which doesn't match the address of any routines for which deferred error notification is enabled.
040E0100	FM$ENABLE_DE_NOTIFICATION was called to enable deferred error notification but the specified routine was already enabled to receive deferred error notification.
040F0102	The Event Information Packet (EIP)->generic.mscp1.flgs field of the EIP passed to FM$REPORT_EVENT contains an invalid flag. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the instance code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter[1] contains the value supplied in the Event Information Packet (EIP)->generic.mscp1.flgs field.
04100101	Unexpected template type found during fmu_display_errlog processing. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the unexpected template value.
04110101	Unexpected instance code found during fmu_memerr_report processing. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the unexpected instance code value.
04120101	CLIB$SDD_FAO call failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the failure status code value.
04140103	The template value found in the eip is not supported by the Fault Manager. The bad template value was discovered while trying to build an esd. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the instance code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the template code value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the requester error table index value.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
05010100	In recursive_nonconflict could not get enough memory for scanning the keyword tables for configuration name conflicts.
06010100	The DUART was unable to allocate enough memory to establish a connection to the CLI.
06020100	A port other than terminal port A was referred to by a set terminal characteristics command. This is illegal.
06030100	A DUP question or default question message type was passed to the DUART driver, but the pointer to the input area to receive the response to the question was NULL.
06040100	Attempted to detach unattached maintenance terminal.
06050100	Attempted output to unattached maintenance terminal.
06060100	Attempted input from output only maintenance terminal service.
06070100	The DUART was unable to allocate enough memory for its input buffers
06080000	Controller was forced to restart due to entry of a CNTRL-K character on the maintenance terminal.
07010100	All available slots in the FOC notify table are filled.
07020100	FOC$CANCEL_NOTIFY() was called to disable notification for a rtn that did not have notification enabled.
07030100	Unable to start the Failover Control Timer before main loop.
07040100	Unable to restart the Failover Control Timer.
07050100	Unable to allocate flush buffer.
07060100	Unable to allocate active receive fcb.
07070100	The other controller killed this, but could not assert the kill line because nindy on or in debug. So it killed this now.
07080000	The other controller crashed, so this one must crash too.
07090100	A call to EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED failed to return memory when allocating VA Request Items.
08010101	A remote state change was received from the FOC thread that NVFOC does not recognize. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the unrecognized state value.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
08020100	No memory could be allocated for a NVFOC information packet.
08030101	Work received on the S_nvfoc_bque did not have a NVFOC work id. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the id type value that was received on the NVFOC work queue.
08040101	Unknown work value received by the S_nvfoc_bque. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the unknown work value.
08060100	A really write command was received when the NV memory was not locked.
08070100	A write to NV memory was received while not locked.
08080000	The other controller requested this controller to restart.
08090010	The other controller requested this controller to shutdown.
080A0000	The other controller requested this controller to selftest.
080B0100	Could not get enough memory to build a FCB to send to the remote routines on the other controller.
080C0100	Could not get enough memory for FCBs to receive information from the other controller.
080D0100	Could not get enough memory to build a FCB to reply to a request from the other controller.
080E0101	An out-of-range receiver ID was received by the NVFOC communication utility (master send to slave send ACK). Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the bad id value.
080F0101	An out-of-range receiver ID was received by the NVFOC communication utility (received by master). Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the bad id value.
08100101	A call to NVFOC$TRANSACTION had a from field (id) that was out of range for the NVFOC communication utility. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the bad id value.
08110101	NVFOC tried to defer more than one FOC send. Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the master ID of the connection that had the multiple delays.
08140100	Could not allocate memory to build a workblock to queue to the NVFOC thread.
08160100	A request to clear the remote configuration was received but the memory was not locked.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
08170100	A request to read the next configuration was received but the memory was not locked.
08180100	Could not get enough memory for FLS FCBs to receive information from the other controller.
08190100	An unlock command was received when the NV memory was not locked.
081A0100	Unable to allocate memory for remote work.
081B0101	Bad remote work received on remote work queue. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the id type value that was received on the NVFOC remote work queue.
081C0101	Bad member management work received. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the bad member management value that was detected.
081D0000	In order to go into mirrored cache mode, the controllers must be restarted.
081E0000	In order to go into nonmirrored cache mode, the controllers must be restarted.
081F0000	An FLM$INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES error was returned from a FLM lock or unlock call.
08200000	Expected restart so the write_instance may recover from a configuration mismatch.
08210100	Unable to allocate memory to setup NVFOC lock/unlock notification routines.
09010100	Unable to acquire memory to initialize the FLM structures.
09640101	Work that was not FLM work was found on the FLM queue. Bad format is detected or the formatted string overflows the output buffer. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the work found.
09650101	Work that was not FLM work was found on the FLM queue. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the structure found.
09670101	Local FLM detected an invalid facility to act upon. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the faciltiy found.
09680101	Remote FLM detected an error and requested the local controller to restart. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the reason for the request.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
09C80101	Remote FLM detected an invalid facility to act upon. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the facility found.
09C90101	Remote FLM detected an invalid work type. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the work type found.
09CA0101	Remote FLM detected an invalid work type. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the work type found.
09CB0012	Remote FLM detected that the other controller has a facility lock manager at an incompatible revision level with this controller. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the controller's FLM revision. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the other controller's FLM revision.
0A020100	ILF$CACHE_READY unable to allocate necessary DWDs.
0A030100	ILF$CACHE_READY buffers_obtained > non-zero stack entry count.
0A040100	ILF$CACHE_READY DWD overrun.
0A050100	ILF$CACHE_READY DWD underrun.
0A060100	ILF$CACHE_READY found buffer marked for other controller.
0A070100	CACHE$FIND_LOG_BUFFERS returned continuation handle > 0.
0A080100	Not processing a bugcheck.
0A090100	No active DWD.
0A0A0100	Current entry pointer is not properly aligned.
0A0B0100	Next entry pointer is not properly aligned.
0A0C0100	Next entry was partially loaded.
0A0E0100	Active DWD is not a DISK WRITE DWD as expected.
0A0F0100	New active DWD is not a DISK WRITE DWD as expected.
0A100100	Data buffer pointer is not properly aligned.
0A120100	Data buffer pointer is not properly aligned.
0A130100	Data buffer pointer is not properly aligned.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
0A140100	New entry pointer is not properly aligned.
0A150100	New entry record type is out of range.
0A190102	ilf_depopulate_DWD_to_cache first page guard check failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD address value ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the buffer address value.
0A1C0102	ILF$LOG_ENTRY page guard check failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD address value ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the buffer address value.
0A1D0102	ILF$LOG_ENTRY page guard check failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD address value ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the buffer address value.
0A1E0102	ILF$LOG_ENTRY page guard check failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD address value ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the buffer address value.
0A1F0100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs found duplicate buffer for current DWD.
0A200101	Unknown bugcheck code passed to ilf_cache_interface_crash. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the unknown bugcheck code value.
0A210100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs found buffer type not IDX_ILF.
0A220100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs found buffer DBD index too big.
0A240100	ilf_check_handle_array_edc found ihiea EDC bad.
0A250100	ilf_get_next_handle found no free ihiea entry.
0A260100	ilf_remove_handle could not find specified handle.
0A270100	ilf_depopulate_DWD_to_cache could not find handle for first buffer.
0A280100	ilf_depopulate_DWD_to_cache buffer handle does not match current handle.
0A290100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs could not find handle for DWD being rebound.
0A2B0100	ILF$CACHE_READY cache manager did not return multiple of DWD DBDs worth of buffers.
0A2C0100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs page guard check failed.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
0A2D0100	ilf_populate_DWD_from_cache buffer stack entry zero or not page aligned.
0A2E0100	ilf_populate_DWD_from_cache returned buffer type not IDX_ILF.
0A2F0100	ilf_rebind_cache_buffs_to_DWDs buffer stack entry not page aligned.
0A300100	ilf_depopulate_DWD_to_cache buffer stack entry zero or not page aligned.
0A310100	ilf_distribute_cache_DWDs active handle count not as expected.
0A320102	ILF$LOG_ENTRY, page guard check failed. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the DWD address value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the buffer address value.
0A330100	ilf_ouput_error, message_keeper_array full.
0A340101	ilf_output_error, no memory for message display. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the message address value.
0A350100	DWD failed validation.
0B010010	Due to an operator request, the controllers non-volatile configuration information has been reset to its initial state.
0B020100	The controller has insufficient free memory to allocate a Configuration Manager work item needed to perform the requested configuration reset.
0B030100	The controller has insufficient free memory to allocate a Configuration Manager work item needed to perform the requested configuration restore.
0B040100	The controller has insufficient free memory to allocate a Configuration Manager WWL work item needed to perform the requested World-Wide LUN ID change.
0B050100	More requests to WWL$NOTIFY have been made than can be supported.
0B060100	A call to WWL$UPDATE resulted in the need for another World-Wide LUN ID slot, and no free slots were available.
0B070100	The controller has insufficient free memory to allocate a Configuration Manager DNN work item needed to perform the requested Device Nickname change.
0B080100	More requests to DNN$NOTIFY have been made than can be supported.
0B090100	A call to DNN$UPDATE resulted in the need for another Device Nickname slot, and no free slots were available.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
0D000011	The EMU firmware returned a bad status when told to poweroff. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of the bad status.
12000103	Two values found not equal. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12010103	Two values found equal. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12020103	First value found bigger or equal. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12030103	First value found bigger. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12040103	First value found smaller or equal. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12050103	First value found smaller. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the first variable value. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the second variable value.
12060102	vsi_ptr->no_interlock not set. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains nv_index value.
12070102	vsi_ptr->allocated_this not set. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains nv_index value.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
12080102	vsi_ptr->cs_interlocked not set. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains nv_index value.
12090102	Unhandled switch case. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the ASSUME instance address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains nv_index value.
20010100	The action for work on the CLI queue should be CLI_CONNECT, CLI_COMMAND_IN or CLI_PROMPT. If it isn't one of these three, this bugcheck will result.
20020100	The FAO returned a non-successful response. This will only happen if a bad format is detected or the formatted string overflows the output buffer.
20030100	The type of work received on the CLI work queue wasn't of type CLI.
20060100	A work item of an unknown type was placed on the CLI's SCSI Virtual Terminal thread's work queue by the CLI.
20080000	This controller requested this controller to restart.
20090010	This controller requested this controller to shutdown.
200A0000	This controller requested this controller to selftest.
200B0100	Could not get enough memory for FCBs to receive information from the other controller.
200D0101	After many calls to DS$PORT_BLOCKED, we never got a FALSE status back (which signals that nothing is blocked). ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the port number (1 - n) that we were waiting on to be unblocked.
200E0101	While traversing the structure of a unit, a config_info node was discovered with an unrecognized structure type. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the structure type number that was unrecognized.
200F0101	A config_info node was discovered with an unrecognized structure type. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the structure type number that was unrecognized.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
20100101	A config_node of type VA_MA_DEVICE had an unrecognized SCSI device type. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the SCSI device type number that was unrecognized.
20110100	An attempt to allocate memory so the CLI prompt messages could be deleted failed.
20120101	While traversing the structure of a unit, a config_info node was discovered with an unrecognized structure type. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the structure type number that was unrecognized.
20130101	While traversing the structure of a unit, the device was of an unrecognized type. ■ Last Failure Parameter[0] contains the SCSI device type that was unrecognized.
20160000	In order to go into mirrored cache mode, the controllers must be restarted.
20160100	Unable to allocate resources needed for the CLI local program.
20170000	In order to go into unmirrored cache mode, the controllers must be restarted.
20190010	A cache state of a unit remains WRITE_CACHE_UNWRITTEN_DATA. The unit is not ONLINE, thus this state would only be valid for a very short period of time.
201A0100	An attempt to allocate memory so a CLI prompt message could be reformatted failed.
201B0100	Insufficient resources to get memory to lock CLI.
201C0100	Insufficient resources to get memory to unlock CLI.
201D0100	With "set failover copy=other", the controller which is having the configuration copied to will automatically be restarted via this bugcheck.
201E0101	CLI$ALLOCATE_STRUCT() was called by a process which it does not support ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains pscb address.
201F0101	CLI$DEALLOCATE_ALL_STRUCT() was called by a process which it does not support. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains pscb address.
20200100	CLI$ALLOCATE_STRUCT() could not obtain memory for a new nvfoc_rw_remote_nvmem structure.
20220020	This controller requested this subsystem to poweroff.
20230000	A restart of both controllers is required when exiting multibus failover.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
20240000	A restart of both controllers is required when entering multibus failover.
20260000	With “set failover copy=other”, the controller which is having the configuration copied to will automatically be restarted via this bugcheck.
20640000	Nindy was turned on.
20650000	Nindy was turned off.
20692010	To enter dual-redundant mode, both controllers must be of the same type.
206A0000	Controller restart forced by DEBUG CRASH REBOOT command.
206B0010	Controller restart forced by DEBUG CRASH NOREBOOT command.
206C0020	Controller was forced to restart in order for new controller code image to take effect.
206D0000	Controller code load was not completed because the controller could not rundown all units.
43000100	Encountered an unexpected structure type on hp_work_q.
43030100	Unable to allocate the necessary number of large Sense Data buckets in HPP_init().
43100100	Encountered a NULL completion routine pointer in a DD.
43130100	Could not allocate a large sense bucket.
43160100	A sense data bucket of unknown type (neither LARGE or SMALL) was passed to deallocate_SDB().
43170100	Call to VA$ENABLE_NOTIFICATION() failed due to INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES.
43190100	Unable to allocate necessary memory in HPP_int().
431A0100	Unable to allocate necessary timer memory in HPP_int().
43210101	HPP detected unknown error indicated by HPT. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the error value.
43220100	Unable to obtain Free CSR in HPP().
43230101	During processing to maintain consistency of the data for Persistent Reserve SCSI commands, an internal inconsistency was detected. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains a code defining the precise nature of the inconsistency.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
44640100	Not enough abort requests in the system.
44650100	Exceeded the number of SEST abort retries.
44660100	Unable to allocate enough abort requests for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44670100	Unable to allocate enough command HTBs for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44680100	Unable to allocate enough FC HTBs for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44690100	Unable to allocate enough work requests for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
446A0100	Unable to allocate enough HTBs for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
446B0100	Unable to allocate enough TIS structures for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
446C0100	Unable to allocate enough MFSs for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
446D0100	Unable to allocate enough Tachyon headers for Fibre Channel Host port Transport software layer.
446E0100	Unable to allocate enough EDB structures for Fibre Channel Host Port Tansport software layer.
446F0100	Unable to allocate enough LSFS structures for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44700100	Unable to allocate enough TPS structures for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44720101	An illegal status was returned to the FLOGI command error handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains error value.
44730101	An illegal completion message was returned by the Tachyon to I960. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the completion message type.
44740101	The Host Port Transport process handler received an illegal timer. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the timer pointer. type.
44750100	The Host Port Transport work handler received an illegal work request.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
44760100	The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
44770102	An illegal script return value was received by the Host Port Transport init script handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the init function. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains return value. The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
44780102	An illegal script return value was received by the Host Port Transport send script handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the send function. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains return value. The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
44790102	An illegal script return value was received by the Host Port Transport response script handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the rsp function. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains return value. The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
447A0102	An illegal script return value was received by the Host Port Transport error script handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the error function. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains return value. The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
447B0100	The Host Port Transport response script handler received a response before a command was sent.
447C0101	Unhandled command HTB status. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the status value. The Host Port Transport ran out of work requests.
447D0100	The Host Port Transport ran out of command HTBs.
447E0100	The Host Port Transport memory for LOGI parameters.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
447F0100	The Host Port Transport memory for LOGI parameters.
44800101	An illegal status was returned to the name service command error handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains error value.
44810101	An illegal status was returned to the PLOGI command error handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains error value.
44820101	An illegal abort type was given to the Host Port Transport abort handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains abort type.
44830101	An illegal failover request was given to the Host Port Transport request handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains failover request.
44840101	An illegal failover response was given to the Host Port Transport failover response handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains failover response.
44850100	The Host Port Transport failover control had a bad send count.
44860100	Unable to allocate enough ESD structures for Fibre Channel Host Port Transport software layer.
44870101	An illegal abort type was given to the Host Port Transport abort handler. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains abort type.
44892091	Host Port Hardware diagnostic field at system initialization. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains failed port number.
64000100	Insufficient buffer memory to allocate data structures needed to propagate SCSI Mode Select changes to other controller.
64010100	During an initialization of LUN specific mode pages, an unexpected device type was encountered.
64020100	A DD is already in use by a RCV DIAG command - cannot get two RCV_DIAGs without sending the data for the first.
80010100	An HTB was not available to issue an I/O when it should have been.
80030100	DILX tried to release a facility that wasn't reserved by DILX.
80040100	DILX tried to change the unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but was rejected because of insufficient resources.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
80050100	DILX tried to change the usb unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but DILX never received notification of a successful state change.
80060100	DILX tried to switch the unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but was not successful.
80070100	DILX aborted all cmds via va$d_abort() but the HTBS haven't been returned.
80090100	DILX received an end msg which corresponds to an op code not supported by DILX.
800A0100	DILX was not able to restart his timer.
800B0100	DILX tried to issue an I/O for an opcode not supported.
800C0100	DILX tried to issue a oneshot I/O for an opcode not supported.
800D0100	A DILX device control block contains an unsupported unit_state.
800F0100	A DILX cmd completed with a sense key that DILX does not support.
80100100	DILX could not compare buffers because no memory was available from EXEC$ALLOCATE_MEM_ZEROED.
80110100	While DILX was deallocating his deferred error buffers, at least one could not be found.
80120100	DILX expected an Event Information Packet (EIP) to be on the receive EIP queue but no EIPs were there.
80130100	DILX was asked to fill a data buffer with an unsupported data pattern.
80140100	DILX could not process an unsupported answer in dx$reuse_params().
80150100	A deferred error was received with an unsupported template.
83020100	An unsupported message type or terminal request was received by the CONFIG virtual terminal code from the CLI.
83030100	Not all alter_device requests from the CONFIG utility completed within the timeout interval.
83050100	An unsupported message type or terminal request was received by the CFMENU utility code from the CLI.
83060100	Not all alter_device requests from the CFMENU utility completed within the timeout interval.

Table D–3 Last Failure Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
84010100	An unsupported message type or terminal request was received by the CLONE virtual terminal code from the CLI.
85010100	HSUTIL tried to release a facility that wasn't reserved by HSUTIL.
85020100	HSUTIL tried to change the unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but was rejected because of insufficient resources.
85030100	HSUTIL tried to change the usb unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but HSUTIL never received notification of a successful state change.
85040100	HSUTIL tried to switch the unit state from MAINTENANCE_MODE to NORMAL but was not successful.
86000020	Controller was forced to restart in order for new code load or patch to take effect.
86010010	The controller code load function is about to update the program card. This requires controller activity to cease. This code is used to inform the other controller this controller will stop responding to inter-controller communications during card update. An automatic restart of the controller at the end of the program card update will cause normal controller activity to resume.
86020011	The EMU firmware returned a bad status when told to prepare for a code load. Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the value of the bad status.
8A040080	New cache module failed diagnostics. The controller has been reset to clear the error.
8A050080	Could not initialize new cache module. The controller has been reset to clear the error.
8B000186	An single bit error was found by software scrubbing. ■ Last Failure Parameter [0] contains the address of the first single bit ecc error found. ■ Last Failure Parameter [1] contains the count of single bit ecc errors found in the same region below this address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [2] contains the lower 32-bits of the actual data read at the Parameter [0] address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [3] contains the higher 32-bits of the actual data read at the Parameter [0] address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [4] contains the lower 32-bits of the expected data at the Parameter [0] address. ■ Last Failure Parameter [5] contains the higher 32-bits of the expected data at the Parameter [0] address.

Recommended Repair Action Codes

Recommended Repair Action Codes are embedded in Instance and Last Failure codes. Refer to “Instance Codes,” page D–16, and “Last Failure Codes,” page D–36, for a more detailed description of the relationship between these codes.

Table D–4 contains the repair action codes assigned to each significant event in the system.

Table D–4 Recommended Repair Action Codes

Code	Description
00	No action necessary.
01	An unrecoverable hardware detected fault occurred or an unrecoverable software inconsistency was detected. Proceed with controller support avenues.
03	Follow the recommended repair action contained as indicated in the Last Failure Code.
04	Two possible problem sources are indicated: ■ In the case of a shelf with dual power supplies, one of the power supplies has failed. Follow repair action 07 for the power supply with the Power LED out. ■ One of the shelf blowers has failed. Follow repair action 06.
05	Four possible problem sources are indicated: ■ Total power supply failure on a shelf. Follow repair action 09. ■ A device inserted into a shelf that has a broken internal SBB connector. Follow repair action 0A. ■ A standalone device is connected to the controller with an incorrect cable. Follow repair action 08. ■ A controller hardware failure. Follow repair action 20.
06	Determine which blower has failed and replace it.
07	Replace power supply.
08	Replace the cable. Refer to the specific device documentation.
09	Determine power failure cause.
0A	Determine which SBB has a failed connector and replace it.

Table D–4 Recommended Repair Action Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
0B	The other controller in a dual-redundant configuration has been reset with the "Kill" line by the controller that reported the event. To restart the "Killed" controller enter the CLI command RESTART OTHER on the "Surviving" controller and then depress the (//) RESET button on the "Killed" controller. If the other controller is repeatedly being "Killed" for the same or a similar reason, follow repair action 20.
0C	Both controllers in a dual-redundant configuration are attempting to use the same SCSI ID (either 6 or 7 as indicated in the event report). Note that the other controller of the dual-redundant pair has been reset with the "Kill" line by the controller that reported the event. Two possible problem sources are indicated: ■ A controller hardware failure. ■ A controller backplane failure. First, follow repair action 20 for the "Killed" controller. If the problem persists follow repair action 20 for the "Surviving" controller. If the problem still persists replace the controller backplane.
0D	The Environmental Monitor Unit has detected an elevated temperature condition. Check the shelf and its components for the cause of the fault.
0E	The Environmental Monitor Unit has detected an external air-sense fault. Check components outside of the shelf for the cause of the fault.
0F	An environmental fault previously detected by the Environmental Monitor Unit is now fixed. This event report is notification that the repair was successful.
10	Restore on-disk configuration information to original state.
20	Replace the controller module.
22	Replace the indicated cache module or the appropriate memory DIMMs on the indicated cache module.
23	Replace the indicated write cache battery. CAUTION: BATTERY REPLACEMENT MAY CAUSE INJURY.

Table D–4 Recommended Repair Action Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
24	Check for the following invalid write cache configurations: ■ If the wrong write cache module is installed, replace with the matching module or clear the invalid cache error via the CLI. Refer to Appendix B, “CLI Commands” for more information. ■ If the write cache module is missing, reseat cache if it is actually present, or add the missing cache module, or clear the invalid cache error via the CLI. Refer to Appendix B, “CLI Commands” for more details. ■ If in a dual-redundant configuration and one of the write cache modules is missing, match write cache boards with both controllers.
25	An unrecoverable Memory System failure occurred. Upon restart the controller will generate one or more Memory System Failure Event Sense Data Responses; follow the repair action(s) contained therein.
37	The Memory System Failure translator could not determine the failure cause. Follow repair action 01.
38	Replace the indicated cache memory DIMM.
39	Check that the cache memory DIMMs are properly configured.
3A	This error applies to this controller’s mirrored cache. Since the mirrored cache is physically located on the other controller’s cache module, replace the other controller’s cache module, or the appropriate memory DIMMs on the other controller’s cache module.
3C	This error applies to this controller’s mirrored cache. Since the mirrored cache is physically located on the other controller’s cache module, replace the indicated cache memory DIMM on the other controller’s cache module.
3D	Either the primary cache or the mirrored cache has inconsistent data. Check for the following conditions to determine appropriate means to restore mirrored copies. ■ If the mirrored cache is reported as inconsistent and a previous FRU Utility warmswap of the mirrored cache module was unsuccessful, retry the procedure via the FRU Utility, by removing the module and re-inserting the same or a new module. ■ Otherwise, enter the CLI command SHUTDOWN THIS to clear the inconsistency upon reboot.
3E	Replace the indicated cache module.
3F	No action necessary, cache diagnostics will determine whether the indicated cache module is faulty.

Table D–4 Recommended Repair Action Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
40	If the Sense Data FRU field is non-zero, follow repair action 41. Otherwise, replace the appropriate FRU associated with the device's SCSI interface or the entire device.
41	Consult the device's maintenance manual for guidance on replacing the indicated device FRU.
43	Update the configuration data to correct the problem.
44	Replace the SCSI cable for the failing SCSI bus. If the problem persists, replace the controller backplane, drive backplane, or controller module.
45	Interpreting the device supplied Sense Data is beyond the scope of the controller's firmware. See the device's service manual to determine the appropriate repair action, if any.
50	The RAIDset is inoperative for one or more of the following reasons: ■ More than one member malfunctioned. Perform repair action 55. ■ More than one member is missing. Perform repair action 58. ■ Before reconstruction of a previously replaced member completes another member becomes missing or malfunctions. Perform repair action 59. ■ The members have been moved around and the consistency checks show mismatched members. Perform repair action 58.
51	The mirrorset is inoperative for one or more of the following reasons: ■ The last NORMAL member has malfunctioned. Perform repair actions 55 and 59. ■ The last NORMAL member is missing. Perform repair action 58. ■ The members have been moved around and the consistency checks show mismatched members. Perform repair action 58.
52	The indicated Storageset member was removed for one of the following reasons: ■ The member malfunctioned. Perform repair action 56. ■ By operator command. Perform repair action 57.
53	The STORAGESET may be in a state that prevents the adding of a replacement member, check the state of the STORAGESET and its associated UNIT and resolve the problems found before adding the replacement member.
54	The device may be in a state that prevents adding it as a replacement member or may not be large enough for the STORAGESET. Use another device for the ADD action and perform repair action 57 for the device that failed to be added.
55	Perform the repair actions indicated in any and all event reports found for the devices that are members of the STORAGESET.

Table D–4 Recommended Repair Action Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
56	Perform the repair actions indicated in any and all event reports found for the member device that was removed from the STORAGESET. Then perform repair action 57.
57	Delete the device from the FAILEDSET and redeploy, perhaps by adding it to the SPARESET so it will be available to be used to replace another failing device.
58	Install the physical devices that are members of the STORAGESET in the proper Port, Target, and LUN locations.
59	Delete the STORAGESET, recreate it with the appropriate ADD, INITIALIZE, and ADD UNIT commands and reload its contents from backup storage.
5A	Restore the MIRRORSET data from backup storage.
5B	The mirrorset is inoperative due to a disaster tolerance failsafe locked condition, as a result of the loss of all local or remote NORMAL/NORMALIZING members while ERROR_MODE=FAILSAFE was enabled. To clear the failsafe locked condition, enter the CLI command SET unit-number ERROR_MODE=NORMAL.
5C	The mirrorset has at least one local NORMAL/NORMALIZING member and one remote NORMAL/NORMALIZING member. Failsafe error mode can now be enabled by entering the CLI command SET unit-number ERROR_MODE=FAILSAFE.
80	An EMU fault has occurred.
81	The EMU reported terminator power out of range. Replace the indicated I/O module(s).
83	An EMU (Environmental Monitoring Unit) has become unavailable. ■ This EMU Unit (and associated cabinet) may have been removed from the subsystem; no action is required. ■ The cabinet has lost power; restore power to the cabinet. ■ The EM- to-EMU communications bus cable has been disconnected or broken; replace or reconnect the cable to reestablish communications. ■ The specified EMU is broken; replace the EMU module. ■ The EMU in cabinet 0 is broken; replace the EMU module.

Component Identifier Codes

Component Identifier Codes are embedded in Instance and Last Failure codes. Refer to "Instance Codes," page D–16, and "Last Failure Codes," page D–36, for a more detailed description of the relationship between these codes.

Table D–5 lists the component identifier codes.

Table D–5 Component Identifier Codes

Code	Description
01	Executive Services
02	Value Added Services
03	Device Services
04	Fault Manager
05	Common Library Routines
06	Dual Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter Services
07	Failover Control
08	Nonvolatile Parameter Memory Failover Control
09	Facility Lock Manager
0A	Integrated Logging Facility
0B	Configuration Manager Process
0C	Memory Controller Event Analyzer
0D	Poweroff Process
12	Value Added Services (extended)
20	Command Line Interpreter
43	Host Port Protocol Layer
44	Host Port Transport Layer
64	SCSI Host Value Added Services
80	Disk Inline Exercise (DILX)

Table D–5 Component Identifier Codes (Continued)

Code	Description
82	Subsystem Built-In Self Tests (BIST)
83	Device Configuration Utilities (CONFIG)
84	Clone Unit Utility (CLONE)
85	Format and Device Code Load Utility (HSUTIL)
86	Code Load/Code Patch Utility (CLCP)
8A	Field Replacement Utility (FRUTIL)
8B	Periodic Diagnostics (PDIAG)

Event Threshold Codes

Table D–6 lists the classifications for event notification and recovery threshold values.

Table D–6 Event Notification/Recovery Threshold Classifications

Threshold Value	Classification	Description
01	IMMEDIATE	Failure or potential failure of a component critical to proper controller operation is indicated; immediate attention is required.
02	HARD	Failure of a component that affects controller performance or precludes access to a device connected to the controller is indicated.
0A	SOFT	An unexpected condition detected by a controller firmware component (e.g., protocol violations, host buffer access errors, internal inconsistencies, uninterpreted device errors, etc.) or an intentional restart or shutdown of controller operation is indicated.
64	INFORMATIONAL	An event having little or no effect on proper controller or device operation is indicated.

ASC/ASCQ Codes

Table D–7 lists HSG80-specific SCSI ASC and ASCQ codes. These codes are Template-specific and appear at byte offsets 12 and 13.

Note Additional codes that are common to all SCSI devices can be found in the SCSI specification.

Table D–7 ASC and ASCQ Codes

ASC Code	ASCQ Code	Description
04	80	Logical unit is disaster tolerant failsafe locked (inoperative).
3F	85	Test Unit Ready or Read Capacity Command failed
3F	87	Drive failed by a Host Mode Select command.
3F	88	Drive failed due to a deferred error reported by drive.
3F	90	Unrecovered Read/Write error.
3F	C0	No response from one or more drives.
3F	C2	NV memory and drive metadata indicate conflicting drive configurations.
3F	D2	Synchronous Transfer Value differences between drives.
80	00	Forced error on Read
82	01	No Command control structures available.
84	04	Command failed - SCSI ID verification failed.
85	05	Data returned from drive is invalid.
89	00	Request Sense command to drive failed.
8A	00	Illegal command for pass through mode.
8C	04	Data transfer request error.
8F	00	Premature completion of a drive command.
93	00	Drive returned vendor unique sense data.
A0	00	Last failure event report.
A0	01	Nonvolatile parameter memory component event report.

Table D–7 ASC and ASCQ Codes (Continued)

ASC Code	ASCQ Code	Description
A0	02	Backup battery failure event report.
A0	03	Subsystem built-in self test failure event report.
A0	04	Memory system failure event report.
A0	05	Failover event report.
A0	07	RAID membership event report.
A0	08	Multiple Bus failover event.
A0	09	Multiple Bus failback event.
A0	0A	Disaster Tolerance failsafe error mode can now be enabled.
A1	00	Shelf OK is not properly asserted.
A1	01	Unable to clear SWAP interrupt. Interrupt disabled.
A1	02	Swap interrupt re-enabled.
A1	03	Asynchronous SWAP detected.
A1	04	Controller shelf OK is not properly asserted.
A1	0A	EMU fault: Power Supplies not OK.
A1	0B	EMU fault: Fans not OK.
A1	0C	EMU fault: Temperature not OK.
A1	0D	EMU fault: External Air Sense not OK.
A1	10	Power supply fault is now fixed.
A1	11	Fans fault is now fixed.
A1	12	Temperature fault is now fixed.
A1	13	External Air Sense fault is now fixed.
A1	14	EMU and cabinet now available.
A1	15	EMU and cabinet now unavailable.
B0	00	Command timeout.
B0	01	Watchdog timer timeout.

Table D–7 ASC and ASCQ Codes (Continued)

ASC Code	ASCQ Code	Description
D0	01	Disconnect timeout.
D0	02	Chip command timeout.
D0	03	Byte transfer timeout.
D1	00	Bus errors.
D1	02	Unexpected bus phase.
D1	03	Disconnect expected.
D1	04	ID Message not sent.
D1	05	Synchronous negotiation error.
D1	07	Unexpected disconnect.
D1	08	Unexpected message.
D1	09	Unexpected Tag message.
D1	0A	Channel busy.
D1	0B	Device initialization failure. Device sense data available.
D2	00	Miscellaneous SCSI driver error.
D2	03	Device services had to reset the bus.
D3	00	Drive SCSI chip reported gross error.
D4	00	Non-SCSI bus parity error.
D5	02	Message Reject received on a valid message.
D7	00	Source driver programming error.
E0	03	Fault Manager detected an unknown error code.
E0	06	Maximum number of errors for this I/O exceeded.
E0	07	Drive reported recovered error without transferring all data.

APPENDIX E

Controller Specifications

This appendix contains physical, electrical, and environmental specifications for the HSG80 array controller.

Physical and Electrical Specifications for the Controller

Table E–1 lists the physical and electrical specifications for the controller and cache modules.

Table E–1 Controller Specifications

Hardware	Length	Width	Power	Current at +5 V	Current at +12 V
HSG80 Array Controller module	12.5 inches	8.75 inches	23.27 W	6.04 A	
Write-back Cache, 512 MB (Battery charging)	12.5 inches	7.75 inches	2.48 W 8.72 W		Cache idle, no battery 230 mA Cache running diagnostics, no battery 400 mA Cache idle, fully discharged battery 710 mA

Voltage measurements in Table E–1 are nominal measurements (at +5 and +12 B). This table does not included tolerances.

Environmental Specifications

The HSG80 array controller is intended for installation in a Class A computer room environment.

The environmental specifications listed in Table E–2 are the same as for other DIGITAL storage devices.

Table E–2 StorageWorks Environmental Specifications

Condition	Optimum Operating Environment
Temperature	+18° to +24°C (+65° to +75°F)
Temperature rate of change	11°C (20°F per hour)
Relative humidity	40% to 60% (noncondensing) with a step change of 10% or less (noncondensing)
Altitude	From sea level to 2400 m (8000 ft)
Air quality	Maximum particle count 0.5 micron or larger, not to exceed 500,000 particles per cubic foot of air
Inlet air volume	0.026 cubic m per second (50 cubic ft per minute)

Condition	Maximum Operating Environment (Range)
Temperature	+10° to +40°C (+50° to +104°F) Derate 1.8°C for each 1000 m (1.0°F for each 1000 ft) of altitude Maximum temperature gradient 11°C/hour (20°F/hour) ±2°C/hour (4°F/hour)
Relative humidity	10% to 90% (noncondensing) Maximum wet bulb temperature: 28°C (82°F) Minimum dew point: 2°C (36°F)

Condition	Maximum Nonoperating Environment (Range)
Temperature	-40° to +66°C (-40° to +151°F) (During transportation and associated short-term storage)
Relative Humidity	8% to 95% in original shipping container (noncondensing); otherwise, 50% (noncondensing)
Altitude	From -300 m (-1000 ft) to +3600 m (+12,000 ft) Mean Sea Level (MSL)

Glossary

This glossary defines terms pertaining to the HSG80 Fibre Channel array controller. It is not a comprehensive glossary of computer terms.

8B/10B A type of byte encoding and decoding to reduce errors in data transmission patented by the IBM Corporation. This process of encoding and decoding data for transmission has been adopted by ANSI.

adapter A device that converts the protocol and hardware interface of one bus type into another without changing the function of the bus.

ACS *See* array controller software.

AL_PA *See* arbitrated loop physical address.

alias address An AL_PA value recognized by an Arbitrated Loop port in addition to its assigned AL_PA.

ANSI Pronounced “ann-see.” Acronym for the American National Standards Institute. An organization who develops standards used voluntarily by many manufacturers within the USA. ANSI is not a government agency.

arbitrate A process of selecting one L_Port from a collection of several ports that request use of the arbitrated loop concurrently.

arbitrated loop A loop type of topology where two or more ports can be interconnected, but only two ports at a time can communicate.

arbitrated loop physical address Abbreviated AL_PA. A one-byte value used to identify a port in an Arbitrated Loop topology. The AL_PA value corresponds to bits 7:0 of the 24-bit Native Address Indentifier.

array controller *See* controller.

array controller software Abbreviated ACS. Software contained on a removable ROM program card that provides the operating system for the array controller.

asynchronous Pertaining to events that are scheduled as the result of a signal asking for the event; pertaining to that which is without any specified time relation. *See also* synchronous.

autospare A controller feature that automatically replaces a failed disk drive. To aid the controller in automatically replacing failed disk drives, you can enable the AUTOSPARE switch for the failedset causing physically replaced disk drives to be automatically placed into the spareset. Also called "autonewspare."

bad block A data block that contains a physical defect.

bad block replacement Abbreviated BBR. A replacement routine that substitutes defect-free disk blocks for those found to have defects. This process takes place in the controller, transparent to the host.

backplane The electronic printed circuit board into which you plug subsystem devices—for example, the SBB or power supply.

BBR *See* bad block replacement.

BIST *See* built-in self-test.

bit A single binary digit having a value of either 0 or 1. A bit is the smallest unit of data a computer can process.

block Also called a sector. The smallest collection of consecutive bytes addressable on a disk drive. In integrated storage elements, a block contains 512 bytes of data, error codes, flags, and the block's address header.

bootstrapping A method used to bring a system or device into a defined state by means of its own action. For example, a machine routine whose first few instructions are enough to bring the rest of the routine into the computer from an input device.

built-in self-test A diagnostic test performed by the array controller software on the controller's policy processor.

byte A binary character string made up of 8 bits operated on as a unit.

cache memory A portion of memory used to accelerate read and write operations.

CCITT Acronym for Consultive Committee International Telephone and Telegraph. An international association that sets worldwide communication standards, recently renamed International Telecommunications Union (ITU).

CDU Cable distribution unit. The power entry device for StorageWorks cabinets. The CDU provides the connections necessary to distribute power to the cabinet shelves and fans.

channel An interface which allows high speed transfer of large amounts of data. Another term for a SCSI bus. *See also* SCSI.

chunk A block of data written by the host.

chunk size The number of data blocks, assigned by a system administrator, written to the primary RAIDset or stripeset member before the remaining data blocks are written to the next RAIDset or stripeset member.

CLCP An abbreviation for code-load code-patch utility.

CLI *See* command line interpreter.

coax *See* coaxial cable.

coaxial cable A two-conductor wire in which one conductor completely wraps the other with the two separated by insulation.

cold swap A method of device replacement that requires the entire subsystem to be turned off before the device can be replaced. *See also* hot swap and warm swap.

command line interpreter The configuration interface to operate the controller software.

configuration file A file that contains a representation of a storage subsystem's configuration.

container 1) Any entity that is capable of storing data, whether it is a physical device or a group of physical devices. (2) A virtual, internal controller structure representing either a single disk or a group of disk drives linked as a storageset. Stripesets and mirrorsets are examples of storageset containers the controller uses to create units.

controller A hardware device that, with proprietary software, facilitates communications between a host and one or more devices organized in an array. HS family controllers are examples of array controllers.

copying A state in which data to be copied to the mirrorset is inconsistent with other members of the mirrorset. *See also* normalizing.

copying member Any member that joins the mirrorset after the mirrorset is created is regarded as a copying member. Once all the data from the normal member (or members) is copied to a normalizing or copying member, the copying member then becomes a normal member. *See also* normalizing member.

CSR An acronym for control and status register.

DAEMON Pronounced "demon." A program usually associated with a UNIX systems that performs a utility (housekeeping or maintenance) function without being requested or even known of by the user. A daemon is a diagnostic and execution monitor.

data center cabinet A generic reference to large DIGITAL subsystem cabinets, such as the SW600-series and 800-series cabinets in which StorageWorks components can be mounted.

data striping The process of segmenting logically sequential data, such as a single file, so that segments can be written to multiple physical devices (usually disk drives) in a round-robin fashion. This technique is useful if the processor is capable of reading or writing data faster than a single disk can supply or accept the data. While data is being transferred from the first disk, the second disk can locate the next segment.

device *See* node and peripheral device.

differential I/O module A 16-bit I/O module with SCSI bus converter circuitry for extending a differential SCSI bus. *See also* I/O module.

differential SCSI bus A bus in which a signal's level is determined by the potential difference between two wires. A differential bus is more robust and less subject to electrical noise than is a single-ended bus.

DIMM Dual inline Memory Module.

dirty data The write-back cached data that has not been written to storage media, even though the host operation processing the data has completed.

DMA Direct Memory Access.

DOC DWZZA-On-a-Chip. An NCR53C120 SCSI bus extender chip used to connect a SCSI bus in an expansion cabinet to the corresponding SCSI bus in another cabinet.

driver A hardware device or a program that controls or regulates another device. For example, a device driver is a driver developed for a specific device that allows a computer to operate with the device, such as a printer or a disk drive.

dual-redundant configuration A controller configuration consisting of two active controllers operating as a single controller. If one controller fails, the other controller assumes control of the failing controller's devices.

dual-simplex A communications protocol that allows simultaneous transmission in both directions in a link, usually with no flow control.

DUART Dual universal asynchronous receiver and transmitter. An integrated circuit containing two serial, asynchronous transceiver circuits.

ECB External cache battery. The unit that supplies backup power to the cache module in the event the primary power source fails or is interrupted.

ECC Error checking and correction.

EDC Error detection code.

EIA The abbreviation for Electronic Industries Association. EIA is a standards organization specializing in the electrical and functional characteristics of interface equipment. Same as Electronic Industries Association.

EMU Environmental monitoring unit. A unit that provides increased protection against catastrophic failures. Some subsystem enclosures include an EMU which works with the controller to detect conditions such as failed power supplies, failed blowers, elevated temperatures, and external air sense faults. The EMU also controls certain cabinet hardware including DOC chips, alarms, and fan speeds.

ESD Electrostatic discharge. The discharge of potentially harmful static electrical voltage as a result of improper grounding.

extended subsystem A subsystem in which two cabinets are connected to the primary cabinet.

external cache battery *See* ECB.

F_Port A port in a fabric where an N_Port or NL_Port may attach.

fabric A group of interconnections between ports that includes a fabric element.

failedset A group of failed mirrorset or RAIDset devices automatically created by the controller.

failover The process that takes place when one controller in a dual-redundant configuration assumes the workload of a failed companion controller. Failover continues until the failed controller is repaired or replaced.

FC–AL The Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop standard.

FC–ATM ATM AAL5 over Fibre Channel

FC–FG Fibre Channel Fabric Generic Requirements

FG–FP Fibre Channel Framing Protocol (HIPPI on FC)

FC-GS-1 Fibre Channel Generic Services-1

FC–GS-2 Fibre Channel Generic Services-2

FC–IG Fibre Channel Implementation Guide

FC–LE Fibre Channel Link Encapsulation (ISO 8802.2)

FC–PH The Fibre Channel Physical and Signaling standard.

FC–SB Fibre Channel Single Byte Command Code Set

FC–SW Fibre Channel Switched Topology and Switch Controls

FCC Federal Communications Commission. The federal agency responsible for establishing standards and approving electronic devices within the United States.

FCC Class A This certification label appears on electronic devices that can only be used in a commercial environment within the United States.

FCC Class B This certification label appears on electronic devices that can be used in either a home or a commercial environment within the United States.

FCP The mapping of SCSI-3 operations to Fibre Channel.

FDDI Fiber Distributed Data Interface. An ANSI standard for 100 megabaud transmission over fiber optic cable.

FD SCSI The fast, narrow, differential SCSI bus with an 8-bit data transfer rate of 10 MB/s. *See also* FWD SCSI and SCSI.

fiber A fiber or optical strand. Spelled *fibre* in Fibre Channel.

fiber optic cable A transmission medium designed to transmit digital signals in the form of pulses of light. Fiber optic cable is noted for its properties of electrical isolation and resistance to electrostatic contamination.

FL_Port A port in a fabric where N_Port or an NL_Port may be connected.

flush The act of writing dirty data from cache to a storage media.

FMU Fault management utility.

forced errors A data bit indicating a corresponding logical data block contains unrecoverable data.

frame An invisible unit used to transfer information in Fibre Channel.

FRU Field replaceable unit. A hardware component that can be replaced at the customer's location by DIGITAL service personnel or qualified customer service personnel.

full duplex (n) A communications system in which there is a capability for 2-way transmission and acceptance between two sites at the same time.

full duplex (adj) Pertaining to a communications method in which data can be transmitted and received at the same time.

FWD SCSI A fast, wide, differential SCSI bus with a maximum 16-bit data transfer rate of 20 MB/s. *See also* SCSI and FD SCSI.

GLM Gigabit link module

giga A prefix indicating a billion (10^9) units, as in gigabaud or gigabyte.

gigabaud An encoded bit transmission rate of one billion (10^9) bits per second.

gigabyte A value normally associated with a disk drives storage capacity, meaning a billion (10^9) bytes. The decimal value 1024 is usually used for one thousand.

half-duplex (adj) Pertaining to a communications system in which data can be either transmitted or received but only in one direction at one time.

hard address The AL_PA which an NL_Port attempts to acquire during loop initialization.

HIPPI–FC Fibre Channel over HIPPI

host The primary or controlling computer to which a storage subsystem is attached.

host adapter A device that connects a host system to a SCSI bus. The host adapter usually performs the lowest layers of the SCSI protocol. This function may be logically and physically integrated into the host system.

host compatibility mode A setting used by the controller to provide optimal controller performance with specific operating systems. This improves the controller's performance and compatibility with the specified operating system. The supported modes are A, Normal (including DIGITAL

	UNIX®, OpenVMS, Sun®, and Hewlett-Packard® HP–UX); B, IBM AIX®; C, Proprietary; and D, Microsoft Windows NT™ Server.
hot disks	A disk containing multiple hot spots. Hot disks occur when the workload is poorly distributed across storage devices which prevents optimum subsystem performance. *See also* hot spots.
hot spots	A portion of a disk drive frequently accessed by the host. Because the data being accessed is concentrated in one area, rather than spread across an array of disks providing parallel access, I/O performance is significantly reduced. *See also* hot disks.
hot swap	A method of device replacement that allows normal I/O activity on a device's bus to remain active during device removal and insertion. The device being removed or inserted is the only device that cannot perform operations during this process. *See also* cold swap and warm swap.
IBR	Initial Boot Record.
ILF	Illegal function.
INIT	Initialize input and output.
initiator	A SCSI device that requests an I/O process to be performed by another SCSI device, namely, the SCSI target. The controller is the initiator on the device bus. The host is the initiator on the host bus.
instance code	A four-byte value displayed in most text error messages and issued by the controller when a subsystem error occurs. The instance code indicates when during software processing the error was detected.
interface	A set of protocols used between components, such as cables, connectors, and signal levels.
I/O	Refers to input and output functions.
I/O driver	The set of code in the kernel that handles the physical I/O to a device. This is implemented as a fork process. Same as driver.
I/O interface	*See* interface.

I/O module A 16-bit SBB shelf device that integrates the SBB shelf with either an 8-bit single ended, 16-bit single-ended, or 16-bit differential SCSI bus.

I/O operation The process of requesting a transfer of data from a peripheral device to memory (or visa versa), the actual transfer of the data, and the processing and overlaying activity to make both of those happen.

IPI Intelligent Peripheral Interface. An ANSI standard for controlling peripheral devices by a host computer.

IPI-3 Disk Intelligent Peripheral Interface Level 3 for Disk

IPI-3 Tape Intelligent Peripheral Interface Level 3 for Tape

JBOD Just a bunch of disks. A term used to describe a group of single-device logical units.

kernel The most privileged processor access mode.

LBN Logical Block Number.

L_port A node or fabric port capable of performing arbitrated loop functions and protocols. NL_Ports and FL_Ports are loop-capable ports.

LED Light Emitting Diode.

link A connection between two Fibre Channel ports consisting of a transmit fibre and a receive fibre.

logical block number *See* LBN.

local connection A connection to the subsystem using either its serial maintenance port or the host's SCSI bus. A local connection enables you to connect to one subsystem controller within the physical range of the serial or host SCSI cable.

local terminal A terminal plugged into the EIA-423 maintenance port located on the front bezel of the controller. *See also* maintenance terminal.

logical bus A single-ended bus connected to a differential bus by a SCSI bus signal converter.

logical unit A physical or virtual device addressable through a target ID number. LUNs use their target's bus connection to communicate on the SCSI bus.

logical unit number A value that identifies a specific logical unit belonging to a SCSI target ID number. A number associated with a physical device unit during a task's I/O operations. Each task in the system must establish its own correspondence between logical unit numbers and physical devices.

logon Also called login. A procedure whereby a participant, either a person or network connection, is identified as being an authorized network participant.

loop *See* arbitrated loop.

loop_ID A seven-bit value numbered contiguously from zero to 126-decimal and represent the 127 legal AL_PA values on a loop (not all of the 256 hex values are allowed as AL_PA values per FC-AL.

loop tenancy The period of time between the following events: when a port wins loop arbitration and when the port returns to a monitoring state.

L_Port A node or fabric port capable of performing Arbitrated Loop functions and protocols. NL_Ports and FL_Ports are loop-capable ports.

LRU Least recently used. A cache term used to describe the block replacement policy for read cache.

Mbps Approximately one million (10^6) bits per second—that is, megabits per second.

MBps Approximately one million (10^6) bytes per second—that is, megabytes per second.

maintenance terminal An EIA-423-compatible terminal used with the controller. This terminal is used to identify the controller, enable host paths, enter configuration information, and check the controller's status. The maintenance terminal is not required for normal operations.
See also local terminal.

member A container that is a storage element in a RAID array.

metadata The data written to a disk for the purposes of controller administration. Metadata improves error detection and media defect management for the disk drive. It is also used to support storageset configuration and partitioning. Nontransportable disks also contain metadata to indicate they are uniquely configured for StorageWorks environments. Metadata can be thought of as "data about data."

mirroring The act of creating an exact copy or image of data.

mirrorset *See* RAID level 1.

MIST Module Integrity Self-Test.

N_port A port attached to a node for use with point-to-point topology or fabric topology.

NL_port A port attached to a node for use in all three topologies.

network A data communication, a configuration in which two or more terminals or devices are connected to enable information transfer.

node In data communications, the point at which one or more functional units connect transmission lines.

Non-L_Port A Node of Fabric port that is not capable of performing the Arbitrated Loop functions and protocols. N_Ports and F_Ports loop-capable ports.

non-participating mode A mode within an L_Port that inhibits the port from participating in loop activities. L_Ports in this mode continue to retransmit received transmission words but are not permitted to arbitrate or originate frames. An L_Port in non-participating mode may or may not have an AL_PA. *See also* participating mode.

nominal membership The desired number of mirrorset members when the mirrorset is fully populated with active devices. If a member is removed from a mirrorset, the actual number of members may fall below the "nominal" membership.

node In data communications, the point at which one or more functional units connect transmission lines. In fibre channel, a device that has at least one N_Port or NL_Port.

nonredundant controller configuration (1) A single controller configuration. (2) A controller configuration that does not include a second controller.

normal member A mirrorset member that, block-for-block, contains the same data as other normal members within the mirrorset. Read requests from the host are always satisfied by normal members.

normalizing Normalizing is a state in which, block-for-block, data written by the host to a mirrorset member is consistent with the data on other normal and normalizing members. The normalizing state exists only after a mirrorset is initialized. Therefore, no customer data is on the mirrorset.

normalizing member A mirrorset member whose contents is the same as all other normal and normalizing members for data that has been written since the mirrorset was created or lost cache data was cleared. A normalizing member is created by a normal member when either all of the normal members fail or all of the normal members are removed from the mirrorset. *See also* copying member.

NVM Non-Volatile Memory. A type of memory where the contents survive power loss. Also sometimes referred to as NVMEM.

OCP Operator control panel. The control or indicator panel associated with a device. The OCP is usually mounted on the device and is accessible to the operator.

other controller The controller in a dual-redundant pair that is connected to the controller serving your current CLI session. *See also* this controller.

outbound fiber One fiber in a link that carries information away from a port.

parallel data transmission A data communication technique in which more than one code element (for example, bit) of each byte is sent or received simultaneously.

parity A method of checking if binary numbers or characters are correct by counting the ONE bits. In odd parity, the total number of ONE bits must be odd; in even parity, the total number of ONE bits must be even.

parity bit A binary digit added to a group of bits that checks to see if errors exist in the transmission.

parity check A method of detecting errors when data is sent over a communications line. With even parity, the number of ones in a set of binary data should be even. With odd parity, the number of ones should be odd.

participating mode A mode within an L_Port that allows the port to participate in loop activities. A port must have a valid AL_PA to be in participating mode.

PCM Polycenter Console Manager.

PCMCIA Personal Computer Memory Card Industry Association. An international association formed to promote a common standard for PC card-based peripherals to be plugged into notebook computers. The card commonly known as a PCMCIA card is about the size of a credit card.

parity A method of checking if binary numbers or characters are correct by counting the ONE bits. In odd parity, the total number of ONE bits must be odd; in even parity, the total number of ONE bits must be even. Parity information can be used to correct corrupted data. RAIDsets use parity to improve the availability of data.

parity bit A binary digit added to a group of bits that checks to see if there are errors in the transmission.

parity RAID *See* RAIDset.

partition A logical division of a container, represented to the host as a logical unit.

peripheral device Any unit, distinct from the CPU and physical memory, that can provide the system with input or accept any output from it. Terminals, printers, tape drives, and disks are peripheral devices.

point-to-point connection A network configuration in which a connection is established between two, and only two, terminal installations. The connection may include switching facilities.

port (1) In general terms, a logical channel in a communications system. (2) The hardware and software used to connect a host controller to a communications bus, such as a SCSI bus or serial bus.

Regarding the controller, the port is (1) the logical route for data in and out of a controller that can contain one or more channels, all of which contain the same type of data. (2) The hardware and software that connects a controller to a SCSI device.

port_name A 64-bit unique identifier assigned to each Fibre Channel port. The Port_Name is communicated during the logon and port discovery process.

preferred address The AL_PA which an NL_Port attempts to acquire first during initialization.

primary cabinet The primary cabinet is the subsystem enclosure that contains the controllers, cache modules, external cache batteries, and the PVA module.

private NL_Port An NL_Port which does not attempt login with the fabric and only communicates with NL_Ports on the same loop.

public NL_Port An NL_Port that attempts login with the fabric and can observe the rules of either public or private loop behavior. A public NL_Port may communicate with both private and public NL_Ports.

program card The PCMCIA card containing the controller's operating software.

protocol The conventions or rules for the format and timing of messages sent and received.

PTL Port-Target-LUN. The controller's method of locating a device on the controller's device bus.

PVA module Power Verification and Addressing module.

quiesce The act of rendering bus activity inactive or dormant. For example, "quiesce the SCSI bus operations during a device warm-swap."

RAID Redundant Array of Independent Disks. Represents multiple levels of storage access developed to improve performance or availability or both.

RAID level 0 A RAID storageset that stripes data across an array of disk drives. A single logical disk spans multiple physical disks, allowing parallel data processing for increased I/O performance. While the performance characteristics of RAID level 0 is excellent, this RAID level is the only one that does not provide redundancy. Raid level 0 storagesets are sometimes referred to as stripesets.

RAID level 0+1 A RAID storageset that stripes data across an array of disks (RAID level 0) and mirrors the striped data (RAID level 1) to provide high I/O performance and high availability. This RAID level is alternatively called a striped mirrorset. Raid level 0+1 storagesets are sometimes referred to as striped mirrorsets.

RAID level 1 A RAID storageset of two or more physical disks that maintains a complete and independent copy of the entire virtual disk's data. This type of storageset has the advantage of being highly reliable and extremely tolerant of device failure. Raid level 1 storagesets are sometimes referred to as mirrorsets.

RAID level 3 A RAID storageset that transfers data parallel across the array's disk drives a byte at a time, causing individual blocks of data to be spread over several disks serving as one enormous virtual disk. A separate redundant check disk for the entire array stores parity on a dedicated disk drive within the storageset. *See also* RAID level 5.

RAID Level 5 A RAID storageset that, unlike RAID level 3, stores the parity information across all of the disk drives within the storageset. *See also* RAID level 3.

RAID level 3/5 A DIGITAL-developed RAID storageset that stripes data and parity across three or more members in a disk array. A RAIDset combines the best characteristics of RAID level 3 and RAID level 5. A RAIDset is the best choice for most applications with small to medium I/O requests, unless the application is write intensive. A RAIDset is sometimes called parity RAID. Raid level 3/5 storagesets are sometimes referred to as RAIDsets.

RAIDset *See* RAID level 3/5.

RAM Random access memory.

read ahead caching A caching technique for improving performance of synchronous sequential reads by prefetching data from disk.

read caching A cache management method used to decrease the subsystem's response time to a read request by allowing the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives.

reconstruction The process of regenerating the contents of a failed member's data. The reconstruct process writes the data to a spareset disk and then incorporates the spareset disk into the mirrorset, striped mirrorset, or RAIDset from which the failed member came. *See also* regeneration.

reduced Indicates that a mirrorset or RAIDset is missing one member because the member has failed or has been physically removed.

redundancy The provision of multiple interchangeable components to perform a single function in order to cope with failures and errors. A RAIDset is considered to be redundant when user data is recorded directly to one member and all of the other members include associated parity information.

regeneration (1) The process of calculating missing data from redundant data. (2) The process of recreating a portion of the data from a failing or failed drive using the data and parity information from the other members within the storageset. The regeneration of an entire RAIDset member is called reconstruction. *See also* reconstruction.

request rate The rate at which requests are arriving at a servicing entity.

RFI Radio frequency interference. The disturbance of a signal by an unwanted radio signal or frequency.

replacement policy The policy specified by a switch with the SET FAILEDSET command indicating whether a failed disk from a mirrorset or RAIDset is to be automatically replaced with a disk from the spareset. The two switch choices are AUTOSPARE and NOAUTOSPARE.

SBB StorageWorks building block. (1) A modular carrier plus the interface required to mount the carrier into a standard StorageWorks shelf. (2) any device conforming to shelf mechanical and electrical standards

	installed in a 3.5-inch or 5.25-inch carrier, whether it is a storage device or power supply.
SCSI	Small computer system interface. (1) An ANSI interface standard defining the physical and electrical parameters of a parallel I/O bus used to connect initiators to devices. (2) a processor-independent standard protocol for system-level interfacing between a computer and intelligent devices including hard drives, floppy disks, CD-ROMs, printers, scanners, and others.
SCSI-A cable	A 50-conductor (25 twisted-pair) cable generally used for single-ended, SCSI-bus connections.
SCSI bus signal converter	Sometimes referred to as an adapter. (1) A device used to interface between the subsystem and a peripheral device unable to be mounted directly into the SBB shelf of the subsystem. (2) a device used to connect a differential SCSI bus to a single-ended SCSI bus. (3) A device used to extend the length of a differential or single-ended SCSI bus. *See also* I/O module.
SCSI device	(1) A host computer adapter, a peripheral controller, or an intelligent peripheral that can be attached to the SCSI bus. (2) Any physical unit that can communicate on a SCSI bus.
SCSI device ID number	A bit-significant representation of the SCSI address referring to one of the signal lines, numbered 0 through 7 for an 8-bit bus, or 0 through 15 for a 16-bit bus. *See also* target ID number.
SCSI ID number	The representation of the SCSI address that refers to one of the signal lines numbered 0 through 15.
SCSI-P cable	A 68-conductor (34 twisted-pair) cable generally used for differential bus connections.
SCSI port	(1) Software: The channel controlling communications to and from a specific SCSI bus in the system. (2) Hardware: The name of the logical socket at the back of the system unit to which a SCSI device is connected.
serial transmission	A method transmission in which each bit of information is sent sequentially on a single channel rather than simultaneously as in parallel transmission.

service rate The rate at which an entity is able to service requests For example, the rate at which an Arbitrated Loop is able to service arbitrated requests.

signal converter *See* SCSI bus signal converter.

SIMM Single Inline Memory Module.

single ended I/O module A 16-bit I/O module. *See also* I/O module.

single-ended SCSI bus An electrical connection where one wire carries the signal and another wire or shield is connected to electrical ground. Each signal's logic level is determined by the voltage of a single wire in relation to ground. This is in contrast to a differential connection where the second wire carries an inverted signal.

spareset A collection of disk drives made ready by the controller to replace failed members of a storageset.

storage array An integrated set of storage devices.

storage array subsystem *See* storage subsystem.

storageset (1) A group of devices configured with RAID techniques to operate as a single container. (2) Any collection of containers, such as stripesets, mirrorsets, striped mirrorsets, and RAIDsets.

storage subsystem The controllers, storage devices, shelves, cables, and power supplies used to form a mass storage subsystem.

storage unit The general term that refers to storagesets, single-disk units, and all other storage devices that are installed in your subsystem and accessed by the host. A storage unit can be any entity that is capable of storing data, whether it is a physical device or a group of physical devices.

StorageWorks A family of DIGITAL modular data storage products that allow customers to design and configure their own storage subsystems. Components include power, packaging, cabling, devices, controllers, and software. Customers can integrate devices and array controllers in StorageWorks enclosures to form storage subsystems.

	StorageWorks systems include integrated SBBs and array controllers to form storage subsystems. System-level enclosures to house the shelves and standard mounting devices for SBBs are also included.
stripe	The data divided into blocks and written across two or more member disks in an array.
striped mirrorset	*See* RAID level 0+1.
stripeset	*See* RAID level 0.
stripe size	The stripe capacity as determined by *n*–1 times the chunksize, where *n* is the number of RAIDset members.
striping	The technique used to divide data into segments, also called chunks. The segments are striped, or distributed, across members of the stripeset. This technique helps to distribute hot spots across the array of physical devices to prevent hot spots and hot disks. Each stripeset member receives an equal share of the I/O request load, improving performance.
surviving controller	The controller in a dual-redundant configuration pair that serves its companion's devices when the companion controller fails.
switch	A method that controls the flow of functions and operations in software.
synchronous	Pertaining to a method of data transmission which allows each event to operate in relation to a timing signal. *See also* asynchronous.
tape	A storage device supporting sequential access to variable sized data records.
target	(1) A SCSI device that performs an operation requested by an initiator. (2) Designates the target identification (ID) number of the device.
this controller	The controller that is serving your current CLI session through a local or remote terminal. *See also* other controller.

topology An interconnection scheme that allows multiple Fibre Channel ports to communicate with each other. For example, point-to-point, Arbitrated Loop, and switched fabric are all Fibre Channel topologies.

transfer data rate The speed at which data may be exchanged with the central processor, expressed in thousands of bytes per second.

ULP Upper Layer Protocol.

ULP process A function executing within a Fibre Channel node which conforms to the Upper Layer Protocol (ULP) requirements when interacting with other ULP processes.

Ultra-SCSI bus A wide, Fast-20 SCSI bus.

unit A container made accessible to a host. A unit may be created from a single disk drive or tape drive. A unit may also be created from a more complex container such as a RAIDset. The controller supports a maximum of eight units on each target. *See also* target and target ID number.

unwritten cached data Sometimes called unflushed data. *See* dirty data.

UPS Uninterruptible power supply. A battery-powered power supply guaranteed to provide power to an electrical device in the event of an unexpected interruption to the primary power supply. Uninterruptible power supplies are usually rated by the amount of voltage supplied and the length of time the voltage is supplied.

VHDCI Very high-density-cable interface. A 68-pin interface. Required for Ultra-SCSI connections.

virtual terminal A software path from an operator terminal on the host to the controller's CLI interface, sometimes called a host console. The path can be established via the host port on the controller (using HSZterm) or via the maintenance port through an intermediary host.

VTDPY An abbreviation for Virtual Terminal Display Utility.

warm swap A device replacement method that allows the complete system remains online during device removal or insertion. The system bus may be halted, or quiesced, for a brief period of time during the warm-swap procedure.

Worldwide name A unique 64-bit number assigned to a subsystem by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) and set by DIGITAL manufacturing prior to shipping. This name is referred to as the node ID within the CLI.

write-back caching A cache management method used to decrease the subsystem's response time to write requests by allowing the controller to declare the write operation "complete" as soon as the data reaches its cache memory. The controller performs the slower operation of writing the data to the disk drives at a later time.

write-through caching A cache management method used to decrease the subsystem's response time to a read. This method allows the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives.

write hole The period of time in a RAID level 1 or RAID level 5 write operation when an opportunity emerges for undetectable RAIDset data corruption. Write holes occur under conditions such as power outages, where the writing of multiple members can be abruptly interrupted. A battery backed-up cache design eliminates the write hole because data is preserved in cache and unsuccessful write operations can be retried.

write-through cache A cache management technique for retaining host write requests in read cache. When the host requests a write operation, the controller writes data directly to the storage device. This technique allows the controller to complete some read requests from the cache, greatly improving the response time to retrieve data. The operation is complete only after the data to be written is received by the target storage device.

This cache management method may update, invalidate, or delete data from the cache memory accordingly, to ensure that the cache contains the most current data.

Index

A

AC input module
  part number, 1–3
Access door
  part number, 1–9
ADD DISK, B–11
  NOTRANSPORTABLE, B–12
  TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED, B–12
  TRANSPORTABLE, B–12
ADD DISK container-name scsi-port-target-lun, B–11
ADD MIRRORSET, B–15
  COPY, B–15
  POLICY, B–16
  READ_SOURCE, B–16
ADD RAIDSET, B–19
  NOPOLICY, B–19
  NOREDUCED, B–21
  POLICY, B–19
  RECONSTRUCT, B–20
  REDUCED, B–21
ADD RAIDSET *RAIDset-name container-nameN*, B–19
ADD SPARESET, B–23
ADD SPARESET *disk-name*, B–23
ADD STRIPESET, B–25
ADD STRIPESET *stripeset-name container-nameN*, B–25
ADD UNIT, B–27
  DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH, B–28
  ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH, B–28
  MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER, B–29
  NOPREFERRED_PATH, B–30
  NOREAD_CACHE, B–31
  NOREADAHEAD_CACHE, B–31
  NORUN, B–31
  NOWRITE_PROTECT, B–32
  NOWRITEBACK_CACHE, B–32
  PARTITION, B–29
  PREFERRED_PATH, B–30
  READ_CACHE, B–31
  READAHEAD_CACHE, B–31
  RUN, B–31
  WRITE_PROTECT, B–32
  WRITEBACK_CACHE, B–32
ADD UNIT *unit-number container-name*, B–27
Adding
  DIMMs, 6–20
  disks, B–11
  mirrorsets, B–15
  RAIDsets, B–19
  sparesets, B–23
  stripesets, B–25
  units, B–27
Adding cache memory, 6–20
Adding DIMMs, 6–20
Adding disk drives
  as eligible devices, 3–55
  to spareset using CLI, 3–63
Addresses
  providing with the PVA module, 2–6
Addressing PTL convention, 3–33
ALLOCATION_CLASS
  SET *controller*, B–105

Array Controller. *See* Controller
Array of disk drives, 3–8
ASC/ASCQ codes, D–85
ASC_ASCQ codes, 4–18
AUTOSPARE, 3–65
  SET FAILEDSET, B–117
Autospare
  failedset, 3–65
Availability, 3–15

B

BA370 enclosure
  ECB Y cable, 1–19
BA370 rack-mountable enclosure
  ECB Y cable, 1–28
  part number, 1–3
Backing up data, 3–19
Backing up data with the Clone utility, 1–16
Backplane
  location, 1–13
Backup power source
  enabling write-back caching, 1–21
Battery hysteresis, 1–29
BATTERY_OFF
  POWEROFF, B–83
BATTERY_ON
  POWEROFF, B–83
BC16E-xx cable assembly
  part number, 1–10
Bus
  device bus interconnect, 1–5
  distribute members across, 3–14, 3–16
  distributing first mirrorset members, 3–13
  distributing members across, 3–10

C

Cable assembly
  terminal connection, 1–10
Cables
  ECB Y cable part numbers, 1–28
    BA370 enclosure, 1–19
    data center cabinet, 1–19
  fibre channel
    copper, 2–14
    optical, 2–15
  maintenance port cable part number for a PC, 1–9
  maintenance port cable part number for a terminal, 1–10
Cabling
  copper
    single configuration, 2–14 to 2–15
Cache module
  256-MB cache upgrade part number, 1–19
  64-MB cache upgrade part number, 1–19
  caching techniques, 1–20
  companion cache module, 1–18
  controller and cache module location, 1–13
  DIMMs supported, 1–5, 1–18
  general description, 1–18
  illustration of parts, 1–19
  installing
    dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–24
    single-controller configuration, 5–7
  location, 1–13
  memory configurations, 1–18
  memory sizes supported, 1–5
  part number, 1–3
  read caching, 1–20
  relationship to controller, 1–13
  removing
    dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–21
    single-controller configuration, 5–6
  replacing
    dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–21
    single-controller configuration, 5–6
  replacing cache modules with FRUTIL, 1–16
  write-back caching, 1–21
  write-through caching, 1–21
Cache policies
  fault-tolerance for write-back caching, 1–22

Cache, setting flush timer, B–105
CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER
  SET *controller*, B–105
CACHE_UPS
  SET *controller*, B–105
Caching techniques, 1–5
  general description, 1–20
  read caching, 1–20
  read-ahead caching, 1–20
  write-back caching, 1–21
  write-through caching, 1–21
CAPACITY
  CREATE_PARTITION, B–52
  INITIALIZE, B–72
Caution, defined, xxi
Change volume serial number utility. *See* CHVSN utility
Changing switches
  devices, 3–39
  initialize, 3–67
  storagesets, 3–39
  unit, 3–67
Charging diagnostics
  battery hysteresis, 1–29
  general description, 1–29
Checking fibre channel link errors, 4–32
Chunk size, 3–47
  choosing for RAIDsets and stripesets, 3–47
  controlling stripesize, 3–47
  maximum for RAIDsets, 3–50
  using to increase data transfer rate, 3–49
  using to increase request rate, 3–47
  using to increase write performance, 3–49
CHUNKSIZE, 3–47
  INITIALIZE, B–72
Chunksize, setting storageset size, B–72
CHVSN utility
  general description, 1–17
CHVSN, running, B–95
CLCP
  downloading new software, 6–3
  patches
    installing, 6–6
CLCP utility
  general description, 1–16
CLCP, running, B–95
Cleaning instructions
  fibre channel optical cable, 1–12
CLEAR_ERRORS CLI, B–35
CLEAR_ERRORS *controller*
  INVALID_CACHE, B–37
  data-retention-policy, B–37
  DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA, B–37
  NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA, B–37
CLEAR_ERRORS *device-name* UNKNOWN, B–39
CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* LOST_DATA, B–41
CLI
  definition, B–2
  overview, B–2
CLI commands
  abbreviating commands, B–3
  ADD DISK, B–11
  ADD MIRRORSET, B–15
  ADD RAIDSET, B–19
  ADD SPARESET, B–23
  ADD STRIPESET, B–25
  ADD UNIT, B–27
  CLEAR_ERRORS CLI, B–35
  CLEAR_ERRORS *controller*
    INVALID_CACHE, B–37
  CLEAR_ERRORS *device-name* UNKNOWN, B–39
  CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number* LOST_DATA, B–41
  CLEAR_ERRORS *unit-number*
    UNWRITEABLE_DATA, B–43
  CONFIGURATION RESET, B–45
  CONFIGURATION RESTORE, B–47
  CONFIGURATION SAVE, B–49
  CREATE_PARTITION, B–51
  customizing the prompt, B–108

DELETE *connections*, B–55
DELETE *container-name*, B–57
DELETE FAILEDSET, B–59
DELETE SPARESET, B–61
DELETE *unit-number*, B–63
DESTROY_PARTITION, B–65
DIRECTORY, B–67
editing keys, B–4
getting help, B–3
HELP, B–69
INITIALIZE, B–71
LOCATE, B–77
MIRROR, B–79
overview, B–2
POWEROFF, B–83
REDUCE, B–85
RENAME, B–89
RETRY_ERRORS *unit-number*
UNWRITEABLE_DATA, B–93
rules for entering, B–3
RUN, B–95
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
SET *controller*, B–103
SET *device-name*, B–111
SET EMU, B–113
SET FAILEDSET, B–117
SET FAILOVER, B–119
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–121
SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–127
SET NOFAILOVER, B–129
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–131
SET *RAIDset-name*, B–133
SET *unit-number*, B–137
shortcuts, B–4
SHOW, B–143
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
syntax, B–5
UNMIRROR, B–151
CLI event reporting
no controller termination, 4–16
CLONE
procedure, 3–20
utility, 3–19
Clone utility
general description, 1–16
CLONE, running, B–95
Cloning data, 3–19
Code load and code patch utility. *See* CLCP utility
Codes
ASC/ASCQ, D–85
ASC_ASCQ, 4–18
component identifier codes, D–82
device_type, 4–18
event codes, 4–18
event threshold codes, D–84
instance, 4–18, D–18 to D–35
last_failure, 4–18
last-failure, D–38 to D–76
repair action, D–77 to D–81
repair_action, 4–18
structure of events and last-failures, 4–19
translating, 4–18
types of, 4–18
Command line interpreter. *See* CLI
COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN
SET *controller*, B–106
Communicating with a controller
from a local terminal, 2–8
Comparison of storagesets, 3–8
Component codes, 4–18
Component identifier codes, D–82
Components. *See* Controller
CONFIG utility
general description, 1–15
CONFIG, running, B–95
Configuration
map of devices in subsystem, 4–25
modifying controller configurations, B–2
resetting, B–45
restoring, B–47, B–73
saving, B–49
upgrading to dual-redundant controller, 6–16

CONFIGURATION RESET, B–45
CONFIGURATION RESTORE, B–47
Configuration rules
  devices, 2–2
  LUN capacity, 2–2
  mirrorsets, 2–2
  partitions per storageset, 2–2
  RAID-5 and RAID-1 storagesets, 2–2
  RAID-5 storagesets, 2–2
  RAID-5, RAID-1, and RAID-0 storagesets, 2–2
  requirements, 2–2
  striped mirrorsets, 2–2
  stripesets, 2–2
  See also Summary of controller features
CONFIGURATION SAVE, B–49
Configuration utility. *See* CONFIG utility
Configuring
  controller, 2–3, 2–10
  dual-redundant controller configurations, 2–10
  dual-redundant controller configurations with mirrored cache, 2–12
  mirrorsets, 3–56
  multiple-bus failover, 2–11
  RAIDsets, 3–57
  single-disk unit, 3–60
  striped mirrorsets, 3–59
  stripesets, 3–55
Configuring using CLI
  mirrorsets, 3–56
  RAIDsets, 3–57
  storagesets, 3–55
  striped mirrorsets, 3–59
  stripesets, 3–55
Configuring with CLI
  single-disk units, 3–60
Connecting
  dual controllers to the host
    using one hub, 2–21
    using two hubs, 2–17
  dual-redundant controllers to host, one hub, 2–21, 2–23
  dual-redundant controllers to host, two hubs, 2–18, 2–20
  dual-redundant controllers to the host, 2–17
  local connection to the controller, 2–7
  PC connection to the controller, 2–7
  single controller to the host using one hub, 2–14
  terminal connection to the controller, 2–7
Container
  initializing, B–71
Containers
  naming a unit, B–28
Controller
  “this” and “other” defined, xx
  addressing, 3–33
  backplane, 1–13
  checking communication with devices, 4–24
  checking communication with host, 4–24
  checking transfer rate with host, 4–24
  communicating from a local terminal, 2–8
  configuring, 2–3, 2–10
  connecting dual-redundant to host, one hub, 2–21, 2–23
  connecting dual-redundant to host, two hubs, 2–18, 2–20
  controller and cache module location, 1–13
  displaying information, B–143
  dual-redundant controller configuration, 2–10, 2–17, 2–21
  dual-redundant controller configurations with mirrored cache, 2–12
  ECB diagnostics, 1–29
  fault LEDs, 1–13
  fibre channel copper cabling
    illustration of parts, 1–8
    part numbers of parts used in configuring, 1–9
    parts used in configuring, 1–9
  fibre channel optical cabling
    illustration of parts, 1–11
    part numbers of parts used in configuring, 1–11
    parts used in configuring, 1–11

general description, 1–3
host ports, 1–13
installing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–18
single-controller configuration, 5–4
local connection, 2–7
location, 1–13
maintenance features, 4–1
maintenance port, 1–13
multiple-bus failover configuration, 2–11
multiple-bus failover mode, 2–11
node IDs, 3–26
OCP, 1–13
patching controller software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
program card, 1–13
relationship to cache module, 1–13
release lever, 1–13
removing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–15
single-controller configuration, 5–3
replacing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–15
single-controller configuration, 5–3
replacing a failed controller with FRUTIL, 1–16
reset button on the OCP, 1–14
self-test, 4–42
showing, B–143
shutting down, 5–48, B–149
single-controller configuration, 2–14
summary of features, 1–4
testing with DILX, 1–15
transparent failover mode, 2–10
troubleshooting with FMU, 1–15
upgrading controller software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
upgrading software, 6–2
worldwide names, 3–26
fault-management. *See* FMU
Controller and its cache module
installing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–12
removing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–9
replacing
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–9
single-controller configuration, 5–2
Controller termination
events, 4–14
flashing OCP, 4–14
last failure reporting, 4–15
solid OCP, 4–14
Controller, cache module, and ECB
upgrade installation, 6–16
Conventions
typographical, xx
warnings, cautions, tips, notes, xx
Cooling fan
part number, 1–3
Copper support
cabling, 2–14
COPY
ADD MIRRORSET, B–15
mirrorset switches, 3–42
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–121
CREATE_PARTITION, B–51
CAPACITY, B–52
CYLINDERS, B–52
HEADS, B–52
SECTORS_PER_TRACK, B–52
SIZE, B–51
CREATE_PARTITION *container-name SIZE=percent*, B–51
Creating
disks, B–11
mirrorsets, B–15
partitions, 3–61
RAIDsets, B–19

single-disk units, B–33
sparesets, B–23
storageset and device profiles, 3–5
stripesets, B–25
units, B–27
CYLINDERS
CREATE_PARTITION, B–52
INITIALIZE, B–72

D

DAEMON tests, 4–42
Data
backing up with the Clone utility, 1–16
duplicating with the Clone utility, 1–16
Data center cabinet
ECB Y cable, 1–19, 1–28
Data patterns for DILX write test, 4–39
Data transfer rate, 3–49
Data-retention-policy
CLEAR_ERRORS *controller*
INVALID_CACHE, B–37
DELETE *connections*, B–55
DELETE *container-name*, B–57
DELETE FAILEDSET, B–59
DELETE FAILEDSET *disk-name*, B–59
DELETE SPARESET, B–61
DELETE SPARESET *disk-name*, B–61
DELETE *unit-number*, B–63
Deleting
devices, B–57
mirrorsets, B–57
patches, 6–6 to 6–7
RAIDsets, B–57
software patches, 6–6 to 6–7
storagesets, 3–65, B–57
stripesets, B–57
units, B–63
Describing event codes, 4–18
DESTROY, 3–52
INITIALIZE, B–73
DESTROY_PARTITION, B–65
DESTROY_PARTITION *container-name*
PARTITION=*partition-number*, B–65
DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA
SET, B–129
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–131
DESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA
CLEAR_ERRORS *controller*
INVALID_CACHE, B–37
Device bus interconnect, 1–5
Device ports
checking status, 4–28
LEDs, 1–13
number supported, 1–5
Device profile, A–2, C–9
Device protocol, 1–5
Device statistics utility. *See* DSTAT utility
Device switches, 3–39, 3–44
changing switches, 3–39
device transfer rate, 3–46
enabling switches, 3–39
NOTRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED, 3–46
transportability, 3–44
TRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
Device targets. *See* Devices
Device transfer rate, 3–46
Device_type codes, 4–18
Devices
adding with the CONFIG utility, 1–15
changing switches, 3–66 to 3–67
checking communication with controller, 4–24
checking I/O, 4–26
checking port status, 4–28
checking status, 4–26
creating a profile, 3–5
exercising, 4–37
finding, 4–37
generating a new volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
largest supported, 1–6, 2–2
locating, B–77

mapping in subsystem, 4–25
maximum number in striped mirrorsets, 1–6, 2–2
maximum number supported, 1–5, 2–2
number per port, 1–5
renaming the volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
replacing, 5–47
setting data transfer rate, B–12, B–111
SHOW *device-type*, B–144
showing, B–143
testing read and write capability, 4–38
testing read capability, 4–37
transfer rate, 3–46
upgrading firmware, 6–11
Diagnostics
ECB charging, 1–29
listing of, B–67
running, B–95
DILX, 4–37
general description, 1–15
DILX, running, B–95
DIMMs
cache module memory configurations, 1–18
installing, 5–44
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–44
single-configuration controller, 5–44
removing, 5–43
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–43
single-configuration controller, 5–43
replacing, 5–42
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–42
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–42
supported, 1–5
DIRECT, running, B–96
DIRECTORY, B–67
DISABLE_ACCESS
SET *unit-number*, B–138
DISABLE_ACCESS_PATH
ADD UNIT, B–28
Disabling
autospare, 3–65
Disabling the ECBs
shutting down the subsystem, 5–48
Disk drive. *See* devices
Disk drives
adding, 3–55
adding to configuration, B–11
adding to spareset using CLI, 3–63
adding with the CONFIG utility, 1–15
array, 3–8
corresponding storagesets, 3–32
deleting, B–57
displaying information, B–143
dividing, 3–37
formatting with HSUTIL, 1–16
generating a new volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
generating read and write loads with DILX, 1–15
initializing, B–71
investigating data transfer with DILX, 1–15
largest device supported, 1–6, 2–2
making transportable, B–111
mirroring, B–79
monitoring performance with DILX, 1–15
partitioning, 3–61
partitions supported, 2–2
removing from a mirrorset, B–85
removing from sparesets using CLI, 3–64
removing from the failedset, B–59
removing from the spareset, B–61
renaming, B–89
renaming the volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
setting device data transfer rate, B–12
showing, B–143 to B–144
transfer rate, B–12
upgrading the firmware with HSUTIL, 1–16

Disk inline exerciser
general description, 1–15
DISKS
SHOW *device-type*, B–144
Display. *See* VTDPY
Displaying
current FMU settings, 4–22
event codes, 4–18
last-failure codes, 4–17
memory-system failures, 4–17
switches, 3–66
Distributing
first member of multiple mirrorsets, 3–13
members across ports, 3–14, 3–16
members of storageset, 3–10
Dividing storagesets, 3–37
Documentation, related, xxiii
Downloading
software, 6–3
DSTAT, running, B–96
Dual-battery ECB
part number, 1–4, 1–28
Dual-redundant controller configuration
connecting to host, one hub, 2–21, 2–23
connecting to host, two hubs, 2–18, 2–20
connecting to the host, 2–17
using one hub, 2–21
using two hubs, 2–17
disabling, B–129, B–131
ECB, 1–28
enabling, B–119
installing
cache module, 5–24
controller, 5–18
controller and its cache module, 5–12
DIMMs, 5–44
GLM, 5–33
multiple-bus failover mode, 2–11
removing
cache module, 5–21
controller, 5–15
controller and its cache module, 5–9
DIMMs, 5–43
GLM, 5–32
replacing
cache module, 5–21
controller, 5–15
controller and its cache module, 5–9
DIMMs, 5–42
ECB, 5–27
ECB with cabinet powered off, 5–29
ECB with cabinet powered on, 5–28
I/O module, 5–39
PCMCIA card, 5–46
PVA module in the first expansion enclosure, 5–36
PVA module in the master enclosure, 5–34
PVA module in the second expansion enclosure, 5–36
replacing modules, 5–8
transparent failover mode, 2–10
upgrading from single controller, 6–16
when to use, 2–10

E

ECB
as a default backup source, 1–21
battery hysteresis, 1–29
diagnostics, 1–29
disabling
shutting down the subsystem, 5–48
dual-battery ECB part number, 1–4, 1–28
dual-redundant controller configuration
replacing with cabinet powered off, 5–29
replacing with cabinet powered on, 5–28
enabling
shutting down the subsystem, 5–48
general description, 1–28
maintenance period, 1–28
replacing, 5–27

replacing ECBs with FRUTIL, 1–16
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–27
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–27
replacing with cabinet powered off, 5–29
replacing with cabinet powered on, 5–28
single-battery ECB part number, 1–4, 1–28
single-controller configuration
replacing with cabinet powered off, 5–29
replacing with cabinet powered on, 5–28
ECB Y cable
BA370 enclosure
part numbers, 1–19
data center cabinet
part numbers, 1–19
part numbers, 1–28
Electrostatic discharge precautions, xviii, 5–1, 6–1
EMU
part number, 1–3
setting, B–113
ENABLE_ACCESS
SET *unit-number*, B–138
ENABLE_ACCESS_PATH
ADD UNIT, B–28
Enabling
AUTOSPARE, 3–65
Enabling switches
devices, 3–39
storagesets, 3–39
Enabling the ECBs
shutting down the subsystem, 5–48
Enclosure template, A–4
Enclosures
addressing with the PVA module, 2–6
PVA ID, 2–6
Erasing metadata, 3–53
Error messages
clearing from CLI, B–35
clearing unwriteable data errors, B–43
ESD card cover
part number, 1–9
Event codes
list, D–84
structure, 4–19
translating, 4–18
types, 4–18
Event threshold codes, 4–18
Events
controller termination, 4–14
flashing OCP, 4–14
last failure reporting, 4–15
solid OCP, 4–14
no controller termination, 4–15
CLI event reporting, 4–16
spontaneous event log, 4–16
Examples
adding disk drives to a spareset, 3–64
cloning a storage unit, 3–21
configuring a mirrorset, 3–57
configuring a RAIDset, 3–58
configuring a single-disk unit, 3–61
configuring a striped mirrorset, 3–60
configuring a stripeset, 3–56
deleting storagesets, 3–66
partitioning a storageset, 3–62
removing disk drives from a spareset, 3–64
Exercisers
DILX, 1–15
See also Utilities and exercisers
Exercising drives and units, 4–37
External cache battery. *See* ECB

F

Failedset
autospare, 3–65
deleting members, B–59
Failover
disabling, B–129, B–131
general description, 2–10
multiple-bus, 2–11
transparent, 2–10

FANSPEED
SET EMU, B–114
Fault LEDs, 1–13
Fault management utility. *See* FMU
Fault remedy table, 4–4
Fault-tolerance for write-back caching
general description, 1–21
nonvolatile memory, 1–21
Ferrite bead
part number, 1–10
Fibre cable
installing, 5–45
installing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
installing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
removing, 5–45
removing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
removing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
replacing, 5–45
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
Fibre channel
cables
copper, 2–14
optical, 2–15
link error, 4–32
Fibre channel copper cable
10-meter
part number, 1–9
5-meter
part number, 1–9
Fibre channel host status display, 4–33
Fibre channel optical cable
10-meter
part number, 1–11
20-meter
part number, 1–11
2-meter
part number, 1–11
30-meter
part number, 1–11
50-meter
part number, 1–11
5-meter
part number, 1–11
cleaning instructions, 1–12
Fibre channel optical cable precautions, 1–11
Field Replacement utility. *See* FRUTIL
Finding
devices, 4–37
Finding devices and storagesets, B–77
Firmware
upgrading with HSUTIL, 6–11
Flashing OCP
events
controller termination, 4–14
FMU
displaying current display settings, 4–22
enabling event logging, 4–20
enabling repair-action logging, 4–20
enabling timestamp, 4–21
enabling verbose logging, 4–20
general description, 1–15, 4–17
interpreting last-failures, 4–17
interpreting memory-system failures, 4–17
logging last-failure codes, 4–20
setting display for, 4–20
translating event codes, 4–18
FMU, running, B–96
Formatting
disk drives with HSUTIL, 1–16
FRUTIL
general description, 1–16
FRUTIL, running, B–96
FULL
SHOW, B–145

G

GLM
copper
part number, 1–9
installing, 5–33
installing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–33
installing in a single-configuration controller, 5–33
optical
part number, 1–11
removing, 5–32
removing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–32
removing in a single-configuration controller, 5–32
replacing, 5–32
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–32
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–32

H

HEADS
CREATE_PARTITION, B–52
INITIALIZE, B–72
HELP, B–69
History, revision of this manual, xxiv
Host
checking transfer rate to controller, 4–24
how it works with the controller and subsystem, 1–7 to 1–8
protocol supported, 1–4
Host bus interconnect, 1–4
Host port
checking status, 4–24
Host ports
location, 1–13
Host-assisted failover. *See* Failover, Multiple-bus failover
HP800 operating system connection
9-pin adapter part number, 1–10
HSG80 Array Controller Subsystem. *See* Storage subsystem
HSG80 Array Controller. *See* Controller
HSUTIL
general description, 1–16
messages, 6–14
upgrading device firmware, 6–11
HSUTIL, running, B–96
HSZterm. *See* remote connection
Hub
cabling for single configuration
copper, 2–14
optical, 2–15
installing, 5–45
installing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
installing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
removing, 5–45
removing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
removing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
replacing, 5–45
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–45
Hubs
cabling for dual-redundant controller configuration, 2–17, 2–21
Hysteresis. *See* Battery hysteresis

I

I/O
checking to devices, 4–26
checking to host, 4–24
checking to units, 4–29
investigating I/O activity of units with VTDPY, 1–15
logging I/O activity with DSTAT, 1–17
request routing, 3–36

I/O module
part number, 1–3
replacing, 5–39
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–39
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–39
IDENTIFIER
SET *controller*, B–106
SET *unit-number*, B–139
IGNORE_ERRORS
RESTART *controller*, B–91
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN
RESTART *controller*, B–91
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
INITIALIZE, B–71
CAPACITY, B–72
changing, 3–67
CHUNKSIZE, B–72
CYLINDERS, B–72
DESTROY, B–73
HEADS, B–72
NODESTROY, B–73
NOSAVE_CONFIGURATION, B–73
SAVE_CONFIGURATION, B–73
saving user data, B–73
SECTORS_PER_TRACK, B–72
INITIALIZE *container-name*, B–71
Initialize switches, 3–47
chunk size, 3–47
CHUNKSIZE, 3–47
DESTROY, 3–52
destroy/nodestroy, 3–52
NODESTROY, 3–52
save configuration, 3–50
SAVE_CONFIGURATION, 3–50
Installing
cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–24
single-controller configuration, 5–7
controller
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–18
single-controller configuration, 5–4
controller and its cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–12
controller, cache module, and ECB, 6–16
DIMMs, 5–44
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–44
single-controller configuration, 5–44
dual-redundant controller configuration
cache module, 5–24
controller, 5–18
controller and its cache module, 5–12
DIMMs, 5–44
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–33
hub, 5–45
fibre cable, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
GLM, 5–33
hub, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
mirrorset member, 5–47
patches, 6–6
PCMCIA card, new, 6–2
RAIDset member, 5–47

single-controller configuration
cache module, 5–7
controller, 5–4
DIMMs, 5–44
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–33
hub, 5–45
software patches, 6–6
Instance codes, D–18 to D–35
structure, 4–19
translating, 4–18
Interpreting event codes, 4–19

J

JBOD, 3–8

L

Largest device supported, 1–6, 2–2
Last failure codes
list, D–38 to D–76
Last failure reporting
events
controller termination, 4–15
Last-failure codes
displaying, 4–17
logging, 4–20
structure, 4–19
translating, 4–18
LED codes
flashing patterns, C–8
solid patterns, C–3
LEDs, 1–13
Link errors
fibre channel, 4–32
Listing
patches, 6–6, 6–9
software patches, 6–6, 6–9
Listing diagnostics and utilities, B–67
Local connection
connecting to the controller, 2–7
illustration of terminal to maintenance port, 2–7
Local terminal
connecting through the maintenance port, 1–14
Local terminal port. *See* Maintenance port
LOCATE, B–77
ALL, B–77
CANCEL, B–77
container-name, B–78
DISKS, B–77
parameter, B–77
PTL (SCSI-location), B–77
unit-number, B–78
UNITS, B–78
Locating
devices, 4–37
Locking the program card, 6–4
Logging
enabling in FMU, 4–20
enabling verbose logging, 4–20
timestamping, 4–21
Lost data error, clearing, B–41
LUN, 2–2

M

Maintenance features, 4–1
Maintenance port
establishing a local connection to the controller, 2–7
general description, 1–14
location, 1–13
precautions, xix
terminal or PC connection, 2–7
See also Maintenance port cable, Terminal connection
Maintenance port cable
establishing a local connection to the array controller, 2–7
part number, 1–9
PC or terminal connection illustration, 1–10
terminal connection part number, 1–10
See also Maintenance port, Terminal connection

Map of devices in subsystem, 4–25
Mapping storagesets, 3–32
Maximum LUN capacity, 2–2
MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER
  ADD UNIT, B–29
  SET *unit-number*, B–139
Mean time between failures, 3–10
Member
  replacing, 5–47
Members
  distributing first member of mirrorset, 3–13
  distributing on bus, 3–13 to 3–14, 3–16
MEMBERSHIP
  SET *mirrorset-name*, B–121
Membership
  RAIDset switches, 3–41
Memory-system failures, 4–17
Metadata
  erasing, 3–65
  retaining, 3–65
MIRROR, B–79
  COPY, B–79
  POLICY, B–80
MIRROR *disk-name mirrorset-name*, B–79
Mirrored write-back cache
  enabling, 2–12
MIRRORED_CACHE
  SET *controller*, B–106
Mirrorset member
  installing, 5–47
  removing, 5–47
Mirrorset switches, 3–42
  COPY, 3–42
  POLICY, 3–42
  READ_SOURCE, 3–43
Mirrorsets
  actual number of members, B–85
  adding to configuration, B–15
  changing switches, 3–66
  choosing a replacement member, B–19
  configuring using CLI, 3–56
  converting back to a single device, B–151
  creating from a single disk, B–79
  deleting, B–57
  description, 3–2, 3–12
  displaying information, B–143
  duplicating data with the Clone utility, 1–16
  initializing, B–71
  manually removing a member, B–122
  maximum number of members, 2–2
  planning, 3–12
  removing a member, B–85
  renaming, B–89
  setting a replacement policy, B–19
  showing, B–143
  temporary from CLONE, 3–19
  unmirroring, B–151
Moving storagesets, 3–72
MTBF. *See* Mean time between failures
Multiple-bus failover configuration
  when to use, 2–11
Multiple-bus failover mode
  general description, 2–11

N

NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH
  POWEROFF, B–83
NOAUTOSPARE
  SET FAILEDSET, B–117
NOCACHE_UPS
  SET *controller*, B–105
NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN
  SET *controller*, B–106
Node IDs, 3–26
NODE_ID
  SET *controller*, B–107
NODESTROY, 3–52
  INITIALIZE, B–73
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA
  SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–131
NODESTROY_UNFLUSHED_DATA
  CLEAR_ERRORS *controller*
    INVALID_CACHE, B–37

NOIDENTIFIER
SET *controller*, B–106
SET *unit-number*, B–139
NOIGNORE_ERRORS
RESTART *controller*, B–91
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN
RESTART *controller*, B–91
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
NOMIRRORED_CACHE
SET *controller*, B–106
Nonvolatile memory
fault-tolerance for write-back caching, 1–21
NOPOLICY
ADD RAIDSET, B–19
NOPREFERRED_PATH
ADD UNIT, B–30
SET *unit-number*, B–139
NOREAD_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–31
SET *unit-number*, B–140
NOREADAHEAD_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–31
SET *unit-number*, B–140
NOREDUCED
ADD RAIDSET, B–21
NORUN
ADD UNIT, B–31
SET *unit-number*, B–140
NOSAVE_CONFIGURATION, 3–50
INITIALIZE, B–73
Note, defined, xxi
NOTERMINAL_PARITY
SET *controller*, B–108
NOTRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
ADD DISK, B–12
SET *device-name*, B–111
NOWRITE_PROTECT
ADD UNIT, B–32
SET *unit-number*, B–141
NOWRITEBACK_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–32
SET *unit-number*, B–141

O

OCP
fault LEDs, 1–13
general description, 1–13
location, 1–13
reset button, 1–13
Operator control panel. *See* OCP
Optical support
cabling, 2–15
Options
for devices, 3–44
for RAIDsets, 3–40
for storage units, 3–54
initialize, 3–47
Other controller
explained, B–2
OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH
POWEROFF, B–83
Overwriting data, 3–52

P

Part numbers
256-MB cache upgrade, 1–19
64-MB cache upgrade, 1–19
AC input module, 1–3
access door, 1–9
BA370 rack-mountable enclosure, 1–3
BC16E-xx cable assembly, 1–10
cache module, 1–3
cooling fan, 1–3
dual-battery ECB, 1–4, 1–28
ECB, 1–4, 1–28
ECB Y cable, 1–28
BA370 enclosure, 1–19
data center cabinet, 1–19
EMU, 1–3
ESD card cover, 1–9
ferrite bead, 1–10

fibre channel copper cable
10-meter, 1–9
5-meter, 1–9
fibre channel copper cabling
parts used in configuring the controller, 1–9
fibre channel optical cable
10-meter, 1–11
20-meter, 1–11
2-meter, 1–11
30-meter, 1–11
50-meter, 1–11
5-meter, 1–11
fibre channel optical cabling
parts used in configuring the controller, 1–11
GLM
copper, 1–9
optical, 1–11
HSG80 subsystem, 1–3
I/O module, 1–3
maintenance port cable, 1–9
maintenance port cable for a terminal connection, 1–10
PC serial port adapter, 1–10
power supply, 1–4
program card, 1–9
PVA module, 1–3
RJ-11 adapter, 1–10
RJ-11 extension cable, 1–10
single-battery ECB, 1–4, 1–28
PARTITION
ADD UNIT, B–29
Partitioning
disk drives, 3–61
storagesets using CLI, 3–61
Partitions
creating, B–51
defining, 3–37
deleting unit, B–63
displaying size, B–143
guidelines, 3–38
maximum supported, 1–6, 2–2
planning, 3–37
setting size, B–51
showing, B–143
Patches
deleting, 6–7
installing, 6–6
listing, 6–9
listing, installing, deleting, 6–6
PC connection
9-pin adapter part number, 1–10
optional maintenance port cable, 1–10
part number for the optional maintenance port cable, 1–10
See also optional maintenance port cable
PC serial port adapter
part number, 1–10
PCMCIA card
installing a new card, 6–2
replacing, 5–46
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–46
single-configuration controller, 5–46
Performance, 3–15
Planning
mirrorsets, 3–12
overview, 3–5
partitions, 3–37
RAIDsets, 3–16
storagesets, 3–8
striped mirrorsets, 3–18
stripesets, 3–10
POLICY, 3–42
ADD MIRRORSET, B–16
ADD RAIDSET, B–19
MIRROR, B–80
RAIDset switches, 3–40
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–123
SET *RAIDset-name*, B–133
PORT_1_ALPA
SET *controller*, B–107
PORT_1_TOPOLOGY
SET *controller*, B–108

PORT_2_ALPA
SET *controller*, B–107
PORT_2_TOPOLOGY
SET *controller*, B–108
Ports
See also Device ports, Host ports
Power source
enabling write-back caching, 1–21
Power supply
part number, 1–4
Power, verification, and addressing module. *See* PVA module
POWEROFF, B–83
BATERY_ON, B–83
BATTERY_OFF, B–83
NO_OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH, B–83
OVERRIDE_BAD_FLUSH, B–83
SECONDS, B–83
Precautions
electrostatic discharge, xviii
fibre channel optical cable, 1–11
maintenance port, xix
PREFERRED_PATH
ADD UNIT, B–30
PREFERRRED_PATH
SET *unit-number*, B–139
Problem solving, 4–2
Profiles
creating, 3–5
description, 3–5
device, A–2, C–9
storageset, A–3
Program card
ESD cover, 1–9
location, 1–13
part number, 1–9
write-protection switch, 6–4
PROMPT
SET *controller*, B–108
Protocol
device, 1–5
host, 1–4
PTL
addressing convention, 3–33
Publications, related, xxiii
PVA ID, 2–6
PVA module
part number, 1–3
replacing, 5–34
first expansion enclosure, 5–36
master enclosure, 5–34
second expansion enclosure, 5–36
replacing in a dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–34
first expansion enclosure, 5–36
master enclosure, 5–34
second expansion enclosure, 5–36
replacing in a single-configuration controller, 5–34
first expansion enclosure, 5–36
master enclosure, 5–34
second expansion enclosure, 5–36
setting the switch, 2–6

R

RAID levels supported, 1–5
RAID-5 and RAID-1 storagesets
maximum number, 1–5, 2–2
RAID-5 storagesets
maximum number, 1–5, 2–2
maximum number of members, 2–2
RAID-5, RAID-1, and RAID-0 storagesets
maximum number, 1–6, 2–2
RAIDset
specifying chunksize, B–72
RAIDset member
installing, 5–47
removing, 5–47
RAIDset switches, 3–40
membership, 3–41
NOREDUCED, 3–41
POLICY, 3–40
RECONSTRUCT, 3–40
reconstruction policy, 3–40

REDUCED, 3–41
replacement policy, 3–40
RAIDsets
adding to configuration, B–19
adding while missing a member, B–21
changing characteristics, B–133
changing switches, 3–66
choosing chunk size, 3–47
configuring using CLI, 3–57
deleting, B–57
description, 3–2, 3–15
displaying information, B–143
initializing, B–71
maximum chunk size, 3–50
maximum membership, 3–16
planning, 3–16
removing a member, B–134
renaming, B–89
replacing a member, B–135
showing, B–143
specifying replacement policy, B–133
switches, 3–40
Rate of transfer, checking to host, 4–24
Read caching
enabled for all storage units, 1–20
general description, 1–20
Read capability, testing, 4–37
READ_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–31
SET *unit-number*, B–140
READ_SOURCE
ADD MIRRORSET, B–16
mirrorset switches, 3–43
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–124
Read-ahead caching, 1–20
enabled for all disk units, 1–20
READAHEAD_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–31
SET *unit-number*, B–140
RECONSTRUCT
ADD RAIDSET, B–20
RAIDset switches, 3–40
SET *RAIDset-name*, B–134
REDUCE, B–85
REDUCE *disk-nameN*, B–86
REDUCED
ADD RAIDSET, B–21
Reduced storageset, 5–47
Related publications, xxiii
Relationship
controller to cache module, 1–13
Release lever
location, 1–13
Remedies, 4–4
REMOVE
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–122
SET *RAIDset-name*, B–134
Removing
cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–21
single-controller configuration, 5–6
controller
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–15
single-controller configuration, 5–3
controller and its cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–9
DIMMs, 5–43
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–43
single-controller configuration, 5–43
disk drives from sparesets, 3–64
dual-redundant controller configuration
cache module, 5–21
controller, 5–15
controller and its cache module, 5–9
DIMMs, 5–43
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
failed mirrorset member, 5–47
failed RAIDset member, 5–47

fibre cable, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration
cache module, 5–6
controller, 5–3
DIMMs, 5–43
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
Removing a mirrorset member, B–85
RENAME, B–89
RENAME *old-container-name new-container-name*, B–89
Renaming, B–89
Repair action codes
list, D–77 to D–81
Repair-action codes
logging, 4–20
translating, 4–18
REPLACE
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–123
Replacement policy
mirrorsets, 3–42
REPLACESET *RAIDset-name*, B–135
Replacing
cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–21
single-controller configuration, 5–6
controller
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–15
single-controller configuration, 5–3
controller and its cache module
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–9
single-controller configuration, 5–2
DIMMs, 5–42
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–42
single-controller configuration, 5–42
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–8
cache module, 5–21
controller, 5–15
controller and its cache module, 5–9
DIMMs, 5–42
ECB, 5–27
ECB with cabinet powered off, 5–29
ECB with cabinet powered on, 5–28
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
I/O module, 5–39
PCMCIA card, 5–46
PVA module, 5–34
PVA module, first expansion enclosure, 5–36
PVA module, master enclosure, 5–34
PVA module, second expansion enclosure, 5–36
ECB, 5–27 to 5–28
ECB with cabinet powered off, 5–29
ECB with cabinet powered on, 5–28
fibre cable, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–45
single-controller configuration, 5–45
I/O module, 5–39

modules
dual-redundant controller configuration, 5–8
modules in a single-controller configuration, 5–2
PCMCIA card, 5–46
PVA module, 5–34
first expansion enclosure, 5–36
master enclosure, 5–34
second expansion enclosure, 5–36
single-controller configuration, 5–2
cache module, 5–6
controller, 5–3
DIMMs, 5–42
ECB, 5–27
ECB with cabinet powered off, 5–29
ECB with cabinet powered on, 5–28
fibre cable, 5–45
GLM, 5–32
hub, 5–45
I/O module, 5–39
PCMCIA card, 5–46
PVA module, 5–34
PVA module, first expansion enclosure, 5–36
PVA module, master enclosure, 5–34
PVA module, second expansion enclosure, 5–36
storageset member, 5–47
Request rate, 3–47
Required tools, xxii
Resetting configuration, B–45
RESTART *controller*
IGNORE_ERRORS, B–91
IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–91
NOIGNORE_ERRORS, B–91
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–91
Restart_type codes, 4–18
Restarting the subsystem, 5–50
Restoring configuration, B–47
RETRY_ERRORS *unit-number*
UNWRITEABLE_DATA, B–93
Revision history, xxiv
RJ-11 adapter
part number, 1–10
RJ-11 extension cable
part number, 1–10
RUN, B–95
ADD UNIT, B–31
CHVSN, B–95
CLCP, B–95
CLONE, B–95
CONFIG, B–95
DILX, B–95
DIRECT, B–96
DSTAT, B–96
FMU, B–96
FRUTIL, B–96
HSUTIL, B–96
SET *unit-number*, B–140
VTDPY, B–96
RUN *program name*, B–95
Running
controller self-test, 4–42
DAEMON tests, 4–42
DILX, 4–37
FMU, 4–17
VTDPY, 4–23

S

Save configuration, 3–50
SAVE_CONFIGURATION, 3–50
INITIALIZE, B–73
Saving configurations, B–49
dual-redundant configurations, 3–52

SCSI command operations, 4–18
SCSI device ports. *See* Device ports
SCSI device targets. *See* Devices
SCSI target ID numbers. *See* Target ID numbers
SCSI_VERSION
  SET *controller*, B–108
SECONDS
  POWEROFF, B–83
SECTORS_PER_TRACK
  CREATE_PARTITION, B–52
  INITIALIZE, B–72
Self-test, 4–42
SELFTEST *controller*, B–99
  IGNORE_ERRORS, B–99
  IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–99
  NOIGNORE_ERRORS, B–99
  NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–99
SENSOR_N_SETPOINT
  SET EMU, B–113
Serial interconnect speed, 1–6
SET *controller*, B–103
  ALLOCATION_CLASS, B–105
  CACHE_FLUSH_TIMER, B–105
  CACHE_UPS, B–105
  COMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN, B–106
  IDENTIFIER, B–106
  MIRRORED_CACHE, B–106
  NOCACHE_UPS, B–105
  NOCOMMAND_CONSOLE_LUN, B–106
  NODE_ID, B–107
  NOIDENTIFIER, B–106
  NOMIRRORED_CACHE, B–106
  NOTERMINAL_PARITY, B–108
  PORT_1_ALPA, B–107
  PORT_1_TOPOLOGY, B–108
  PORT_2_ALPA, B–107
  PORT_2_TOPOLOGY, B–108
  PROMPT, B–108
  SCSI_VERSION, B–108
  TERMINAL_PARITY, B–108
  TERMINAL_SPEED, B–109
  TIME, B–109
SET *device-name*, B–111
  NOTRANSPORTABLE, B–111
  TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED, B–111
  TRANSPORTABLE, B–111
SET EMU, B–113
  FANSPEED, B–114
  SENSOR_N_SETPOINT, B–113
SET FAILEDSET, B–117
  AUTOSPARE, B–117
  NOAUTOSPARE, B–117
SET FAILOVER, B–119
SET FAILOVER COPY=*controller*, B–119
SET *mirrorset-name*, B–121
  COPY, B–121
  MEMBERSHIP, B–121
  POLICY, B–123
  READ_SOURCE, B–124
  REMOVE, B–122
  REPLACE, B–123
SET MULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–127
SET NOFAILOVER, B–129
  DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA, B–129
  NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA, B–129
SET NOMULTIBUS_FAILOVER, B–131
  DESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA, B–131
  NODESTROY_UNFLUSHABLE_DATA, B–131
SET *RAIDset-name*, B–133
  POLICY, B–133
  RECONSTRUCT, B–134
  REMOVE, B–134
  REPLACE, B–135
SET *unit-number*, B–137
  DISABLE_ACCESS, B–138
  ENABLE_ACCESS, B–138
  IDENTIFIER, B–139
  MAXIMUM_CACHED_TRANSFER, B–139
  NOIDENTIFIER, B–139
  NOPREFERRED_PATH, B–139
  NOREAD_CACHE, B–140
  NOREADAHEAD_CACHE, B–140

NORUN, B–140
NOWRITE_PROTECT, B–141
NOWRITEBACK_CACHE, B–141
PREFERRED_PATH, B–139
READ_CACHE, B–140
READAHEAD_CACHE, B–140
RUN, B–140
WRITE_PROTECT, B–141
WRITEBACK_CACHE, B–141
Setting
cache flush timer, B–105
CLI prompt, B–108
control of metadata, B–73
controller behavior at restart, B–91
controller behavior at shutdown, B–149
controller behavior selftest, B–99
controller cache flush timer, B–105
controller cache UPS policy, B–105
controller configuration handling, B–73
controller error handling at self-test, B–91, B–99
controller error handling at shutdown, B–149
data retention policy, B–37
device data transfer rate, B–12, B–111
display characteristics for FMU, 4–20
failedset autospare feature, B–117
fan speed, B–114
full display, B–145
mirrorset copy data, B–79
mirrorset copy speed, B–15, B–79, B–121
mirrorset member read source, B–16, B–124
mirrorset read source, B–16, B–124
mirrorset spareset replacement policy, B–16, B–80, B–123
nofailover cached data policy, B–129
number of blocks cached by controller, B–29, B–139
number of mirrorset members, B–121
number of unit partitions, B–29
partition size, B–37, B–51
RAIDset member reconstruct policy, B–20, B–134
RAIDset member replacement policy, B–16, B–19, B–124
read cache for units, B–31, B–140
storageset chunksize, B–72
subsystem temperature sensor setpoint, B–113
terminal parity, B–108
terminal speed, B–109
time, B–109
transportability of devices, B–111
transportability of disks, B–12, B–111
unit availability to the host, B–31, B–140
write protect for units, B–32, B–141
write-back cache for units, B–32, B–141
SHOW, B–143
FULL, B–145
SHOW *controller*, B–143
SHOW *device-name*, B–143
SHOW *device-type*, B–144
DEVICES, B–144
DISKS, B–144
SHOW EMU, B–144
SHOW *storageset-name*, B–144
SHOW *storageset-type*, B–144
FAILEDSET, B–144
MIRRORSETS, B–144
RAIDSETS, B–144
SPARESETS, B–144
STORAGESETS, B–144
STRIPESETS, B–144
SHOW *unit-number*, B–144
SHOW UNITS, B–144
SHUTDOWN *controller*, B–149
IGNORE_ERRORS, B–149
IMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–149
NOIGNORE_ERRORS, B–149
NOIMMEDIATE_SHUTDOWN, B–149
Shutting down the subsystem, 5–48
disabling the ECBs, 5–48
enabling the ECBs, 5–48
Significant event reporting, 4–14
Single-battery ECB
part number, 1–4, 1–28

Single-controller configuration
connecting to the host using one hub, 2–14
ECB, 1–28
installing
cache module, 5–7
controller, 5–4
DIMMs, 5–44
GLM, 5–33
removing
cache module, 5–6
controller, 5–3
DIMMs, 5–43
GLM, 5–32
replacing
cache module, 5–6
controller, 5–3
controller and its cache module, 5–2
DIMMs, 5–42
ECB, 5–27
ECB with cabinet powered off, 5–29
ECB with cabinet powered on, 5–28
GLM, 5–32
I/O module, 5–39
PCMCIA card, 5–46
PVA module, 5–34
PVA module in the first expansion enclosure, 5–36
PVA module in the master enclosure, 5–34
PVA module in the second expansion enclosure, 5–36
replacing modules, 5–2
upgrading to dual-redundant controller configuration, 6–16
Single-disk units
backing up, 3–19
configuring with CLI, 3–60
displaying switches, 3–66
SIZE
CREATE_PARTITION, B–51
Software
patches, 6–6
upgrading, 6–2
Software patches
deleting, 6–7
installing, 6–6
listing, 6–9
listing, installing, deleting, 6–6
Solid OCP
events
controller termination, 4–14
Sparesets
adding disk drives using CLI, 3–63
adding to configuration, B–23
AUTOSPARE, 3–65
removing a disk drive, B–61
removing disk drives using CLI, 3–64
Speed. *See* transfer rate
Spontaneous event log
no controller termination, 4–16
Starting the subsystem, 5–50
Status
device ports, 4–28
devices, 4–26
host port, 4–24
units, 4–29
Storage requirements, determining, 3–7
Storage subsystem
typical installation, 1–2
Storageset map, 3–32
Storageset member
replacing, 5–47
Storageset profile, 3–5, A–3
Storageset switches, 3–39
changing switches, 3–39
enabling switches, 3–39
Storagesets
adding devices with the CONFIG utility, 1–15
attributes, 3–8
backing up, 3–19
backing up data with the Clone utility, 1–16
changing switches, 3–66
comparison, 3–8
configuring using CLI, 3–55
creating a profile, 3–5

creating map, 3–32
deleting, 3–65
displaying information, B–143
displaying switches, 3–66
dividing, 3–37
duplicating data with the Clone utility, 1–16
formatting disk drives with HSUTIL, 1–16
generating a new volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
how they work with the host, 1–7
initializing, B–71
largest device supported, 1–6, 2–2
locating, B–77
maximum number of partitions supported, 2–2
mirrorsets, 3–2, 3–12
moving, 3–72
partitioning using CLI, 3–61
planning, 3–8
RAIDsets, 3–2
renaming, B–89
renaming the volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
showing, B–143
striped mirrorsets, 3–2
stripesets, 3–2, 3–8
upgrading the firmware in disk drives with HSUTIL, 1–16
See also Configuration rules
StorageWorks array controller, B–2
Striped mirrorsets
configuring using CLI, 3–59
description, 3–2, 3–17
maximum number of physical devices, 1–6, 2–2
planning, 3–18
Stripesets
adding to configuration, B–25
configuring using CLI, 3–55
deleting, B–57
description, 3–2, 3–8
displaying information, B–143
initializing, B–71
maximum number of members, 2–2
mirroring, B–79
planning, 3–10
renaming, B–89
showing, B–143
specifying chunksize, B–72
Structure of event codes, 4–19
Subsystem
addressing with the PVA module, 2–6
connecting a single controller to the host using one hub, 2–14
connecting dual-redundant controllers to the host, 2–17
connecting the subsystem to the host, 2–14
illustration of SCSI target ID numbers and PVA settings, 2–6
restarting, 5–50
saving configuration, 3–50
shutting down, 5–48
upgrading, 6–1
Sun operating system connection
9-pin adapter part number, 1–10
Switches
changing for devices, 3–66 to 3–67
changing for storagesets, 3–66
changing initialize, 3–67
changing mirrorset, 3–66
changing RAIDset, 3–66
changing unit, 3–67
displaying current, 3–66
NOTRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
overview, 3–39
RAIDset, 3–40
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED, 3–46
TRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
Symptoms, 4–4

T

Target ID numbers
illustration of SCSI target ID numbers and PVA settings, 2–6

Targets. *See* Devices
Template, enclosure, A–4
Templates, D–85

Terminal
  setting parity, B–108
  setting speed, B–109
Terminal connection
  optional maintenance port cable, 1–10, 2–7
  part number for the optional maintenance port, 1–10
  See also Maintenance port, Maintenance port cable
Terminal display. *See* VTDPY
Terminal. *See* Maintenance port
TERMINAL_PARITY
  SET *controller*, B–108
TERMINAL_SPEED
  SET *controller*, B–109
Testing controllers, B–99
Testing read capability, 4–37
This controller
  explained, B–2
  removing from dual-redundant controller configuration, B–129, B–131
  starting diagnostic or utility programs, B–95
This controller, defined, xx
TIME
  SET *controller*, B–109
Timestamp for logging, 4–21
Tip, defined, xxi
Tools, xxii
Topology
  supported, 1–4
Transfer rate
  checking to devices, 4–24
  checking to host, 4–24
  how chunk size affects, 3–47
  setting device, B–12, B–111
  switch, 3–46
TRANSFER_RATE_REQUESTED, 3–46
  ADD DISK, B–12
  SET *device-name*, B–111
Translating event codes, 4–18
Transparent failover mode
  general description, 2–10
Transportability, 3–44
TRANSPORTABLE, 3–44
  ADD DISK, B–12
  SET *device-name*, B–111
Troubleshooting
  backing up data with the Clone utility, 1–16
  checklist, 4–2
  CLCP utility, 1–16
  communication between controller and devices with VTDPY, 1–15
  communication between the controller and hosts with VTDPY, 1–15
  DILX, 1–15
  FMU, 1–15
  generating a new volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
  generating read and write loads with DILX, 1–15
  investigating data transfer with DILX, 1–15
  investigating I/O activity of units with VTDPY, 1–15
  logging I/O activity with DSTAT, 1–17
  monitoring performance with DILX, 1–15
  patching controller software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
  renaming the volume serial number with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
  replacing a failed controller with FRUTIL, 1–16
  replacing cache modules with FRUTIL, 1–16
  replacing ECBs with FRUTIL, 1–16
  table, 4–4
  testing the controller and disk drives with DILX, 1–15
  upgrading controller software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
  upgrading EMU software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
  VTDPY, 1–15

See also Config utility
See also HSUTIL
Troubleshooting and maintaining the controller
utilities and exercisers, 1–14
Turning off the subsystem, 5–48
Turning on the subsystem, 5–50
Typographical conventions, xx

U

Unit switches
changing, 3–67
overview, 3–54
Units
adding to configuration, B–27
changing characteristics, B–137
checking I/O, 4–29
checking status, 4–29
clearing lost data error, B–41
deleting from the configuration, B–63
displaying configured units, B–144
displaying information, B–143
exercising, 4–37
largest unit supported, 1–6, 2–2
mirroring, B–79
naming with ADD command, B–28
showing, B–143
UNMIRROR, B–151
UNMIRROR *disk-name*, B–151
Unpartitioned mirrorsets
duplicating data with the Clone utility, 1–16
Unwriteable data error, retrying, B–93
Upgrading
cache memory, 6–20
controller software, 6–2
controller software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
device firmware, 6–11
DIMMs, 6–20
downloading new software, 6–3
EMU software with the CLCP utility, 1–16
installing
controller, cache module, and ECB, 6–16
installing a new program card, 6–2
single controller to dual-redundant controller,
6–16
using CLCP, 6–6
deleting patches, 6–7
deleting software patches, 6–7
installing patches, 6–6
installing software patches, 6–6
listing patches, 6–9
listing software patches, 6–9
Utilities
CHVSN, B–95
CLCP, B–95
CLONE, B–95
CONFIG, B–95
DILX, B–95
DIRECT, B–96
DSTAT, B–96
FMU, B–96
FRUTIL, B–96
HSUTIL, B–96
listing of, B–67
running, B–95
VTDPY, B–96
Utilities and exercisers
CHVSN utility, 1–17
CLCP utility, 1–16
Clone utility, 1–16
CONFIG utility, 1–15
DILX, 1–15
DSTAT, 1–17
FMU, 1–15
FRUTIL, 1–16
HSUTIL, 1–16
VTDPY, 1–15

V

Verbose logging, 4–20
Virtual terminal display, 1–15
Virtual terminal display. *See* VTDPY
Volume serial number
generating a new one with the CHVSN utility,
1–17

renaming with the CHVSN utility, 1–17
VTDPY
checking communication with host, 4–24
commands, 4–23
general description, 1–15, 4–23
running, 4–23
VTDPY, running, B–96

W

Warning, defined, xxi
Worldwide names, 3–26
Write capability, test for devices, 4–38
Write performance, 3–49
Write protection for program card, 6–4
WRITE_PROTECT
ADD UNIT, B–32
SET *unit-number*, B–141
Write-back caching
enabled for all disk units, 1–21
fault-tolerance, 1–21
general description, 1–21
setting the flush timer, B–105
WRITEBACK_CACHE
ADD UNIT, B–32
SET *unit-number*, B–141
Write-through caching
enabling and disabling, 1–21
general description, 1–21